IOLAN

SDS/SCS/STS User's Guide

Version 3.4

Part #5500161-34

January 2008

Copyright Statement

This document must not be reproduced in any way whatsoever, either printed or electronically, without the consent of:

Perle Systems Limited,
60 Renfrew Drive
Markham, ON
Canada
L3R 0E1

Perle reserves the right to make changes without further notice, to any products to improve reliability, function, or design.

Perle, the Perle logo, and IOLAN are trademarks of Perle Systems Limited.

Microsoft, Windows 98, Windows NT, Windows 2000, Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, and Internet Explorer are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Netscape is a trademark of Netscape Communications Corporation.

Mozilla Firefox is a trademark of the Mozilla Foundation.

Solaris is a registered trademark of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the USA and other countries.

Perle Systems Limited, 2005-2008.

FCC Note The IOLAN Device Server has been found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions in this Guide, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference, in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his/her own expense.

EN 55022: 1998, Class A, Note

WARNING This is a Class A product. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

CE **Caution:** the IOLAN Device Server is approved for commercial use only.

WARNING The IOLAN Device Server SDS T models operate in an ambient air temperature above 70 ^{O}C. However, at 70 ^{O}C and above, a burn hazard exists if the metal case is touched without proper hand protection.

Table of Contents

Preface 25

About This Book 25

Intended Audience 25

Documentation 25

Typeface Conventions 26

Online Help 26

Chapter 1 Introduction 27

About the IOLAN 27

IOLAN Family Models 27

IOLAN Features 28

Hardware 28

Software 29

Accessing the IOLAN 29

General Features 29

Advanced Features 30

Security 30

Chapter 2 Hardware and Connectivity 31

Introduction 31

IOLAN Components 31

What's Included 31

What You Need to Supply 31

Available Accessories 32

Power Supply Specifications 32

Desktop Models 32
Serial Only Models 32
Power Over Ethernet (PoE) Models 32
I/O Models 33

Rack Mount Models 33
DC Power Requirements 33
AC Power Requirements 33

Getting to Know Your IOLAN 33

Overview 33

1-Port 34

2-Port 35

4-Port 35

I/O 36
Top View 36
End View 36

Rack Mount 37
Console Port/LED View 37
Serial/Ethernet View 37

Console/Serial Switch 38
Console Mode 38
Serial Mode 38

Dedicated Console Port: Rack Mount Models 38

Powering Up the IOLAN 39

Desktop/Rack Mount Models 39

I/O Models 39

DC Power Models 40
Disconnecting 48V Power Supplies from the IOLAN 41

Chapter 3 Configuration Methods 43

Introduction 43

Configuration Methods Overview 44

Configures an IP Address 44

Requires a Configured IP Address 44

Easy Config Wizard 45

DeviceManager 46
Overview 46
Access Platforms 46
Unique Features 46
Connecting to the IOLAN Using DeviceManager 46
Using DeviceManager 48
WebManager 49
Overview 49
Access Platforms 49
Unique Features 49
Connecting to the IOLAN Using WebManager 50
Using WebManager 51
Command Line Interface 52
Overview 52
Access Platforms 52
Unique Features 52
Connecting to the IOLAN Using the CLI 52
Through the Network 52
Through the Serial Port 53
Using the CLI 53
Menu 53
Overview 53
Access Platforms 53
Unique Features 53
Connecting to the IOLAN Using the Menu 53
Using the Menu 54
DHCP/BOOTP 55
Overview 55
Unique Features 55
Connecting to the IOLAN Using DHCP/BOOTP 55
Using DHCP/BOOTP 55
DHCP/BOOTP Parameters 56

SNMP 57
Overview 57
Access Platforms 57
Unique Features 57
Connecting to the IOLAN Using SNMP 57
Using the SNMP MIB 58
IOLAN+ Interface 59
Overview 59
Access Platforms 59
Connecting to the IOLAN to Use the IOLAN+ Interface 59
Using the IOLAN+ Interface 59
Changes to the IOLAN+ Interface 60
Chapter 4 Getting Started 65
Introduction 65
Easy Configuration Wizard 65
Setting Up the Network 66
Using DeviceManager 66
Using WebManager 67
Using a Direct Serial Connection to Specify an IP Address 67
Using a Direct Serial Connection to Enable BOOTP/DHCP 68
Using ARP-Ping 69
For an IPv6 Network 69
Setting Up the Serial Port(s) 70
Setting Up Users 72
Chapter 5 Using DeviceManager and WebManager 73
Introduction 73
Navigating DeviceManager/WebManager 74
DeviceManager 74
WebManager 75
EasyPort Web 75

Using DeviceManager to Connect to the IOLAN 76
Starting a New Session 76
Assigning a Temporary IP Address to a New IOLAN 77
Adding/Deleting Manual IOLANs 78
Logging in to the IOLAN 78
Using WebManager to Connect to the IOLAN 79
Logging into the IOLAN 79
Configuration Files 79
Creating a New IOLAN Configuration in DeviceManager 79
Opening an Existing Configuration File 80
Importing an Existing Configuration File 80
Managing the IOLAN 80
Chapter 6 Network Settings 81
Introduction 81
IP Settings 82
IP Settings 82
Overview 82
Field Descriptions 82
Advanced 84
Overview 84
Field Descriptions 84
Advanced 86
Host Table 86
Overview 86
Functionality 86
Field Descriptions 86
Adding/Editing a Host 87
Route List 88
Overview 88
Functionality 88
Field Descriptions 88
Adding/Editing Routes 89

DNS/WINS 90
Overview 90
Functionality 90
Field Descriptions 90
Editing/Adding DNS/WINS Servers 91

RIP 91
Overview 91
Functionality 91
Field Descriptions 92

Dynamic DNS 93
Overview 93
Functionality 93
Field Descriptions 93
Account Settings 94
Cipher Suite Field Descriptions 95
Adding/Editing a Cipher Suite 96
Validation Criteria Field Descriptions 97

Chapter 7 Configuring Serial Ports 99

Introduction 99

Serial Ports 99

Overview 99

Functionality 99
Editing a Serial Port 100
Copying a Serial Port 101
Resetting a Serial Port 102

Serial Port Profiles 102

Common Tabs 102
Overview 102
Hardware Tab Field Descriptions 103
Email Alert Tab Field Descriptions 105
Packet Forwarding Tab Field Descriptions 106
SSL/TLS Setting Tab Field Descriptions 109
Cipher Suite Field Descriptions 110
Adding/Editing a Cipher Suite 111
Validation Criteria Field Descriptions 112

Console Management Profile 113
Overview 113
Functionality 113
General Tab Field Descriptions 114
Advanced Tab Field Descriptions 115

TruePort Profile 117
Overview 117
Functionality 117
General Tab Field Descriptions 118
Adding/Editing Additional TruePort Hosts 119
Adding/Editing a Multihost Entry 120
Advanced Tab Field Descriptions 121

TCP Sockets Profile 122
Overview 122
Functionality 122
General Tab Field Descriptions 123
Adding/Editing Additional Hosts 124
Adding/Editing a Multihost Entry 125
Advanced Tab Field Descriptions 126

UDP Sockets Profile 127
Overview 127
Functionality 127
General Tab Field Descriptions 129

Terminal Profile 130
Overview 130
Functionality 130
General Tab Field Descriptions 131
Advanced Tab Field Descriptions 133

User Service Settings 135
Login Settings 135
Telnet Settings 136
Rlogin Settings 137
SSH Settings 138
SLIP Settings 139
PPP Settings 141

Printer Profile 146
Overview 146
General Tab Field Descriptions 146

Serial Tunneling Profile 147
Overview 147
Functionality 147
General Tab Field Descriptions 148

Virtual Modem Profile 149
Overview 149
Functionality 149
General Tab Field Descriptions 150
Advanced Tab Field Descriptions 151
Phone Number to Host Mapping 152
VModem Phone Number Entry 153

Control Signal I/O Profile 153
Overview 153
Functionality 153
General Tab Field Descriptions 154
Input Signal Field Descriptions 154
Output Signal Field Descriptions 156

Modbus Gateway Profile 157
Overview 157
Functionality 157
General Tab Field Descriptions 158
Advanced Field Descriptions 159
Modbus Slave IP Settings Field Descriptions 160
Adding/Editing Modbus Slave IP Settings 160
Modbus Slave Advanced Settings Field Descriptions 162

Power Management Profile 163
Overview 163
Functionality 163
General Tab Field Descriptions 163
Editing Power Management Plug Settings Field Descriptions 164

Remote Access (PPP) Profile 165
Overview 165
Functionality 165
General Tab Field Descriptions 166
Authentication Tab Field Descriptions 167
Dynamic DNS Field Descriptions 170
Advanced Tab Field Descriptions 171

Remote Access (SLIP) Profile 173
Overview 173
General Tab Field Descriptions 174
Advanced Tab Field Descriptions 175

Custom Application Profile 176
Overview 176
General Tab Field Description 176

Port Buffering 177

Overview 177

Functionality 177
Local Port Buffering 177
Remote Port Buffers 178

Field Definitions 178

Advanced 180

Advanced Serial Settings Tab 180
Overview 180
Field Descriptions 180

Modems Tab 182
Overview 182
Functionality 182
Adding/Editing a Modem 182

TruePort Baud Rate Tab 183
Overview 183
Functionality 183
Field Definitions 183

Chapter 8 Configuring Users 185

Introduction 185

User Settings 186

Overview 186

Functionality 186

Adding/Editing Users 187

General Tab 187
Overview 187
Functionality 187
Field Descriptions 187

Services Tab 189
Overview 189
Functionality 189
Field Descriptions 189

Advanced Tab 191
Overview 191
Field Descriptions 191

Sessions Tab 193
Overview 193
Functionality 193
Field Descriptions 194

Serial Port Access Tab 195
Overview 195
Field Descriptions 195

Chapter 9 Configuring Security 197

Introduction 197

Authentication 197

Local 198
Overview 198
Field Descriptions 198

RADIUS 199
Overview 199
Field Descriptions 199

Kerberos 200
Field Descriptions 200

LDAP 201
Overview 201
Field Descriptions 201

TACACS+ 202
Overview 202
Field Descriptions 202

SecurID 203
Overview 203
Field Descriptions 203

NIS 204
Field Descriptions 204

SSH 205

Overview 205

Functionality 205
Users Logging into the IOLAN Using SSH 205
Users Passing Through the IOLAN Using SSH (Dir/Sil) 206

Field Descriptions 207

SSL/TLS 208

Overview 208

Functionality 208

Field Descriptions 209
Cipher Suite Field Descriptions 210
Adding/Editing a Cipher 211
Validation Criteria Field Descriptions 212

VPN 213
Overview 213
Functionality 213
IKE Phase 1 Proposals 213
ESP Phase 2 Proposals 213
Field Descriptions 214
Adding/Editing the IPsec Tunnel 215
Remote Validation Criteria Field Descriptions 218
Services 219
Overview 219
Functionality 219
Field Descriptions 219
Keys and Certificates 221
Chapter 10 Configuring I/O Interfaces 223
Introduction 223
Settings 224
Overview 224
I/O Access Functionality 224
Field Descriptions 224
Advanced Slave Modbus Settings 225
Failsafe Timer Functionality 227
Overview 227
Field Descriptions 227
UDP Functionality 228
Overview 228
Field Descriptions 228
I/O UDP Settings 229
Temperature Functionality 229
Overview 229
Field Descriptions 229

Channels 230

Analog 230
Overview 230
Field Descriptions 231

Digital Input 232
Overview 232
Functionality 232
Field Descriptions 233

Digital Output 235
Overview 235
Functionality 235
Field Descriptions 236

Relay 238
Overview 238
Field Descriptions 239

Temperature 241
Field Descriptions 242

Alarm Settings 243
Basic Analog Alarm Settings 243
Advanced Analog Alarm Settings 244

I/O UDP 246

UDP Unicast Format 246
Analog Data 246
Digital/Relay Data 246
Serial Pin Signal Data 247

UDP Unicast Example 247

I/O Modbus Slave 247

Modbus Serial Application Connected to the Serial Port 248

Modbus Serial Application Connected to the Network 248

Modbus TCP Application 248

Modbus I/O Access 249

Function Codes 249

I/O Coil/Register Descriptions 249

Serial Port Coil/Register Descriptions 251

A4/T4 Registers 251

A4D2/A4R2 Registers 252

D4/D2R2 Registers 253

Serial Pin Signals 253

TruePort I/O 254
TruePort/Modbus Combination 254
API Over TruePort Only 255
Accessing I/O Data Via TruePort 256
Introduction 256
Setup 256
Format of API Commands 257
Get Commands 257
Command Format 257
Response Format 257
Set Commands 258
Command Format 258
Successful Response Format 259
Unsuccessful Response Format 259
Error Codes 260
I/O SNMP Traps 260
Chapter 11 Configuring Clustering 261
Introduction 261
Clustering Slave List 261
Overview 261
Adding Clustering Slaves 262
Overview 262
Field Descriptions 262
Advanced Clustering Slave Options 263
Overview 263
Editing Clustering Slave Settings 263
Chapter 12 Configuring the Option Card 265
Introduction 265
Option Card Settings 265
Overview 265
Functionality 265

Configuring the IOLAN Modem Card 265

Configuring a Wireless WAN Card 266

Overview 266

Field Descriptions 266

Chapter 13 Configuring the System 269

Introduction 269

Alerts 269

Email Alerts 269

Overview 269
Functionality 269
Field Descriptions 270

Syslog 271

Overview 271
Field Descriptions 271

Management 272

SNMP 272

Overview 272
Field Descriptions 272

Time 274

Overview 274
Functionality 274
Network Time Tab Field Descriptions 275
Time Zone/Summer Time Tab Field Descriptions 276

Custom App/Plugin 277

Overview 277
Field Description 277

Advanced 278

Overview 278
Login Tab Field Descriptions 278
Bootup Files Tab Field Descriptions 279
Message of the Day (MOTD) Tab Field Descriptions 280
TFTP Tab Field Descriptions 280
Console Port Tab Field Descriptions 281

Chapter 14 Controlling the RPS, I/O Channels, and IPsec Tunnels 283

Introduction 283

RPS Control 283

Overview 283

Field Descriptions 283

Plug Control 284

Overview 284
Field Descriptions 284

Serial Port Power Control 285

Overview 285

Field Descriptions 285

Power Plug Status 285

I/O Channels 286

Overview 286

IPsec Tunnel Control 287

Chapter 15 System Administration 289

Introduction 289

Managing Configuration Files 289

Saving Configuration Files 289

Downloading Configuration Files 289

Downloading Configuration Files to Multiple IOLANs 290

Uploading Configuration Files 291

Downloading IOLAN Firmware 291

Calibrating I/O 292

Calibrating Analog Input 292

Calibrating Voltage 292
Calibrating Current 292

Calibrating Temperature Input 292

Calibrating Thermocouple 292
Calibrating RTD 293

Calibrating Analog Channels **293**
Resetting Calibration Data **294**
Setting the IOLAN's Date and Time **294**
Rebooting the IOLAN **294**
Resetting the IOLAN to Factory Defaults **295**
Resetting the SecurID Node Secret **295**
Language Support **295**
Loading a Supplied Language **295**
Translation Guidance **296**
Software Upgrades and Language Files **296**
Downloading Terminal Definitions **297**
Creating Terminal Definition Files **297**
Resetting Configuration Parameters **298**
Lost Admin Password **299**
Chapter 16 Applications **301**
Introduction **301**
Configuring Modbus **301**
Overview **301**
Configuring a Master Gateway 301
Configuring a Slave Gateway 301
Modbus Gateway Settings **302**
Modbus Master Gateway 302
Modbus Slave Gateway 302
Modbus Serial Port Settings **303**
Modbus Master Settings 303
Modbus Slave Settings 304
Configuring PPP Dial On Demand **305**

Setting Up Printers 306

Remote Printing Using LPD..... 306
Remote Printing Using RCP 307
Remote Printing Using Host-Based Print Handling Software 307

Configuring a Virtual Private Network 308

IOLAN-to-Host/Network 308
Network-to-Network 310
Host-to-Host..... 311
VPN Client-to-Network 313

Appendix A RADIUS and TACACS+ 315

Introduction 315

RADIUS 315

Supported RADIUS Parameters 315
Accounting Message..... 318
Mapped RADIUS Parameters to IOLAN Parameters 319
Perle RADIUS Dictionary Example..... 320

TACACS+ 322

Accessing the IOLAN Through a Serial Port Users 322
Accessing the IOLAN Through a Serial Port User Example Settings324
Accessing the IOLAN from the Network Users 325
Accessing the IOLAN from the Network User Example Settings 326

Appendix B SSL/TLS Ciphers 327

Introduction 327

Valid SSL/TLS Ciphers 327

Appendix C Virtual Modem AT Commands 329

Virtual Modem Initialization Commands..... 329

Appendix D Pinouts and Cabling Diagrams 331

Serial Pinouts 331

DB25 Male 331

DB25 Female 332

RJ45 333

RJ45 SCS48C/SCS32C/SCS16C/SCS8C 334

DB9 Male (Serial Only) 334

DB9 Male I/O 335

Power Over Ethernet Pinouts 335

EIA-232 Cabling Diagrams 336

Terminal DB25 Connector 336

DB25 Male 336
DB25 Female 336
RJ45 337
DB9 Male 337

Modem DB25 Connector 338

DB25 Male 338
RJ45 338
DB9 Male 339

Appendix E Setting Jumpers 341

Introduction 341

1-Port IOLAN DB25 Male/Female 341

1-Port IOLAN RJ45 342

1-Port IOLAN RJ45 P (Power Over Ethernet) 342

1-Port IOLAN DB9 343

2-Port IOLAN SDS1M (Modem) 343

2-Port IOLAN 344

4-Port Desktop IOLAN 345

Digital I/O Module 346

Analog Input Module 347

Appendix F I/O Wiring Diagrams 349

Wiring I/O Diagrams 349

Digital I/O 349
Digital Input Wet Contact 349
Digital Input Dry Contact 349
Digital Output Sink 350
Digital Output Source 350

Analog Input 351
Current 351
Voltage 351

Temperature Input 352
Thermocouple 352
RTD 2-Wire 352
RTD 3-Wire 352
RTD 4-Wire 353

Relay Output 353
Normally Open Contact 353
Normally Closed Contact 353

Appendix G Utilities 355

Introduction 355

TruePort 355

API I/O Access Over TruePort 356

API Request Format 356

API Response Format 356
Error Codes 357

Decoder 357

Appendix H Accessories 359

Introduction 359

Installing a Perle PCI Card 359

Starter Kit (Adapters/Cable) 362
RJ45F to DB25M DTE Crossover Adapter 362
RJ45F to DB25M DCE Modem Adapter 363
RJ45F to DB25F DTE Crossover Adapter 364
RJ45F to DB9M DTE Crossover Adapter 365
RJ45F to DB9F DTE Crossover Adapter 366
Sun/Cisco RJ45M Connector Cable for Rack Mount Models 366
SCS48C/SCS32C/SCS16C/SCS8C Starter Kit (Adapters/Cable) 367
RJ45F to DB25M DTE Crossover Adapter 367
RJ45F to DB25M DCE Modem Adapter 368
RJ45F to DB25F DTE Crossover Adapter 369
RJ45F to DB9M DTE Crossover Adapter 370
RJ45F to DB9F DTE Crossover Adapter 371
Sun/Cisco Roll-Over Adapter for Rack Mount Models 371
Appendix I Troubleshooting 373
Introduction 373
Hardware Troubleshooting 373
Communication Issues 374
DeviceManager Problems 374
Host Problems 375
RADIUS Authentication Problems 375
Login Problems 376
Problems with Terminals 376
Unknown IP Address 377
DHCP/BOOTP Problems 377
Callback Problems 377
Language Problems 377
Modem problems 378

PPP problems 378
Printing Problems 378
Long Reboot Cycle 378
SSL/TLS 379
I/O Models 379
Contacting Technical Support 380
Making a Technical Support Query 380
Who To Contact 380
Have Your Product Information Ready 380
Making a support query via the Perle web page 380
Repair Procedure 381
Feedback on this Manual 381
Glossary 383
Index 385

Preface

About This Book

This guide provides the information you need to:

- configure the IOLAN
- incorporate the IOLAN into your production environment

Intended Audience

This guide is for administrators who will be configuring the IOLAN.

Some prerequisite knowledge is needed to understand the concepts and examples in this guide:

- If you are using an external authentication application(s), working knowledge of the authentication application(s).
- Knowledge of TFTP, the transfer protocol the IOLAN uses.

Documentation

The following documentation is included on the IOLAN installation CD:

- *IOLAN 1-Port Quick Start Guide*
- *IOLAN 2-4-Port Quick Start Guide*
- *IOLAN Rack Mount Quick Start Guide*
- *IOLAN I/O Quick Start Guide*
- *IOLAN SDS/SCS/STS User's Guide*
- *IOLAN SDS/SCS/STS Command Line Reference Guide*
- *TruePort User's Guide*
- *TruePort Installation and Configuration Guide for Windows NT*
- Online Help in the DeviceManager (automatically installed with the DeviceManager application)
- Link to knowledge base

Typeface Conventions

Most text is presented in the typeface used in this paragraph. Other typefaces are used to help you identify certain types of information. The other typefaces are:

Typeface Example	Usage
At the C: prompt, type: `add host`	This typeface is used for code examples and system-generated output. It can represent a line you type in, or a piece of your code, or an example of output.
Set the value to **`TRUE`**.	The typeface used for `TRUE` is also used when referring to an actual value or identifier that you should use or that is used in a code example.
`subscribe` ***`project subject`*** **`run`** ***`yourcode`***`.exec`	The italicized portion of these examples shows the typeface used for variables that are placeholders for values you specify. This is found in regular text and in code examples as shown. Instead of entering ***`project`***, you enter your own value, such as `stock_trader`, and for ***`yourcode`***, enter the name of your program.
File, **Save**	This typeface and comma indicates a path you should follow through the menus. In this example, you select **Save** from the **File** menu.
IOLAN User's Guide	This typeface indicates a book or document title.
See ***About the IOLAN*** on page 27 for more information.	This indicates a cross-reference to another chapter or section that you can click on to jump to that section.

Online Help

Online help is provided in the DeviceManager. You can click on the What's This button (or) and then click on a field to get field-level help. Or, you can press the **F1** key to get window-level help. You can also get the *User's Guide* online by selecting **Help**, **Help Topics**.

Introduction

About the IOLAN

The IOLAN is an Ethernet communications/terminal server that allows serial devices to be connected directly to LANs. The IOLAN can connect to a wide range of devices including:

- Terminals for multi-user UNIX systems
- Data acquisition equipment (manufacturing, laboratory, scanners, etc.)
- Retail point-of-sale equipment (bar coding, registers, etc.)
- PCs using terminal emulation or SLIP/PPP
- Modems for remote access and Internet access
- ISDN adapters for branch remote access and Internet access
- All types of serial printers

The performance and flexibility of the IOLAN allows you to use a wide range of high speed devices in complex application environments. The IOLAN products will work in any server environment running TCP/UDP/IP.

IOLAN Family Models

The IOLAN comes in several different models to meet your network needs:

- **DS**—Offered as a 1-port unit (DB25M, DB25F, RJ45, and DB9M interfaces available), this model provides general IOLAN functionality and supports software configurable serial interface protocols EIA-232/422/485.
- **TS**—This model is available with two serial ports (RJ45 only) and supports EIA-232 only. The TS model is similar to the DS model supporting only general IOLAN functionality.
- **SDS**—This model is available in both desktop and rack mount configurations. Both models support software configurable serial interface protocols EIA-232/422/485. The SDS model has the advanced secure IOLAN feature set in addition to the general IOLAN functionality.
- **STS**—This model comes in one desktop model and several rack mount configurations. All models support EIA-232 only. The STS model has the advanced secure IOLAN feature set in addition to the general IOLAN functionality.
- **SCS**—This model comes in several rack mount configurations. All models support EIA-232 only and have an internal PCI card interface. The SCS model has the advanced secure IOLAN feature set in addition to the general IOLAN functionality.

See ***Hardware*** on page 28 for information about the hardware specifications for your IOLAN model.
See ***Software*** on page 29 for a list of the basic and advanced software features.

IOLAN Features

The IOLAN is a communications server used for making serial network connections. It attaches to your TCP/IP network and allows serial devices such as modems, terminals, or printers to access the LAN. It also allows LAN devices to access devices or equipment attached to IOLAN serial ports.

This section highlights the hardware and software components you can expect to find in your IOLAN model.

Hardware

Hardware Features		IOLAN Models									
		Desktop							Rack Mount		
		DS1	DS1 I/O	TS2	SDS1	SDS1 I/O	SDS2/4	STS4 D	SDS	SCS	STS
Serial Connectors	DB25F	●			●						
	DB25M	●			●						
	RJ45	●		●	●		●	●	●	●	●
	DB9M	●	●		●	●					
Serial Interface	EIA-232	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
	EIA-422	●	●		●	●	●		●		
	EIA-485	●	●		●	●	●		●		
Serial Power In Pin	DB25F	●			●						
	DB25M	●			●						
	RJ45	●			●		●	●			
Serial Power Out Pin	DB25F	●			●						
	DB25M	●			●						
	RJ45	●			●		●	●			
Auto Sensing Ethernet Interface	10/100	●	●	●	●	●	●	●			
	10/100/1000								●	●	●
PCI Interface										●	
I/O Interface			●			●					
Power Supply	Power over Ethernet				●		●				
	External AC	●		●	●		●	●			
	Internal AC								●	●	●
	DC		●			●				●	
Dedicated Console Port									●	●	●

Software

This section describes the supported software features available.

Accessing the IOLAN

All IOLAN models can be accessed through any of the following methods:

- Easy Config Wizard, an easy configuration wizard that allows you to quickly setup the IOLAN in a Windows environment
- DeviceManager, a fully functional Windows 98/NT/2000/ME/Server 2003/XP/Vista configuration/management tool
- WebManager, a web browser (HTTP/HTTPS) option for configuring/managing the IOLAN
- Menu, a window-oriented menu interface for configuration and user access
- CLI, a Command Line Interface option for configuration/management and user access
- SNMP, allowing remote configuration via SNMP as well as statistics gathering
- DHCP/BOOTP, a method of automatically updating the IOLAN
- IOLAN+ interface, for IOLAN+ users, IOLAN models with 16 ports or fewer can be configured using the IOLAN+ menu

General Features

Basic IOLAN software features are available on all IOLAN models.

- IPv6 support.
- Support for TCP/IP and UDP protocols including telnet and raw connections.
- Printer support via LPD and RCP.
- Virtual modem emulation.
- ‘Fixed tty’ support for several operating systems using Perle’s TruePort utility.
- DHCP/BOOTP for automated network-based setup.
- Dynamic statistics and line status information for fast problem diagnosis.
- Multisession support when accessing the IOLAN from either the serial port or the network.
- Modbus master/slave/gateway support.
- An SDK for custom programs and plugin support.
- I/O interface on the IOLAN I/O models (Analog, Temperature, Digital, and Relay).
- Ability to disable services (for example, Telnet, TruePort, Syslog, SNMP, Modbus, HTTP) for additional security.

Advanced Features

Advanced IOLAN software features can be found on all IOLAN models except DS and TS models.

- External authentication using any of the following systems:
  - RADIUS
  - Kerberos
  - TACACS+
  - NIS
  - SecurID
  - LDAP
- Support for TCP/IP and UDP protocols.
- Dynamic DNS with DYNDNS.org.
- Domain Name Server (DNS) support.
- WINS support for Windows® environments.
- Remote access support including PPP, SLIP, and SLIP with VJ Compression.
- Ability to remotely manage the Perle Remote Power Switch (RPS).
- Ability to cluster several IOLANs.
- Email alert notification.
- PPP authentication via PAP or CHAP.
- SSH connections (supported ciphers are Blowfish, 3DES, AES, CAST128, and Arcfour).
- SSL/TLS connections.
- Logging via Syslog.
- RIP authentication (via password or MD5).
- SNTP (versions 1, 2, 3, and 4 are supported).

Security

The IOLAN security features can include (depending on your IOLAN model):

- Supervisory and serial port password protection.
- Ability to set serial port access rights.
- Ability to assign users access level rights to control their access.
- Trusted host filtering (IP filtering), allowing only those hosts that have been configured in the IOLAN access to the IOLAN.
- Idle port timers, which close a connection that has not been active for a specified period of time.
- Ability to individually disable network services that won’t be used by the IOLAN.
- SSH client/server connections (SSH 1 and SSH 2).
- SSL/TLS client/server data encryption (TLSv1 and SSLv2).

2 Hardware and Connectivity

Introduction

This chapter describes how to physically set up your IOLAN unit. It includes an overview of the IOLAN hardware components and how to power up the IOLAN to make sure it works correctly.

IOLAN Components

What's Included

The following components are included with your product:

- IOLAN unit
- External power supply (1-, 2-, and 4-port models only)

> **Note:** SDS P (Power Over Ethernet) models and I/O models do not have an external power supply.

- *Quick Start Guide* (for I/O models, a soft copy exists on the CDROM)
- Warranty Card
- A CD-ROM containing documentation, firmware, configuration software, TruePort, etc.
- IOLAN models that have an RJ45 serial connector(s) come with an RJ45→DB9F adapter

Added components for rack mount models:

- 3' CAT5 RJ45 Administration cable
- Rack mounting kit
- (SCS models only) IOLAN Cable Starter Kit (see ***Appendix H, Accessories*** on page 359 for pinout diagrams).

What You Need to Supply

Before you can begin, you need to have the following:

- A serial cable(s) to connect serial devices to your IOLAN unit
- An Ethernet CAT5 10/100/1000BASE-T cable to connect the IOLAN unit to the network

Available Accessories

The following accessories are available for purchase for the various IOLAN models:

- DIN Rail Mounting Kit (35mm) for the desktop models
- IOLAN modem card for SCS rack mount models
- PCI adapter card for SCS rack mount models (for wireless WAN cards)
- 3 meter RJ45M-RJ45M 8-wire Sun/Cisco modular cable
- RJ45 to DB25 DTE Male adapter
- RJ45 to DB25 DCE Male adapter
- RJ45 to DB25 DTE Female adapter
- RJ45 to DB9 Male DTE adapter
- RJ45 to DB9 Female DTE adapter

Contact your distributor for details.

Power Supply Specifications

Desktop Models

Serial Only Models

If you are providing a power supply for a desktop IOLAN model, your power supply must meet the following requirements:

- Output between 9-30V DC.
- DC barrel connector: The cable attached to the power supply should be about 20AWG, length 6 feet approx. The barrel dimensions of the cable-plug are OD=5.5, ID=2.1, and length= 9.5mm, with a straight barrel, and positive polarity on the inside and negative polarity on the outside.
- Power can also be provided by:
  - Serial Port 1, pin 1 on the DS/SDS1 models
  - Serial Port 2, pin 1 on the SDS2 model
  - Serial Port 4, pin 1 on the SDS4/SCS4 models
  - Ethernet on the P series models (Power over Ethernet).

Power Over Ethernet (PoE) Models

The 1-port/4-port SDS P models can be powered by either the external DC power supply (included) or PoE or both. The 2-port SDS P does not accommodate an external power supply and can be powered only through PoE.

Note: If you are using the Power over Ethernet feature in conjunction with the serial power pinout, the power output is always 5 volts on the serial port, regardless of how the jumpers are set.

The IOLAN SDS P model is considered a Powered Device (PD) and can only accept power from an IEEE 802.3AF compliant Power Source Equipment (PSE) device. The IOLAN PoE can receive up to 13W of power using one of the following methods to connect to a PSE:

- Using the two unused twisted pair wires (10/100Mb only).
- Using the two data pairs or "phantom power" method (100Mb).

I/O Models

The power supply for a desktop IOLAN I/O model must meet the following requirement:

- Output between 9-30V DC and a minimum of 600mA current.

Note: The maximum load for the Relay channel is 1A @ 30VDC or 0.5A @ 120VAC.

Rack Mount Models

DC Power Requirements

The IOLAN DC is supplied with an integral Terminal Connections block to facilitate connection to a DC source(s). The DC supply(s) should have adequate over-current protection within the closed rack system and comply with local or national standards applicable to the installation territory. You need wire gauge 20 to 22 AWG to connect the IOLAN rack mount unit to the power source.

Note: The equipment must be grounded for safety and to ensure ESD protection for correct operation and protection of the internal circuitry.

AC Power Requirements

AC power rack mount units come with standard power cords, specific to your country, that should be used to power the IOLAN unit.

Getting to Know Your IOLAN

This section describes the hardware components found on your IOLAN unit.

Overview

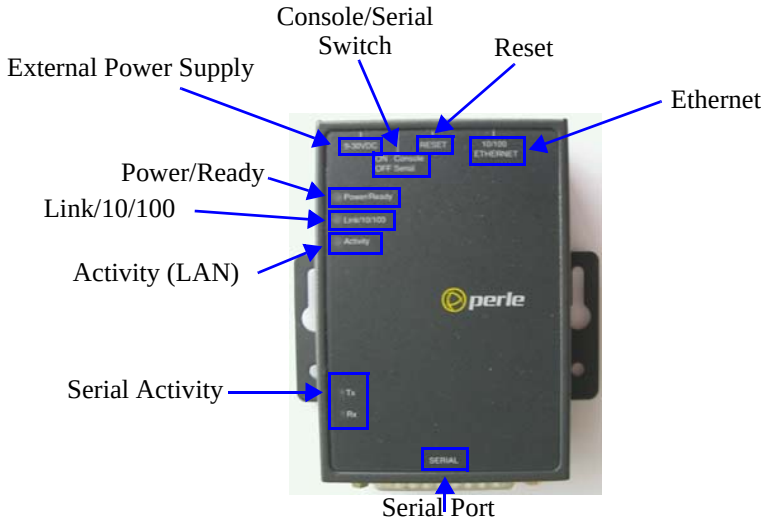
All IOLANs have the same basic hardware components to allow you to connect to serial devices, connect to the network, monitor LAN and serial activity, and manage the unit. Below is a list of these components:

- **Serial Port(s)**—Connector(s) that will be used to connect to a serial device.
- **Activity**—This LED flashes to indicate LAN activity.
- **Link10/100**—This LED indicates the Ethernet connection speed for desktop models:
  - **Green**—10 Mbits
  - **Yellow**—100 Mbits
  - **Off**—no LAN connection
- **Link10/100/1000**—This LED indicates the Ethernet connection speed for rack mount models:
  - **Green**—10/100 Mbits
  - **Yellow**—1000 Mbits
  - **Off**—no LAN connection
- **Power/Ready**—This LED can cycle through several colors (yellow, green, red) during a boot process, but should complete with a green light. When the IOLAN has completed the power up cycle, the LED will be steady green on rack mount modes. On desktop models, if the LED is green after power up but continues to cycle on and off (flashes green), this indicates that the console switch is in the **on** position. You can learn more about the Power/Ready LED in ***Hardware Troubleshooting*** on page 373.
- **External Power Supply**—This can be an external AC power supply, DC terminal, or power cord, depending on your IOLAN model.

- **Console/Serial Switch**—Found on desktop models only (rack mount models have a dedicated console port), this switch determines whether port 1 functions as a serial port or a console port. If you have an extended temperature or I/O model, you will see two console switches. Console/Serial Switch 1 is used to determine the console/serial setting for Port 1 and the Console/Serial Switch 2 is not used.
- **Reset**—The inset RESET button will reboot the IOLAN if pushed in and released quickly. It will reset the IOLAN to factory defaults if pushed in and held for more than three seconds.
- **Serial Activity—**
  - **Tx**—Flashes with transmit serial activity. There is a Tx LED for each serial port.
  - **Rx**—Flashes with receive serial activity. There is an Rx LED for each serial port.
- **Ethernet**—The Ethernet connector. SCS models have dual Ethernet.

1-Port

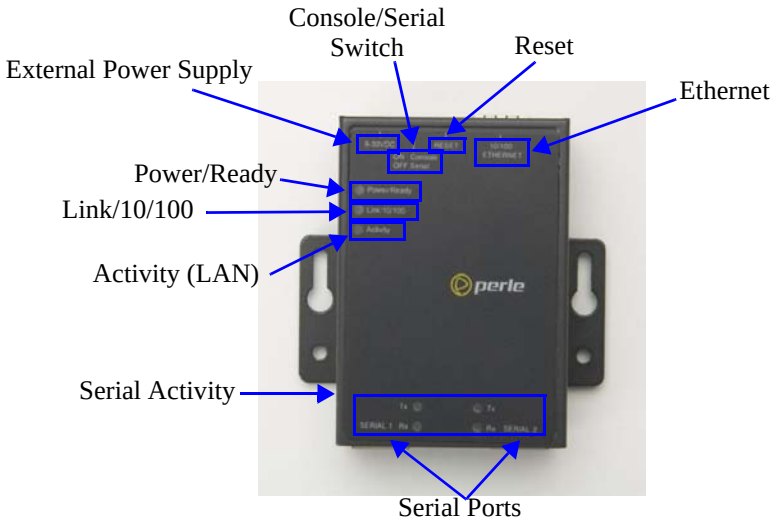
This section describes the components found on the IOLAN 1-port models.



The 1-port IOLAN has one serial connection that is one of the following connectors: DB25 male, DB25 female, RJ45, or DB9 male.

2-Port

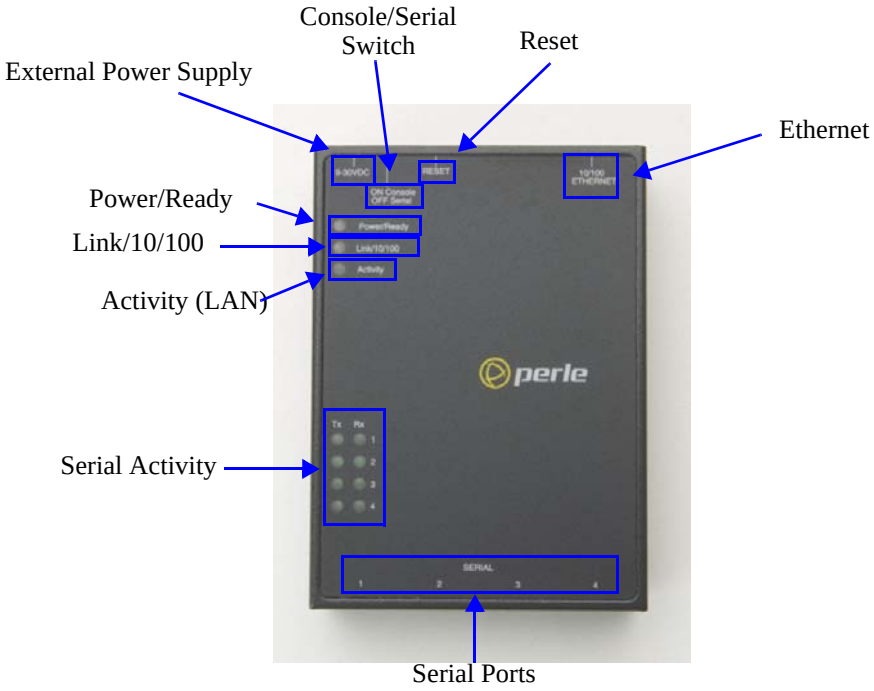
This section describes the components found on the IOLAN 2-port models.



The 2-port IOLAN has two RJ45 serial connections. The 2-port IOLAN can support an 8-pin connector if there is no requirement for power in (pin 1) or power out (pin 10) pins. The 2-Port P model (Power over Ethernet) does not come with an external power supply connector.

4-Port

This section describes the components found on the IOLAN 4-port models.



The 4-port IOLAN model has four RJ45 serial connections.

I/O

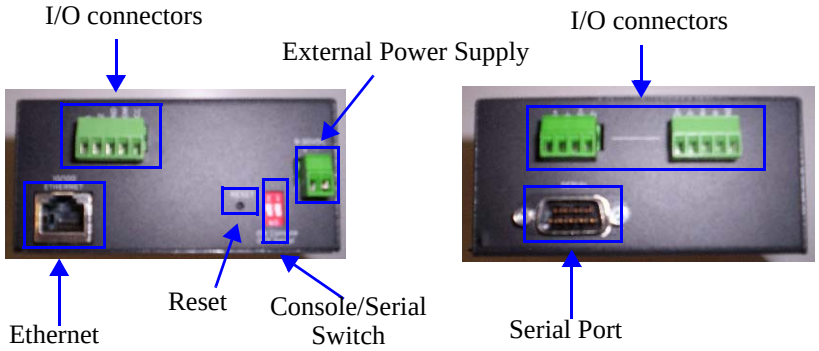
This sections describes the basic components found on the IOLAN I/O models.

Top View

The following image shows a typical IOLAN I/O model. Your I/O model may have I/O connectors in slightly different positions.

End View

The IOLAN I/O model shown is an A4D2. Different IOLAN I/O models have different I/O connector configurations.

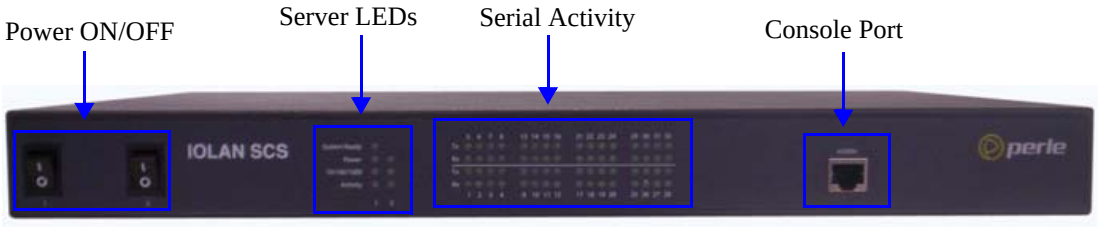


All IOLAN I/O models have a DB9M serial connector.

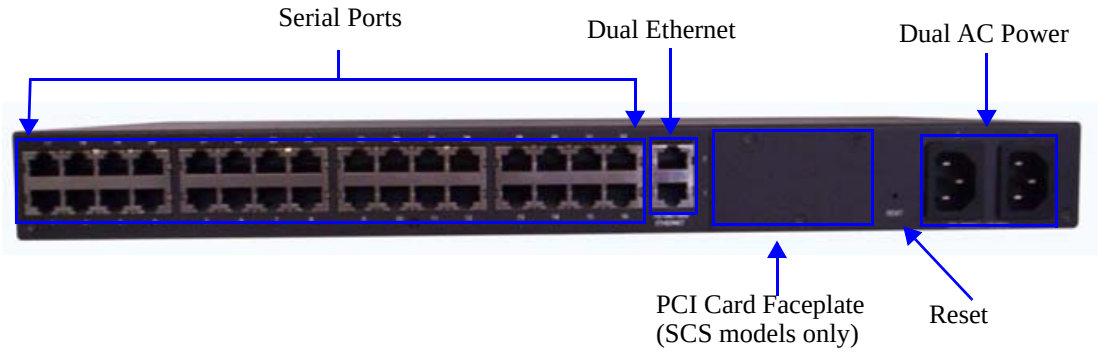
Rack Mount

This section describes the basic components of all rack mount IOLAN models. This example uses the IOLAN SCS with dual Ethernet and dual AC power.

Console Port/LED View



Serial/Ethernet View



Console/Serial Switch

Located at the back of the desktop IOLAN models is a switch that controls whether serial port 1 is in Console or Serial mode.

Note: The SDS T (Extended Temperature) models have two switches, Switch 1 is used for Console/Serial mode and Switch 2 is unused.

Look at your model to verify the direction of the ON switch position. ON indicates that serial port 1 is in Console mode; otherwise serial port 1 is in Serial mode.

Console Mode

Console mode is used when you have a direct connection between a serial device (like a terminal or a PC) and the IOLAN, accessed by the Admin user to configure/manage the IOLAN. Console mode automatically sets serial port settings as:

- **Serial Interface** to **EIA-232**
- **Speed** to **9600**
- **Flow Control** to **No**
- **Bits** to **8**
- **Stop Bits** to **1**
- **Parity** to **None**

Console mode also displays extra system messages.

Serial port 1 will ignore any **Serial Port** settings when in Console mode, so you need to turn Console mode off to use serial port 1 in your network.

Note: When the console switch is in the **on** position, the LED will cycle on and off (flashes green).

Serial Mode

Serial mode is used when the IOLAN acts as a communications server, or anytime you are not connecting directly to the IOLAN to configure it. You can connect directly to the IOLAN in Serial mode, but the IOLAN will not display all the messages/information you will get in Console mode.

Dedicated Console Port: Rack Mount Models

The rack mount IOLAN models have a dedicated Console port, located on the LED side of the IOLAN. You can use the supplied Administration cable (with the supplied RJ45→DB9F adapter if needed) to connect a terminal to the Console/Admin port to view diagnostic information and/or configure the IOLAN using the Menu or Command Line Interface (CLI). You can configure the baud rate and flow control of the dedicated Console port.

Powering Up the IOLAN

Desktop/Rack Mount Models

To power up the IOLAN, perform the following steps:

1. Rack Mount Models only: Using the rack mount brackets included with your IOLAN, you can rack mount the IOLAN from the front or the back of the chassis, depending on your environment. Make sure you don't block the IOLAN's side air vents. Each IOLAN is 1U in height, and does not require any extra space between units; therefore, you can rack mount up to five IOLANs in a 5U rack.
2. Plug the external power supply into the IOLAN and then into the electrical outlet. Connect it to the PSE if you have a P series (Power over Ethernet) model.
3. You will see the LEDs cycle for several seconds and then remain a solid green, indicating that it is ready to configure/use.

Before you start to configure the IOLAN, you should set the desktop IOLAN jumpers if you want to terminate the line or use the power in pin feature (instead of an external power supply, if your desktop IOLAN model supports it).

In some circumstances, the setting of jumpers may be required:

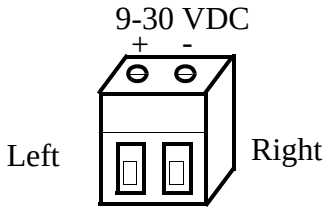
- IOLAN DS and SDS models where EIA-422/485 line termination is required.
- IOLAN I/O models with Digital I/O for setting the channels as input or output.
- IOLAN I/O models with Analog I/O for setting Voltage/Current.

See ***Appendix E, Setting Jumpers*** on page 341 to see how to set the jumpers for your IOLAN desktop model.

I/O Models

To power up the IOLAN, perform the following steps:

1. Unplug the power plugable terminal block from the IOLAN.
2. Loosen the screws and then insert your positive (+) wire into the left terminal and screw it down. Insert the negative (-) wire into the right terminal and screw it down as shown below:



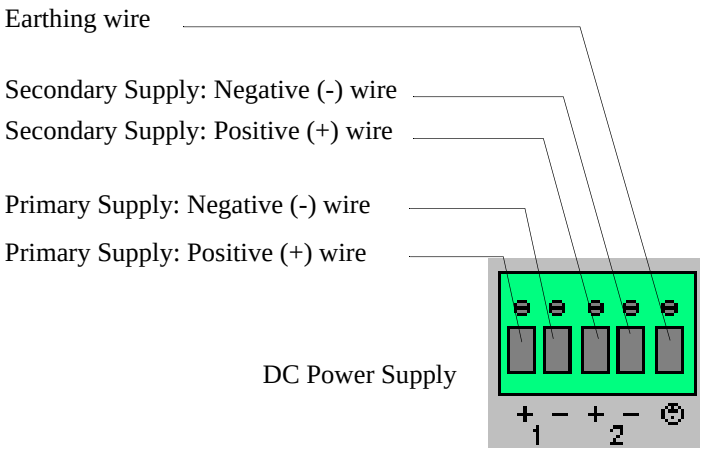
3. Plug the power terminal block back into the IOLAN.
4. Plug the power supply into the electrical outlet.
5. You will see the LEDs cycle for several seconds and then remain a solid green, indicating that it is ready to configure/use.

Before you start to configure the IOLAN, you should set the IOLAN jumpers for Digital I/O (see ***Digital I/O Module*** on page 346) or Analog Input (***Analog Input Module*** on page 347) channels.

DC Power Models

To power up the IOLAN with DC power requirements, perform the following steps:

1. Verify that the power switch on the IOLAN unit and the power source is in the Off position.
2. Connect the primary and secondary DC input using the following specifications:
   a. Use wire gauge 20 to 22 AWG.
   b. Strip insulation 7mm from wire ends. (If using stranded wire, twist all strands together to ensure all wire strands are used for the connection.)
   c. Connect supply with reference to the terminal block diagram and electrical specifications:



Note: When connecting only a single power supply source, ensure the connection is the primary supply and the secondary terminals are left unconnected.

Primary Supply:

Positive (+) wire to Circuit 1, terminal marked +

Negative (-) wire to Circuit 1, terminal marked -

Secondary (back-up) Supply:

Positive (+) wire to Circuit 2, terminal marked +

Negative (-) wire to Circuit 2, terminal marked -

Note: When connecting dual power supply sources, the IOLAN supports a common positive (+) circuit arrangement ONLY.

Earthing Wire:

Ground wire to terminal marked with circular earthing symbol.

Screws:

Tighten terminal connector block screws to 7 lbs-inches torque.

3. Switch On the power supplies.
4. Switch On the IOLAN. (The power LEDS 1 and 2 will indicate the status of the power source at the respective input. If both the primary and secondary power source are available, both LED 1 and LED 2 will be luminated indicated power detected from each input.)

Disconnecting 48V Power Supplies from the IOLAN

To disconnect the power supply(s) from the IOLAN, do the following:

1. Switch off the IOLAN.
2. Switch off the power source(s).
3. Disconnect all DC power input cables from the IOLAN terminal connector block.
4. Remove any attached devices to the serial or Ethernet port(s).

Your IOLAN is ready to be moved.

Configuration Methods

Introduction

This chapter provides information about the different methods you can use to configure the IOLAN. Before you can configure the IOLAN, you must assign an IP address to the IOLAN. See the Chapter 4, ***Getting Started*** on page 65 to find out how to assign an IP address to the IOLAN.

Once an IP address is assigned to the IOLAN, you can use any of the configuration methods to:

- Configure users.
- Configure IOLAN server parameters.
- Configure serial port parameters.
- Configure network parameters.
- Configure time parameters.
- Reboot the IOLAN.
- Manage the Perle Remote Power Switch (when applicable).
- Manage I/O channels (when applicable).
- View statistics while connected to the IOLAN.

Configuration Methods Overview

Some of the IOLAN configuration methods have the capability of configuring an IP address, which is the first required configuration step for a new IOLAN. Once the IOLAN has been assigned an IP address, any of the configuration methods can be used to configure the IOLAN.

Configures an IP Address

Following is a list of methods for setting the IOLAN IP address and a short explanation of when you would want to use that method:

- **Easy Config Wizard**—The Easy Config Wizard is available from the CD ROM included with your IOLAN. You can use the Easy Config Wizard to set the IOLAN's IP address and configure serial ports. This configuration method would typically be used when:
  - All ports are to have the same configuration.
  - Only the most commonly used profiles are required.
  - Straightforward application with no advanced functionality required.
  - Easy Config is installed on a Windows-based PC with local network access to the IOLAN.
- **DeviceManager**—Use this method when you can connect the IOLAN to the network and access the IOLAN from a Windows® PC. The DeviceManager is a Windows-based application that can be used for IOLAN configuration and management. The DeviceManager can be used to assign an IP address and perform the complete configuration and management of the IOLAN.
- **Direct Connection**—Use this method when you can connect to the IOLAN from a serial terminal or from a computer running terminal emulation software over a serial port. Using this method, you will need to configure and/or manage the IOLAN using either the Menu or CLI.
- **DHCP/BOOTP**—Use this method when you have a BOOTP or DHCP server running and you can connect the IOLAN to your network. The IOLAN will automatically obtain an IP address from a local network DHCP/BOOTP server when this service is enabled (it is disabled by default). You can also configure certain IOLAN parameters that will be passed from the DHCP/BOOTP server to the IOLAN when it boots up. Other configurators such as DeviceManager, CLI, or Menu can be used to set this option, and obtain the initial IP address.
- **ARP-Ping**—Use this method when you can connect the IOLAN to the network and want to assign a temporary IP address to the IOLAN by specifying an ARP entry from your PC and then pinging it.
- **IPv6 Network**—When the IOLAN is connected to an IPv6 network, its local link address is determined using stateless auto configuration.

Once an IP address has been assigned to the IOLAN, in most cases, you can continue to use the same method if it is a configurator or you can switch to any other configuration method.

Requires a Configured IP Address

The following configuration methods require that an IP address already be assigned to the IOLAN.

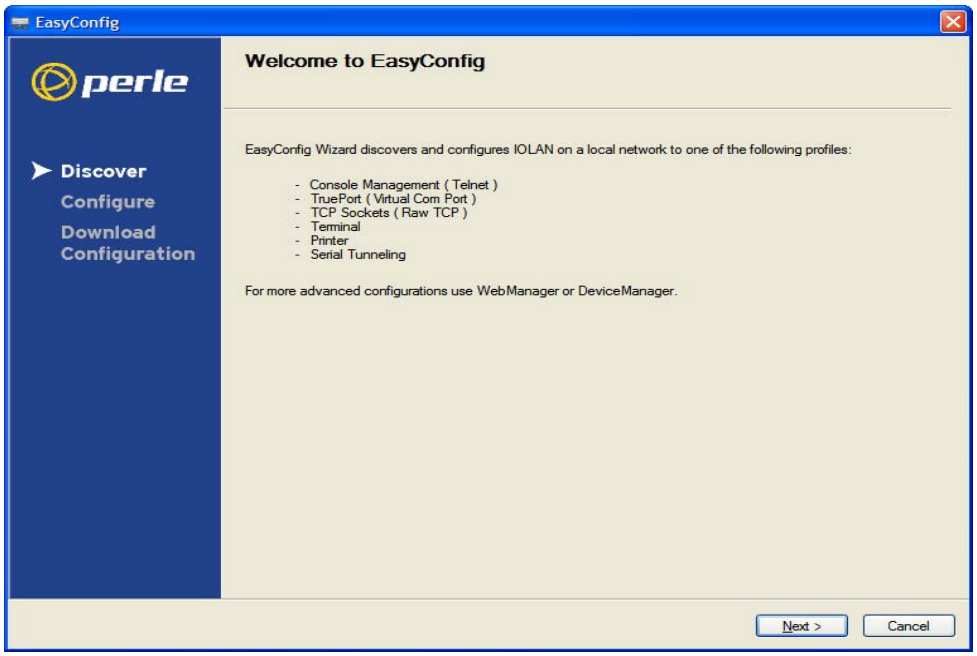
- **WebManager**—WebManager is a fully functional, browser-based configuration method.
- **IOLAN+ Interface**—The IOLAN+ interface is available on IOLAN models that are 1-16 ports (this is not supported on DS1 and TS2 models) and uses the interface that is available on the IOLAN+ product line.

Easy Config Wizard

The Easy Config Wizard is a configuration wizard that will configure all the serial ports on your IOLAN to one of the following:

- Console Management
- TruePort (Virtual COM Port)
- TCP Sockets (Raw TCP)
- Terminal
- Printer (not supported on DS1/TS2 models)
- Serial Tunneling

You can launch the Easy Config Wizard from the Perle website or from the installation CD-ROM.



The Easy Config Wizard has been designed to walk you through the configuration process for any of the available configuration options shown on the Welcome window.

DeviceManager

Overview

The DeviceManager is a Windows-based application that can be used to connect to the IOLAN to actively manage and configure it or can create new IOLAN configurations offline. See Chapter 5, ***Using DeviceManager and WebManager*** on page 73 for information on configuring/managing the IOLAN with DeviceManager.

Access Platforms

The DeviceManager can be run from Windows 98/NT/2000/ME/Server 2003/XP/Vista. DeviceManager can be installed from the product CD-ROM or downloaded from the Perle website. Unless the IOLAN has already been configured with a Gateway, DeviceManager can only access IOLANs in the local subnet. The DeviceManager can be accessed by only the admin user.

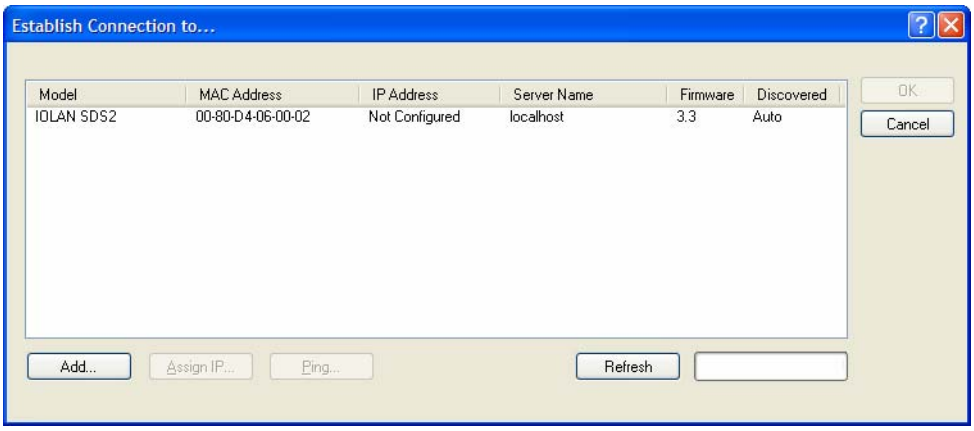
Unique Features

DeviceManager supports the following unique features:

- The ability to download the same configuration file to several IOLANs in one operation.
- The ability to save a configuration file locally in text format, in addition to the binary format.
- The ability to create a configuration file without being connected to the IOLAN.
- The ability to open a session to the IOLAN and download a (saved) configuration file to it.
- The ability to download/upload keys/certificates to/from the IOLAN.
- The ability to download custom files, such as new terminal definitions and a custom language files to the IOLAN.

Connecting to the IOLAN Using DeviceManager

Before you can use DeviceManager, you need to install it on your Windows operating system from the IOLAN CD-ROM or you can download it from the Perle website. After the DeviceManager application is installed, click **Start**, **All Programs**, **Perle**, **DeviceManager**, **DeviceManager** to start the application. When you launch the DeviceManager, it will scan the network for IOLANs:



All discovered IOLANs will be displayed on the list along with their name and IP address. When a new IOLAN is discovered on the network, that has not yet been assigned an IP address, it will be displayed with an IP Address of **Not Configured**. To configure the IP address, click on the IOLAN and then click the **Assign IP** button.

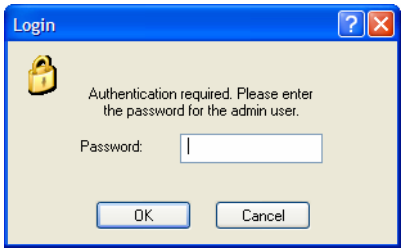
Assign IP
Assign IP
The Device Server's current IP Address:
Not Configured
Enter the IP Address of the device:
Have the Device Server automatically get a temporary IP Address.
Assign IP
Cancel

Choose the method you want to use to assign an IP address to the IOLAN:

- Type in the IP address that you want to assign to this IOLAN.
- Enable the **Have the IOLAN automatically get a temporary IP Address** option. This will turn on DHCP/BOOTP, so the IOLAN will attempt to get its IP address from your DHCP/BOOTP server. If you don't have a DHCP/BOOTP server, DeviceManager will temporarily assign an IP address in the range of **`169.254.0.1`**-**`169.254.255.255`** that will be used only for the duration of the DeviceManager/IOLAN communication.

After you configure the IP address, click the **Assign IP** button.

The refreshed list will now display the assigned IP address for the new IOLAN. To connect to the IOLAN, click the IOLAN entry and click **OK**. You will be asked to supply the Admin password (the factory default password is **`superuser`**).

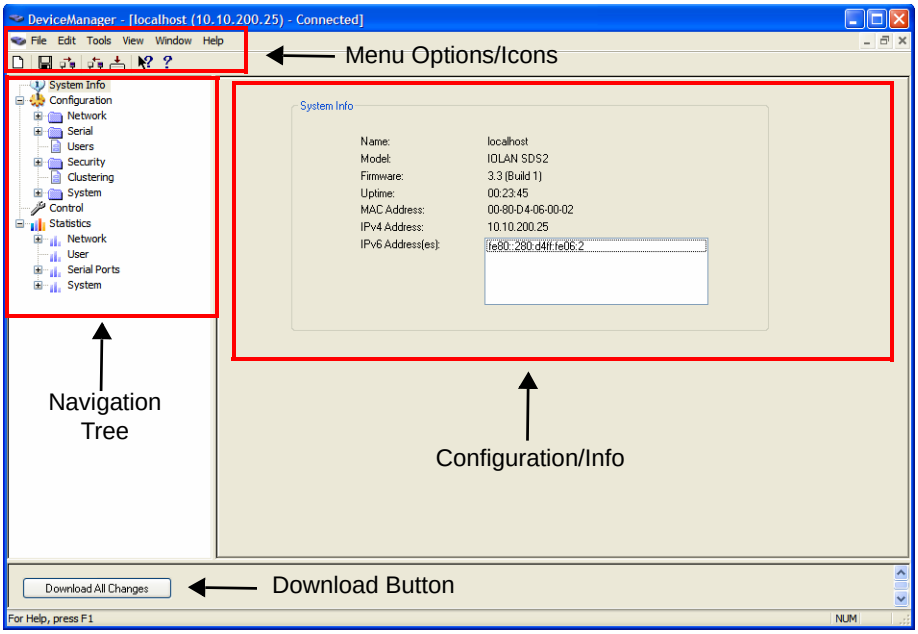


If you have a successful connection, the DeviceManager will retrieve the configuration and then display it the IOLAN's System Information and you can begin configuring the IOLAN.

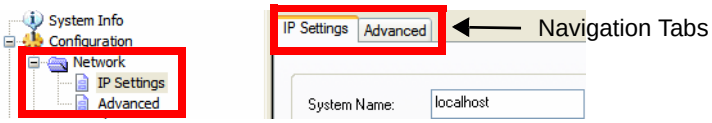
Note: The DeviceManager does not automatically update the IOLAN's configuration. You must download the configuration changes to the IOLAN and then reboot the IOLAN to make the configuration changes take effect

Using DeviceManager

After you have successfully connected to the IOLAN, you will see the following window:



You navigate through the different configuration windows by selecting an option in the left-hand navigation tree. If double-click on option that is next to a folder, more navigation are displayed when you click on it:



The **Network** folder contains two configuration options, **IP Address** and **Advanced**. Notice that when the **IP Address** option is selected, there are more navigation options in the form of the tabs, **IP Settings** and **Advanced**.

When you have completed all your configuration changes, click the **Download Changes** button to download the configuration to the IOLAN. You must reboot the IOLAN to make those configuration changes take effect.

WebManager

Overview

The WebManager is a web-browser based method of configuring/managing the IOLAN. It follows the same design as the DeviceManager, so it is easy to switch between the WebManager and DeviceManager when configuring your IOLAN. See Chapter 5, ***Using DeviceManager and WebManager*** on page 73 for information on configuring/managing the IOLAN with DeviceManager.

Access Platforms

You can access the IOLAN through WebManager from any system that can run a web browser. WebManager can be accessed by the admin user or any user who has Admin Level privileges.

Unique Features

WebManager supports the following unique features:

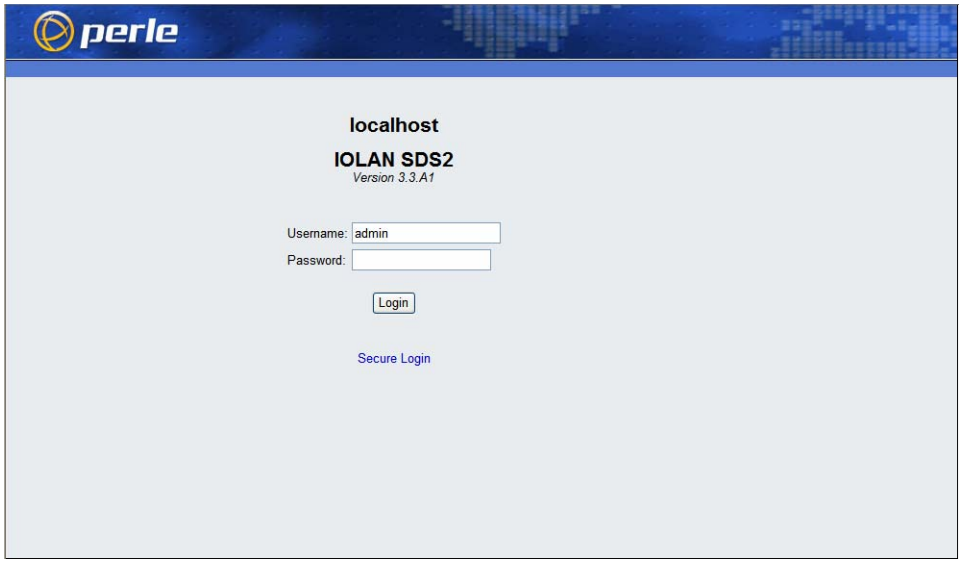
- The ability to open a session to the IOLAN and download a (saved) configuration file to it.
- The ability to download/upload keys/certificates to/from the IOLAN.
- The ability to download custom files, such as new terminal definitions and a custom language files to the IOLAN.
- From WebManager, you can launch EasyPort Web, which can be used to:
  - access clustered IOLANs
  - access ports configured with the Console Server profile and launch an SSH or Telnet session to those console ports
  - exercise power management capability (when using the Perle Remote Power Switch)

Connecting to the IOLAN Using WebManager

Before you can connect to the IOLAN using WebManager, the IOLAN must already be configured with a known IP address; see ***Setting Up the Network*** on page 66 to configure an IP address on your IOLAN.

To connect to the IOLAN through the WebManager:

1. Open your web browser and type in the IP address of the IOLAN that you want to manage/configure and press **Enter**; for example: **`http://123.123.123.123`**.
2. If you successfully connect to the IOLAN, a login screen will appear.

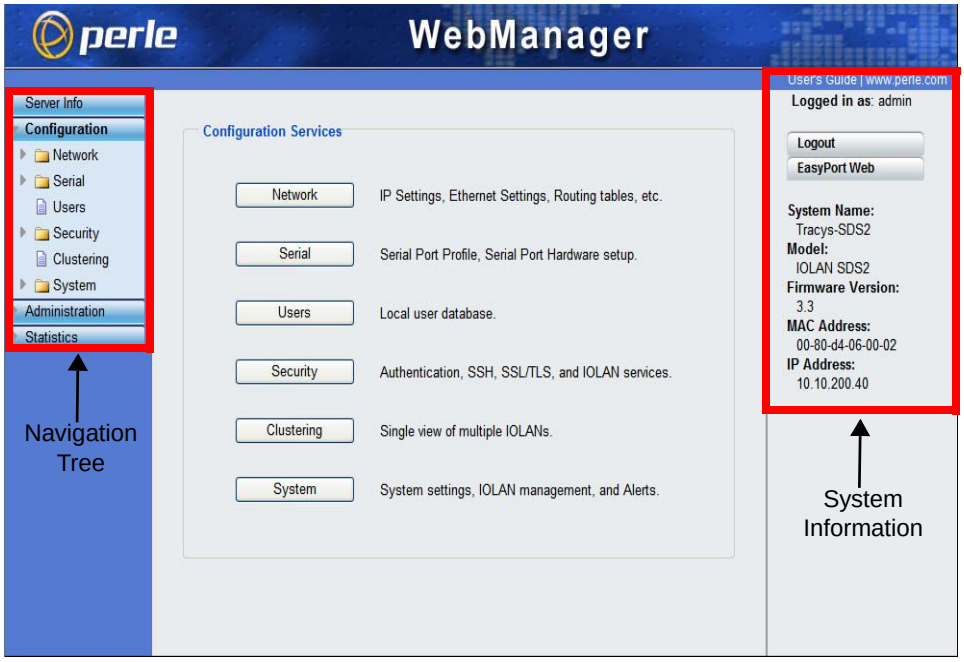


3. If you are accessing the IOLAN in non-secure HTTP, just type in the Admin password (the factory default password is **`superuser`**) If the IOLAN has already been configured for secure access mode (HTTPS), select the **For a Secure Login Click Here** link and then type in the Admin password.

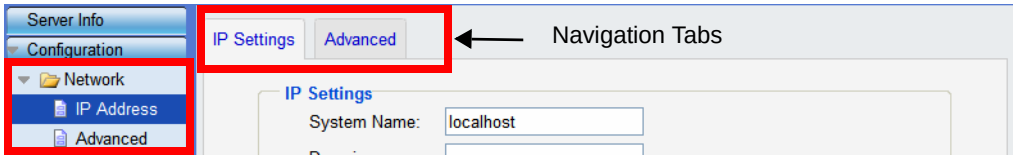
Note: The secure HTTP (HTTPS) mode requires that the **SSL Passphrase** is already defined in the IOLAN configuration and the SSL/TLS certificate/private key and CA list must have already be downloaded to the IOLAN; see ***Keys and Certificates*** on page 221 for more information.

Using WebManager

After you have successfully logged into WebManager, you will see the following:



You navigate through the different configuration windows by selecting an option in the left-hand navigation tree. If click on option that is next to a folder, more navigation are displayed when you click on it:



The **Network** folder contains two configuration options, **IP Address** and **Advanced**. Notice that when the **IP Address** option is selected, there are more navigation options in the form of the tabs, **IP Settings** and **Advanced**.

Remember that in the WebManager, it is necessary to press the **Apply** button to save your changes.

Command Line Interface

Overview

The Command Line Interface (CLI) is a command line option for IOLAN configuration/management. See the *Command Line Interface Reference Guide* for a full breakdown of all the CLI commands and their functionality.

Access Platforms

The CLI is accessed by any application that supports a Telnet or SSH session to the IOLAN's IP address, such as Putty, SecureCRT, or from a command prompt. You can also access the CLI from a dumb terminal or PC connected to a serial port.

Unique Features

The CLI supports the following unique features:

- You can access the IOLAN from any application that supports Telnet or SSH.
- Ability to clear the ARP table (cache).
- For existing IOLAN+ customers, the native IOLAN+ CLI to be used by entering the **`iolan+`** command. See your ***IOLAN User's Guide*** for information on using the IOLAN+ CLI.

> **Note:** The IOLAN+ CLI is not supported on IOLAN models with more than 16 ports or the DS1/TS2 model.

Connecting to the IOLAN Using the CLI

There are two ways you can access the IOLAN, through the network (Ethernet connection) or through the serial connection. If you are accessing the IOLAN through the network, the IOLAN must already have a known IP address configured; see ***Using a Direct Serial Connection to Specify an IP Address*** on page 67 getting started for information on configuring an IP address.

Through the Network

To connect to the IOLAN through the network to configure/manage it using the CLI, do the following:

1. Start a Telnet or SSH session to the IOLAN's IP address; for example:

   ```
   telnet 10.10.201.100
   ```

2. You will get a **Login:** prompt. You can login as the admin user or as a user with Admin Level rights. If the login is successful, you will get a prompt that displays the IOLAN model and number of ports:

   ```
   Login: admin
   Password:

   SDS2#
   ```

   You will see a prompt that displays the model and number of the IOLAN. You are now ready to start configuring/managing your IOLAN using the CLI.

Through the Serial Port

To connect to the IOLAN through the serial port to configure/manage it using the CLI (or Menu), see ***Using a Direct Serial Connection to Specify an IP Address*** on page 67.

After you have established a connection to the IOLAN, you will get a **Login:** prompt. You can login as the admin user or as a user with Admin Level rights. If the login is successful, you will get a prompt that displays the IOLAN model and number of ports:

```
Login: admin
Password:

SDS2#
```

You will see a prompt that displays the model and number of the IOLAN. You are now ready to start configuring/managing your IOLAN using the CLI

Using the CLI

After you have successfully logged in, you can start configuring/managing the IOLAN by typing in commands at the prompt. If you are not sure what commands are available, you can type a **?** (question mark) at any time during a command to see your options.

See the *Command Line Interface Reference Guide* for more information about the CLI.

Menu

Overview

The Menu is a graphical representation of the CLI. You can look up Menu parameter explanations in the *Command Line Interface Reference Guide*. The only operations that the Menu does not support are the downloading and uploading of files to/from the IOLAN.

Access Platforms

The Menu is accessed by any application that supports a Telnet or SSH session to the IOLAN's IP address, such as Putty, SecureCRT, or from a command prompt. You can also access the Menu from a dumb terminal or PC connected to a serial port.

Unique Features

The Menu supports the following unique features:

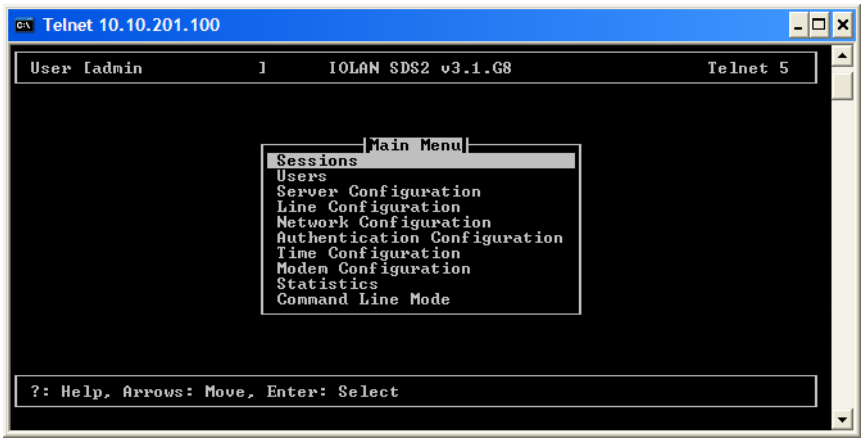
- You can access the IOLAN from any application that supports Telnet or SSH.
- For existing IOLAN+ customers, the native IOLAN+ menu interface can be used by entering the **`iolan+`** command to display and use the native IOLAN+ menu interface. See your ***IOLAN User's Guide*** for information on using the IOLAN+ interface. See ***IOLAN+ Interface*** on page 59 for more information about IOLAN+ interface.

Connecting to the IOLAN Using the Menu

To connect the IOLAN using the Menu, follow the directions for ***Connecting to the IOLAN Using the CLI*** on page 52.

Using the Menu

After you have successfully logged in, type **screen** at the prompt and press **Enter**. You will be asked to enter a terminal type, and then you will see the following Menu:



To navigate through the Menu options, do the following:

1. Highlight a Menu option by using the keyboard up and down arrows to navigate the list.
2. When the Menu item you want to access is highlighted, press the **Enter** key to either get to the next list of options or to get the configuration screen, depending on what you select.
3. When you are done configuring parameters in a screen, press the **Enter** key and then the **Enter** key again to **Accept and exit the form**.
4. If you want to discard your changes, press the **Esc** key to exit a screen, at which point you will be prompted with **Changes will be lost, proceed? (y/n)**, type **y** to discard your changes or **n** to return to the screen so you can press **Enter** to submit your changes.
5. If there are a number of predefined options available for a field, you can scroll through those items by pressing the **Space Bar** or you can type **l** (lowercase L) to get a list of options, use the up/down arrows to highlight the option you want, and then press **Enter** to select it.

DHCP/BOOTP

Overview

Several IOLAN parameters can be configured through a DHCP/BOOTP server during the IOLAN bootup. This is particularly useful for configuring multiple IOLANs.

Not all configuration parameters are supported in the DHCP/BOOTP configuration (see ***DHCP/BOOTP Parameters*** on page 56 for supported configuration parameters), so you will need to use another configuration method, such as DeviceManager, WebManager or CLI, to complete the configuration.

Unique Features

DHCP/BOOTP supports the following unique features:

- DHCP/BOOTP can supply the IOLAN's IP address.
- The DHCP/BOOTP server can configure certain server and user configuration parameters when the IOLAN is booted.
- The DHCP/BOOTP server can auto-configure the IOLAN with basic setup information (IP address, subnet/prefix bits, etc.).
- The DHCP/BOOTP server can download a new version of firmware when the IOLAN is rebooted.
- The DHCP/BOOTP server can download a full configuration file when the IOLAN is rebooted.

Connecting to the IOLAN Using DHCP/BOOTP

The IOLAN will automatically request an IP address from the DCHP/BOOTP server when the **Obtain IP address automatically using DHCP/BOOTP** parameter is enabled. To enable the **Obtain IP address automatically using DHCP/BOOTP** parameter, follow the directions in ***Using a Direct Serial Connection to Enable BOOTP/DHCP*** on page 68.

Using DHCP/BOOTP

To use DHCP/BOOTP, edit the bootp file with IOLAN configuration parameters. You can use DHCP/BOOTP to perform the following actions on a single or multiple IOLANs on bootup:

- auto-configure with minimal information; for example, only an IP address
- auto-configure with basic setup information (IP address, subnet/prefix bits, etc.)
- download a new version of firmware
- download a full configuration file

DHCP/BOOTP is particularly useful for multiple installations: you can do all the IOLANs' configuration in one DHCP/BOOTP file, rather than configure each IOLAN manually. Another advantage of DHCP/BOOTP is that you can connect the IOLAN to the network, turn on its power and let autoconfiguration take place. All the configuration is carried out for you during the DHCP/BOOTP process.

DHCP/BOOTP Parameters

The following parameters can be set in the DHCP/BOOTP bootp file:

- **SW_FILE**—The full path, pre-fixed by hostname/IP address (IPv4 or IPv6), and file name of the firmware update.
- **CONFIG_FILE**—The full path, pre-fixed by hostname/IP address (IPv4 or IPv6), and file name of the configuration file.
- **GUI_ACCESS**—Access to the IOLAN from the HTTP or HTTPS WebManager. Values are **on** or **off**.
- **AUTH_TYPE**—The authentication method(s) employed by the IOLAN for all users. You can specify the primary and secondary authentication servers, separated by a comma. This uses the following numeric values for the authentication methods.
  - **0**—None (only valid for secondary authentication)
  - **1**—Local
  - **2**—RADIUS
  - **3**—Kerberos
  - **4**—LDAP
  - **5**—TACACS+
  - **6**—SECURID
  - **7**—NIS
- **SECURITY**—Restricts IOLAN access to devices listed in the IOLAN's host table. Values are **yes** or **no**.
- **TFTP_RETRY**—The number of TFTP retries before aborting. This is a numeric value, for example, 5.
- **TFTP_TMOUT**—The time, in seconds, before retrying a TFTP download/upload. This is a numeric value, for example, 3.
- **CUSTOM_LANG**—The full path, pre-fixed by a hostname/IP address (IPv4 or IPv6), and file name of a translated language file. For example, `192.101.34.211 /accounting/Iolan_ds_german.txt`.
- **EXTRA_TERM1**—(**EXTRA_TERM2**, **EXTRA_TERM3**) The full path, pre-fixed by a hostname/IP address (IPv4 or IPv6), and file name of a termcap file for a specific terminal type.

SNMP

Overview

The IOLAN supports configuration and management through SNMP. SNMP Management tools (SNMP client/MIB browser software) can be used to set IOLAN configuration parameters and/or view IOLAN statistics.

Before you can configure/manage the IOLAN using SNMP, although you need to set the IOLAN IP address and configure a read-write user for SNMP version 3 or a community for SNMP version 1 or 2. You can use DeviceManager, CLI, or the Menu to set the IP address and user/community (don't forget to reboot the IOLAN before connecting with the SNMP manager to make your changes take effect).

Access Platforms

You can access the IOLAN SNMP MIB from any system that runs your SNMP client/MIB browser software.

Unique Features

SNMP supports the following unique features:

- You can configure SNMP traps.
- Since not all versions of SNMP support secure communication, password parameters must be set using another configuration method.

Connecting to the IOLAN Using SNMP

Before you can connect to the IOLAN through an SNMP Management tool or MIB browser, you need to set the following components through another configuration method.

1. Configure a known IP address on the IOLAN.
2. Configure a read-write user for SNMP version 3 or a community for SNMP version 1 or 2 on the IOLAN.
3. Reboot the IOLAN to make sure the changes take effect.

To connect to the IOLAN through an SNMP Management tool or MIB browser, do the following:

1. Load the **`perle-sds.MIB`** file from the IOLAN CD-ROM or Perle website into your SNMP manager (this MIB works for all SDS, SCS, and STS models).

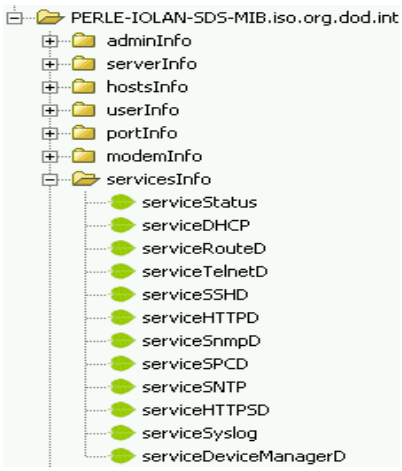
   Note: You need to have the following MIBs installed in your SNMP manager (these are usually part of the standard SNMP client/MIB browser):
   - SNMPv2-SMI
   - SNMPv2-TC
   - IPV6-TC

2. Verify that the read-write user for SNMP version 3 or a community for SNMP version 1 or 2 match the configuration on the IOLAN.
3. Type in the IOLAN's IP address and connect to the IOLAN.

You are now ready to start configuring the IOLAN using SNMP.

Using the SNMP MIB

After you have successfully connected to the IOLAN through your SNMP Management tool or MIB browser, expand the **PERLE-IOLAN-SDS-MIB** folder to see the IOLAN's parameter folders. Below is an example of the configurable parameters under the **ServicesInfo** folder.



The first variable in each folder is the **Status** variable, for example, **serviceStatus**. When you perform a **GET** on this variable, one of the following values will be returned:

- **1**—Indicates that the container folder is active with no changes.
- **2**—Indicates that the container folder is active with change(s).

Once you have completed setting the variables in a folder, you will want to submit your changes to the IOLAN. To do this, set the **Status** variable to **4**. If you want to discard the changes, set the **Status** variable to **6**.

- **4**—Indicates that the changes in the container folder are to be submitted to the IOLAN.
- **6**—Indicates that the changes in the container folder are to be discarded.

If you want to save all the changes that have been submitted to the IOLAN, you need to expand the **adminInfo** container folder and **SET** the **adminFunction** to **1** to write to FLASH. To make the configuration changes take effect, **SET** the **adminFunction** to **3** to reboot the IOLAN.

IOLAN+ Interface

Overview

For environments that have both IOLAN and IOLAN+ models or for users who prefer to configure using the IOLAN+ Menu or CLI, the IOLAN+ user interface is available. The IOLAN+ interface is supported on all IOLAN SDS, SCS, and STS models up to and including 16 serial ports.

Access Platforms

The Menu is accessed by any application that supports a Telnet or SSH session to the IOLAN's IP address, such as Putty, SecureCRT, or from a command prompt. You can also access the Menu from a dumb terminal or PC connected to a serial port.

Connecting to the IOLAN to Use the IOLAN+ Interface

To connect the IOLAN to using the IOLAN+ interface, follow the directions for ***Connecting to the IOLAN Using the CLI*** on page 52.

Using the IOLAN+ Interface

After you have successfully logged in to the IOLAN, you can type **`iolan+`** at the CLI command prompt to access the IOLAN+ configuration menu (you must have **User Level Normal** or **Admin**).

Note: The IOLAN and the IOLAN+ admin user share the same password. The default admin password is **`superuser`** (not **`iolan`**).

If you choose to use the IOLAN+ configuration interface, you should always configure the IOLAN using the IOLAN+ interface. The IOLAN/IOLAN+ fields do not map directly between the two interfaces. If you configure a field in the IOLAN configuration interface to a value that is invalid in the IOLAN+ interface and then attempt to use the IOLAN+ interface, the invalid field value will show up as ****** (all asterisks), although the IOLAN will interpret the value as valid.

Changes to the IOLAN+ Interface

You should be aware that the following IOLAN+ configuration fields are no longer supported:

- You no longer have the option of selecting **access**, **Authentication/Logging.** Also, **kill**, **reboot**, and **stats** are not available.
- When you select **port**, the following fields are not available on the Port Setup Menu:

```
** Administrator **            PORT SETUP MENU                    REMOTE-ADMIN
 Hardware                   Flow ctrl                      Keys
   Speed          [9600  ]    Flow ctrl    [None    ]      Hot   [^A]   Intr  [^C]
   Parity          [None ]    Input Flow   [Enabled ]      Quit  [^]]   Kill  [^\]
   Bit                [8]    Output Flow  [Enabled ]      Del   [^H]   Sess   N/A
   Stop             [1  ]                                  Echo  [^E]
   Break        [Disabled]  IP Addresses
   Monitor DSR        [No ]    Src   [               ]     Mask  [               ]
   Monitor DCD        [No ]    Dst   [               ]
   Interface     [EIA-232]                               Access
 User                       Options                        Access        [Local  ]
   Name [abcd             ]   Keepalive        [No  ]       UDP Retries         N/A
   Terminal type [dumb    ]   Rlogin/Telnet       N/A      Retry Interval      N/A
   TERM   [               ]   Debug options       N/A     Authentication      N/A
   Video pages          [5]   Map CR to CR LF  [No  ]     Mode           [Raw    ]
   CLI/Menu         [CLI ]    Hex data            N/A     Connection  [None     ]
   Reset Term       [No  ]    Secure              N/A     Host  [                ]
                              MOTD              [Yes ]     Remote Port     [0     ]
                                                           Local Port      [10001]
```

- User, Name—only when using LPD/LPR, Name no longer is used as the queue name
- Options, Rlogin/Telnet
- Options, Debug options
- Options, Hex data
- Options, Secure
- Keys, Sess
- Access, UDP Retries
- Access, Retry Interval
- Access, Authentication

- When you select **line**, **Access**, the following fields are not available on the Access Menu:

```
** Administrator **              ACCESS MENU                          REMOTE-ADMIN
 TTY Name                 Access    Authentication  Mode    UDP Retries  Interval
 1   [abcd              ] [Local  ] N/A             [Raw   ]      N/A       N/A
 2   [abcdef            ] [Local  ] N/A             [Raw   ]      N/A       N/A
```

  - Authentication
  - UDP Retries
  - Interval

- When you select **line**, **Options**, the following fields are not available on the Options Menu:

```
** Administrator **              OPTIONS MENU                         REMOTE-ADMIN
 TTY  Opt   CR     HEX    Rlogin/Telnet Keepalive
 1    N/A   [No  ] N/A    N/A           [No  ]
 2    N/A   [No  ] N/A    N/A           [No  ]
```

  - Opt
  - HEX
  - Rlogin/Telnet

- When you select **access**, **Remote access sites.**, the following fields are not available on the Remote Access Systems Screen:

```
** Administrator **     REMOTE ACCESS SYSTEMS SCREEN              REMOTE-ADMIN

 Sitename      [               ]
 User name     [               ]
 Password      [               ]

 Device type   (        )
 Service type  N/A
 Inactivity    N/A

 Phone number  [                     ]
 Login-script  N/A
```

  - Service type
  - Inactivity
  - Login-script

- When you select **access**, **Remote site devices.**, the following fields are not available on the Remote Site Device Screen:

```
** Administrator **      REMOTE SITE DEVICES SCREEN                REMOTE-ADMIN

 Type             [        ]

 IP Addresses
   Src Addr       N/A
   Dst Addr       N/A

 Modem
   Config         [                                                        ]
   Dial Comm      N/A
   Hang Up        N/A

 PPP Configuration            Dialer Configuration
   Restart timer  [3 ]          Dial Timeout  [45]
   Max Retries    [10]          Dial Retries  [2 ]

 Inactivity       [0    ]
```

  - IP Address, Src Address
  - IP Address, Dst Address
  - Modem, Dial Comm
  - Modem, Hang Up

When you select **server**, the following fields are not available on the Server Configuration menu:

```
** Administrator **          SERVER CONFIGURATION                  REMOTE-ADMIN

  Name               [wchiewsds2    ]                 Debug mode            N/A
  IP address         [172.16.22.7       ]
  Subnet mask        [255.255.0.0       ]
  Ethernet address   (00:80:d4:88:88:88)               Ethernet speed [AUTO    ]
  Language           [English  ]
  Identification     [                                   ]
  Lock               [Disabled]
  Password limit     [3 ]
  CR to initiate     N/A
  SNAP encoding      N/A
  Boot host          [                                ] Boot diagnostics    N/A
  Boot file          [                                                  ]
  Init file          [                                                  ]
  MOTD file          [                                                  ]
  Domain name        [                                ]
  Name server        [                    ]            NS Port               N/A
  WINS server        [                    ]
_____________________________________________________________________________
```

- Debug mode
- CR to initiate
- SNAP encoding
- Boot diagnostics
- NS Port

A new parameter was added, **Interface**, to the to Port Setup Menu, to specify whether you are setting up the serial line as a EIA-232 or EIA-422 line.

4 Getting Started

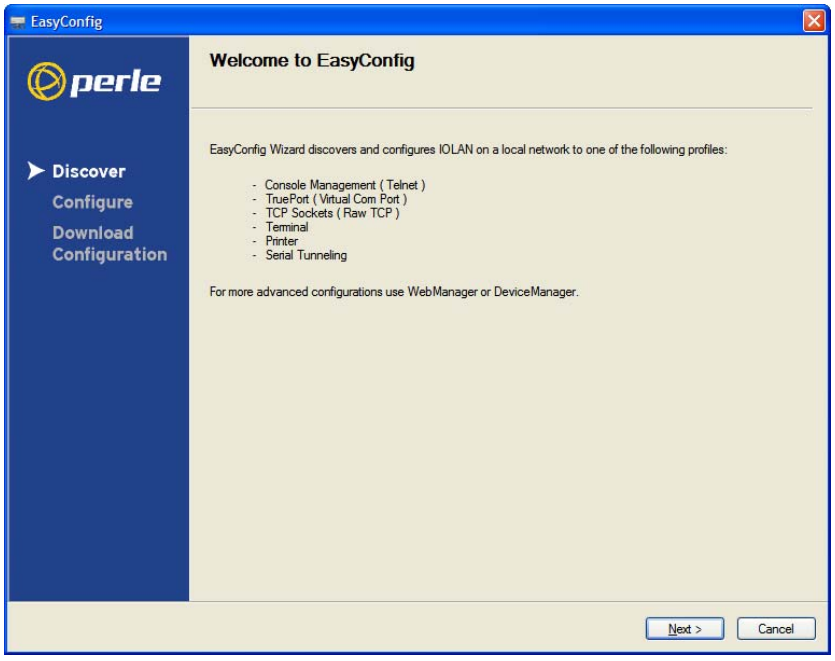
Introduction

There are several different configuration methods available to configure the IOLAN (see ***Chapter 3, Configuration Methods*** on page 43 for more information). This chapter describes the three main minimal configuration requirements for the IOLAN through either Easy Config Wizard (cannot configure users using this method), DeviceManager, or WebManager:

1. **Setting up the network**—This minimally consists of configuring an IP address or enabling DHCP/BOOTP. Once the IOLAN has an IP address, you can use any configuration method.
2. **Setting up the serial ports**—You will want to select the serial port profile that matches the serial port requirement/scenario for your serial device.
3. **Setting up users**—This is an optional step, which is only required when your implementation requires users to access the IOLAN and you are not using external authentication.

Easy Configuration Wizard

The Easy Config Wizard quickly sets up the IOLAN's network configuration and all serial ports to one of the following:



- **Console Management**—Allows users on the network to connect to a serial device that is connected to a serial port on the IOLAN.

- **TruePort (Virtual COM Port)**—Allows a networked system to communicate with your serial device through a virtual COM or TTY port, using the Perle TruePort software.
- **TCP Sockets (Raw TCP)**—Allows hosts on the network to communicate with a serial device that requires raw data throughput (such as a printer or card reader) connected to the IOLAN serial port.
- **Terminal**—Allows a terminal device to connect to a specified host on the network through a serial port on the IOLAN.
- **Printer**—Allows hosts on the network to talk to a printer using LPD connected to the IOLAN.
- **Serial Tunneling**—Allows IOLANs on the network to establish a virtual link between their serial ports. Typically, one IOLAN's serial port is configured as a Tunnel Server and the other IOLAN's serial port is configured as a Tunnel Client.

Setting Up the Network

The most important part of setting up the network is assigning an IP address to the IOLAN, whether this is a static IP address or enabling a DHCP/BOOTP-assigned IP address. You should also assign a name the IOLAN, to make it easier to recognize. This section deals primarily with setting the IP address.

Using DeviceManager

To use the DeviceManager, you must first install it on a Windows operating system. The DeviceManager is able to automatically discover all IOLANs on your local network, even if they have not yet been assigned an IP address. If routers on the network have been setup to propagate multicasts, DeviceManager will also be able to discover IOLANs in other networks. The DeviceManager installation wizard can be found on the CD-ROM included in the IOLAN package.

1. Connect the IOLAN to the network.
2. Power on the IOLAN.
3. From the CD-ROM that was included in the IOLAN packaging, select the DeviceManager link.
4. Click on the link under **Location** and click **Open** to automatically start the DeviceManager installation.
5. Install the DeviceManager by following the installation wizard. On the last window, check the **Yes, I want to launch DeviceManager now.** box and click the **Finish** button.
6. When you launch the DeviceManager, it will automatically scan the local network and display any IOLANs that it can find.
7. Any IOLAN that does not have an IP address will be displayed as **Not Configured**, with the **Model** and **MAC Address** to identify the IOLAN. Highlight the IOLAN that you want to assign an IP address to and click the **Assign IP** button.
8. Choose the method you want to use to assign an IP address to the IOLAN:
   - Type in the IP address that you want to assign to this IOLAN.
   - Enable the **Have the IOLAN automatically get a temporary IP address** option. This will turn on DHCP/BOOTP, so the IOLAN will attempt to get its IP address from your DHCP/BOOTP server. If you don't have a DHCP/BOOTP server, DeviceManager will temporarily assign an IP address in the range of **`169.254.0.1`**-**`169.254.255.255`** that will be used only for the duration of the DeviceManager/IOLAN communication.

   Click the **Assign IP** button.
9. You are now ready to configure the IOLAN. Double-click the IOLAN you just configured IP address for to open a configuration session. Type **`superuser`** (the factory default Admin user password) in the Login window and click **OK**.

10. Expand the **Server Configuration** folder and select **Server**. Verify the IP address configuration. You should also enter a name in the **Server Name** field to make the IOLAN easily identifiable.
11. To make your edits take effect, you need to download the new configuration file and then reboot the IOLAN. Download the configuration file to the IOLAN by selecting **Tools**, **Download Configuration to Unit** or click the **Download All Changes** button.
12. Reboot the IOLAN by selecting **Tools**, **Reboot Server** or click the **Reboot IOLAN** button.

For more information on configuring the IOLAN using DeviceManager, see ***Chapter 5, Using DeviceManager and WebManager*** on page 73.

Using WebManager

To use the WebManager as your configurator, you must first assign an IP address to the IOLAN. You can use the Easy Config Wizard to assign an IP address to the IOLAN or any of the other methods described in this section. Once the IP address is assigned to the IOLAN, simply type the IP address into the **Address** field of your web browser and press the **Enter** key.

Using a Direct Serial Connection to Specify an IP Address

You can connect to the IOLAN's serial console port using a PC with a terminal emulation package, such as HyperTerminal or a terminal.

1. Connect the IOLAN to your PC or dumb terminal. Make sure the DIP switch is in Console mode (desktop models, this sets the IOLAN serial port 1 to EIA-232) or that you are connected to the dedicated Console port (rack mount models). When connecting a terminal or PC directly (without modems), the EIA-232 signals need to be crossed over ('null modem' cable). See ***Appendix D, EIA-232 Cabling Diagrams*** on page 336 for cabling diagrams.
2. Using a PC emulation application, such as HyperTerminal, or from a dumb terminal, set the Port settings to 9600 Baud, 8 Data bits, No Parity, 1 Stop Bits, and No Hardware Flow control to connect to the IOLAN. You can change these settings for future connections on the rack mount models (the IOLAN must be rebooted for these changes to take place).
3. When prompted, type **`admin`** for the User and **`superuser`** for the Password. You should now see the a prompt that displays the model type and port number; for example, **`SCS16#`**.
4. You are now logged into the IOLAN and can set the IP address by typing from the command line using the Command Line Interface (CLI).

   For single Ethernet connection models, type:

   ```
   set server internet <ipv4address>
   ```

   For dual Ethernet connection (SCS) models, type:

   ```
   set server internet eth1 <ipv4address>
   ```

   Where ***`ipv4address`*** is the IP Address being assigned to the IOLAN.
5. Type the following command:

   ```
   save
   ```

6. If you are going to use another configuration method, such as WebManager or DeviceManager, unplug a desktop IOLAN or turn Off a rack mount IOLAN. On a desktop IOLAN, change the DIP switch to Off Serial (DIP switch in the up position) and connect it to your serial device. Plug the IOLAN back in, automatically rebooting the IOLAN in the process.
7. If you want to complete the configuration using a direct connection, see ***Command Line Interface*** on page 52 and/or ***Menu*** on page 53. After you complete configuring the IOLAN, unplug the IOLAN. If this is a desktop model, change the IOLAN DIP switch to Off Serial (DIP switch in the up position) and connect it to your serial device. Plug the IOLAN back in, automatically rebooting the IOLAN in the process.

Using a Direct Serial Connection to Enable BOOTP/DHCP

If you are using BOOTP, you need to add an entry in the BOOTP server for the IOLAN that associates the MAC address (found on the back of the IOLAN) and the IP address that you want to assign to the IOLAN. After you have made the MAC address/IP address association for BOOTP, use the following directions for BOOTP or DHCP.

You can connect to the IOLAN using a PC with a terminal emulation package, such as HyperTerminal or a dumb terminal.

1. Connect the IOLAN to your PC or dumb terminal. Make sure the DIP switch is in Console mode (desktop models, this sets the IOLAN serial port to EIA-232) or that you are connected to the dedicated Console port (rack mount models). When connecting a terminal or PC directly (without modems), the EIA-232 signals need to be crossed over ('null modem' cable). See ***Appendix D, EIA-232 Cabling Diagrams*** on page 336 for cabling diagrams.
2. Using a PC emulation application, such as HyperTerminal, or from a dumb terminal, set the Port settings to 9600 Baud, 8 Data bits, No Parity, 1 Stop Bits, and No Hardware Flow control to connect to the IOLAN. You can change these settings for future connections on the rack mount models (the IOLAN must be rebooted for these changes to take place).
3. When prompted, type **`admin`** for the User and **`superuser`** for the Password. You should now see the a prompt that displays the model type and port number; for example, **`SCS16#`**.
4. You are now logged into the IOLAN and can set the IP address by typing from the command line using the Command Line Interface (CLI). Type the following command:

   ```
   set server internet dhcp/bootp on
   ```

5. Type the following command:

   ```
   save
   ```

6. The the following command:

   ```
   reboot
   ```

7. When the IOLAN reboots, it will automatically poll for an IP address from the DHCP/BOOTP server. If the IOLAN has dual Ethernet, each Ethernet connection will automatically be assigned an IP address, you can access the IOLAN through either IP address.
8. To view the DHCP/BOOTP assigned IP address, type the following command:

   ```
   show interface ethernet
   ```

If for some reason it cannot obtain an IP address from your DHCP/BOOTP server, you will have to either reconnect to the IOLAN on the console port and reboot it or push the Reset to Factory button to access the IOLAN.

You are now ready to configure the IOLAN. See Chapter 3, ***Configuration Methods*** on page 43 for information on the different IOLAN configuration methods.

Using ARP-Ping

You can use the ARP-Ping (Address Resolution Protocol) method to temporarily assign an IP address and connect to your IOLAN to assign a permanent IP address. To use ARP-Ping to temporarily assign an IP address:

1. From a local UNIX/Linux host, type the following at the system command shell prompt:

   ```
   arp -s a.b.c.d aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:ff
   ```

   On a Windows® 98 or newer system, type the following at the command prompt:

   ```
   arp -s a.b.c.d aa-bb-cc-dd-ee-ff
   ```

   (where **`a.b.c.d`** is the IPv4 address you want to temporarily assign to the IOLAN, and **`aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:ff`** is the Ethernet (MAC) address of IOLAN (found on the back of the unit).

2. Whether you use UNIX or Windows®, you are now ready to ping to the IOLAN. Here is a UNIX example of the sequence to use:

   ```
   arp -s 192.168.209.8 00:80:d4:00:33:4e
   ping 192.168.209.8
   ```

From the ping command issued in step 2, the IOLAN will pickup and use the IP address entered into the ARP table in step 1. You are now ready to configure the IOLAN. See Chapter 3, ***Configuration Methods*** on page 43 for information on the different IOLAN configuration methods.

For an IPv6 Network

The IOLAN has a factory default link local IPv6 address that takes the following format:

IOLAN MAC Address: 00-80-D4-AB-CD-EF

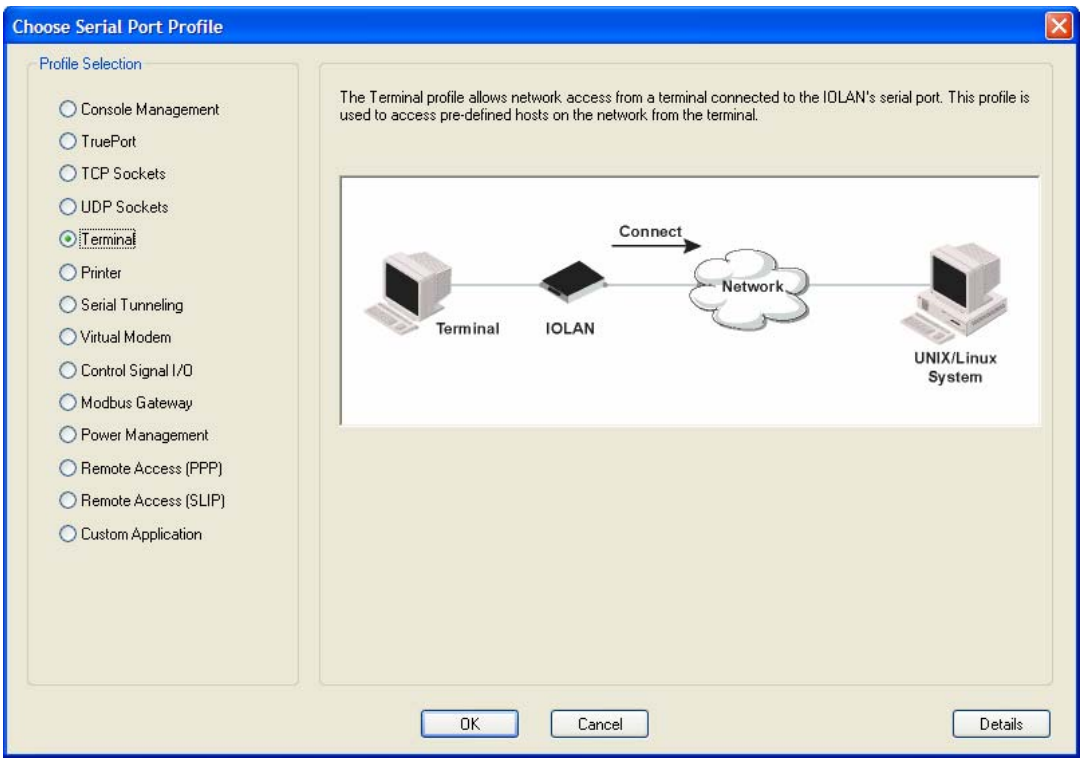
Link Local Address: fe80::0280:D4ff:feAB:CDEF

The IOLAN will also listen for IPv6 router advertisements to learn a global address. You do not need to configure an IPv4 address for the IOLAN residing in an IPv6 network.

You are now ready to configure the IOLAN. See Chapter 3, ***Configuration Methods*** on page 43 for information on the different IOLAN configuration methods.

Setting Up the Serial Port(s)

The DeviceManager and WebManager have the following serial port profiles that will simplify serial port setup:

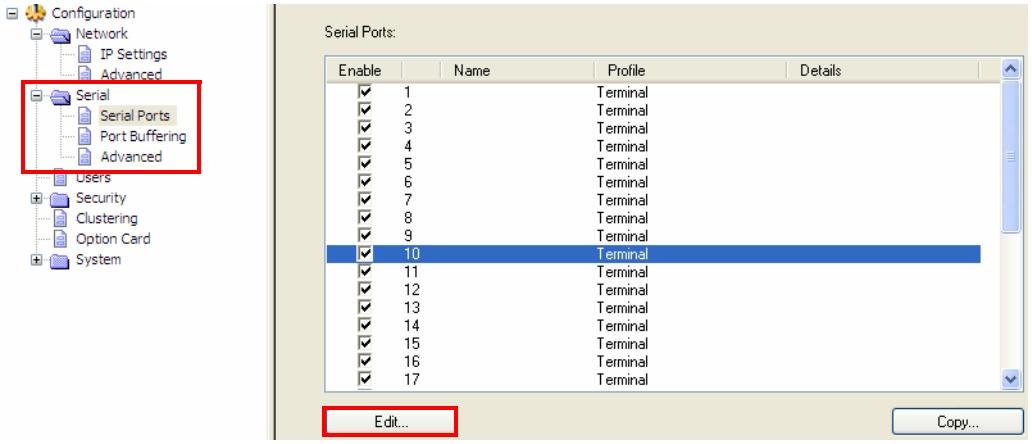


- **Console Management**—The Console Management profile configures a serial port to provide network access to a console or administrative port. This profile sets up a serial port to support a TCP socket that listens for a Telnet or SSH connection from the network.
- **TruePort**—The TruePort profile configures a serial port to connect network servers or workstations running the TruePort software to a serial device as a virtual COM port. This profile is ideal for connecting multiple serial ports to a network system or server.
- **TCP Sockets**—The TCP Sockets profile configures a serial port to allow a serial device to communicate over a TCP network. The TCP connection can be configured to be initiated from the network, a serial device connected to the serial port, or both. This is sometimes referred to as a raw connection or a TCP raw connection.
- **UDP Sockets**—The UDP Sockets profile configures a serial port to allow communication between the network and serial devices connected to the IOLAN using the UDP protocol.
- **Terminal**—The Terminal profile configures a serial port to allow network access from a terminal connected to the IOLAN's serial port. This profile is used to access predefined hosts on the network from the terminal.
- **Printer**—The Printer profile configures a serial port to support a serial printer that can be accessed by the network.
- **Serial Tunneling**—The Serial Tunneling profile configures a serial port to establish a virtual link over the network to a serial port on another IOLAN. Both IOLAN serial ports must be configured for Serial Tunneling (typically one serial port is configured as a Tunnel Server and the other serial port as a Tunnel Client).

- **Virtual Modem**—The Virtual Modem (Vmodem) profile configures a serial port to simulate a modem. When the serial device connected to the IOLAN initiates a modem connection, the IOLAN starts up a TCP connection to another IOLAN configured with a Virtual Modem serial port or to a host running a TCP application.
- **Control Signal I/O**—The Control Signal I/O profile enables the use of the EIA-232 serial port signal pins to be used as assigned Digital Inputs or Digital Outputs.
- **Modbus Gateway**—The Modbus Gateway profile configures a serial port to act as a Modbus Master Gateway or a Modbus Slave Gateway.
- **Power Management**—The Power Management profile configures a serial port to communicate with a Remote Power Switch's (RPS) administration port. This allows network access to the RPS and permits access to statistics and control of the RPS's power plugs.
- **Remote Access (PPP)**—The Remote Access (PPP) profile configures a serial port to allow a remote user to establish a PPP connection to the IOLAN's serial port. This is typically used with a modem for dial-in or dial-out access to the network.
- **Remote Access (SLIP)**—The Remote Access (SLIP) profile configures a serial port to allow a remote user to establish a SLIP connection to the IOLAN's serial port. This is typically used with a modem for dial-in or dial-out access to the network.
- **Custom Application/Plugin**—The Custom Application/Plugin profile configures a serial port to run a custom application or IOLAN plugin. After you download the custom application files and specify the application name and any parameters you want to pass to it, the IOLAN will execute the application when the serial port is started.

Each serial port profile contains all the parameters that are required to completely configure the serial port scenario represented by the profile.

To select a serial port profile in the DeviceManager, connect through the DeviceManager to the IOLAN you are configuring and select **Serial**, **Serial Ports** in the navigation pane. Highlight the serial port you want to configure and then click **Edit**.

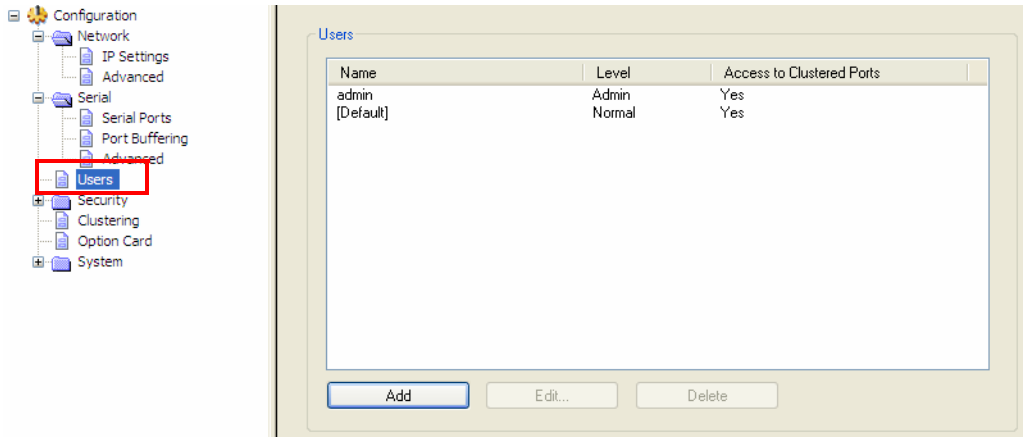


When the default serial port profile Terminal displays, click the **Change Profile** button and select the appropriate profile for the serial port. See ***Chapter 7, Configuring Serial Ports*** on page 99 for more information on the serial port profiles and their configuration parameters.

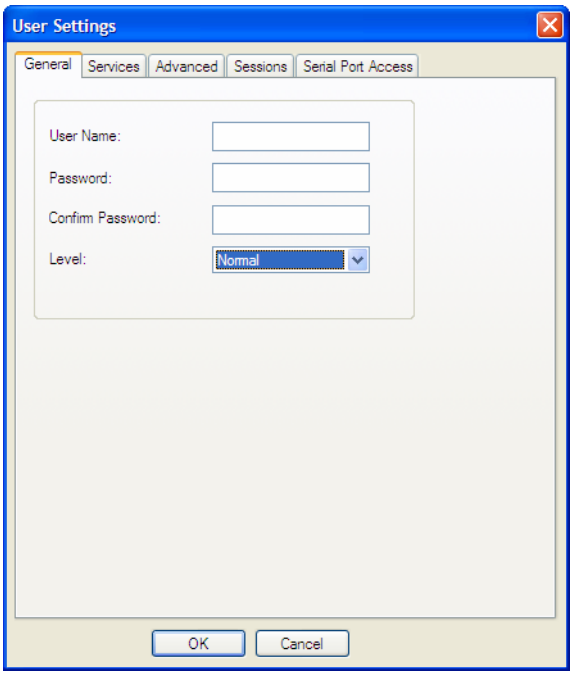
Setting Up Users

When you have a user who is accessing a device connected to a serial port from the network or who is accessing the network from a device connected to a serial port through the IOLAN, you can create a user account and configure the user's access privileges. Notice that there is a Default user; the Default user's parameters are inherited by users logging into the IOLAN who are being authenticated by an external authentication method (see ***Authentication*** on page 197 for more information) or are accessing the IOLAN as a Guest (see ***Local*** on page 198 for more information).

To add a user account, click on the **Users** page in the navigation pane.



Click the **Add** button to create a user account.



To quickly add a user, fill out the field in the **General** tab and click **OK**.

See ***Chapter 8, Configuring Users*** on page 185 for more information about the other user parameters you can configure.

Using DeviceManager and WebManager

Introduction

The DeviceManager and WebManager IOLAN managers have been designed to be very similar to use. DeviceManager is a Windows-based application and WebManager is a browser-based application. Both options use the IOLAN's IP address to access the IOLAN; the DeviceManager can be used to assign an IP address to a new IOLAN and the WebManager requires that the IOLAN already have an IP address before it can be used to configure the IOLAN.

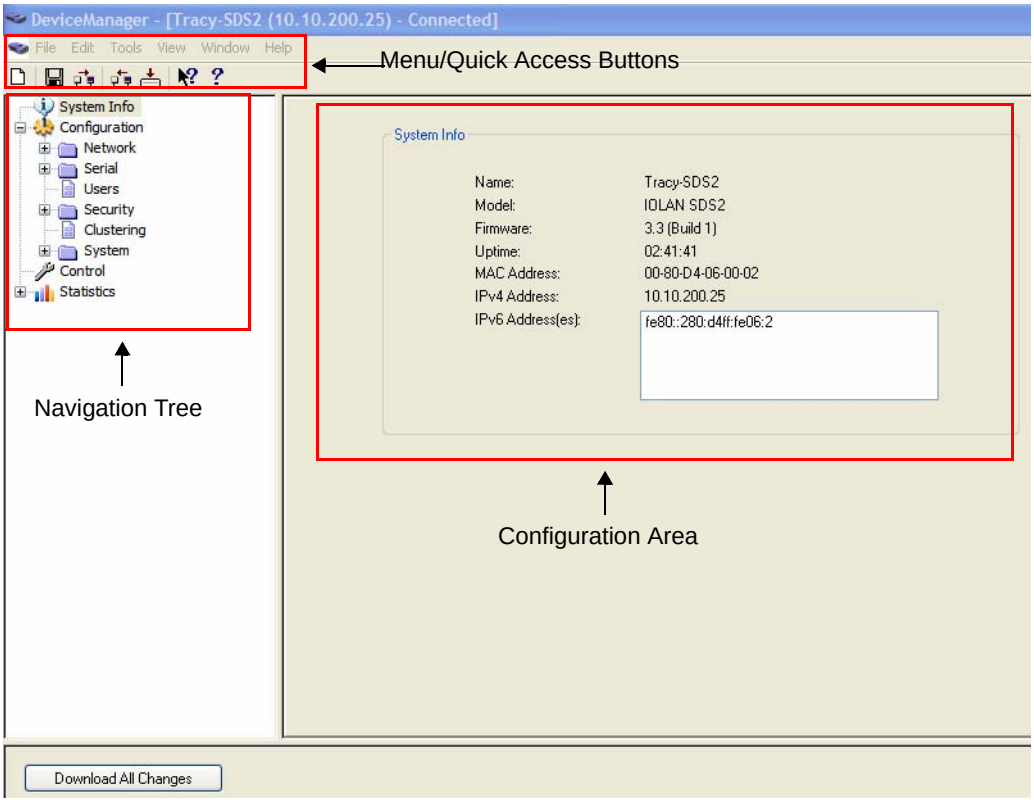
When using WebManager, you are required to click the **Apply** button each time you make a change to a configuration window/tab. In DeviceManager, you must download your configuration changes to the IOLAN either periodically or after you are done with the configuration changes. From both managers you must reboot the IOLAN in order for you configuration changes to take effect.

Navigating DeviceManager/WebManager

The DeviceManager and WebManager have very similar navigation methods. The left-hand side of the manager is the navigation tree and the center is the configuration area. The DeviceManager has menu and quick access buttons, whereas the WebManager has system information and some navigation options on the far right-hand side.

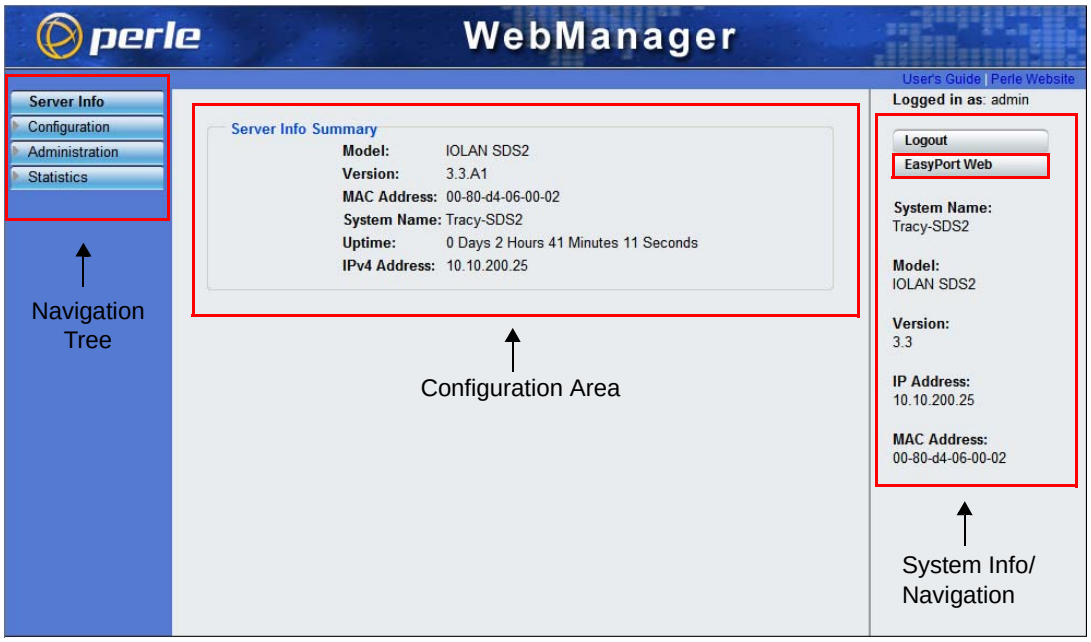
DeviceManager

The DeviceManager uses a folder/page navigation tree. You can expand the folders to see the available configuration pages. When you access a configuration page, you can often navigate the tabs in the configuration area to access all of the configuration options.



WebManager

The WebManager uses a expandable/collapsible buttons with folders and pages for the navigation tree. You can expand the buttons to view the folders and pages to see the available configuration options. When you access a configuration page, you can often navigate the tabs in the configuration area to access all of the configuration options.



EasyPort Web

WebManager also launches EasyPort Web, which is a browser-based management tool that can be used to manage clustered IOLANs, Remote Power Switches (RPSs), power plugs, and I/O channels (available only when an I/O model is accessed). EasyPort Web can also be launched by any user who can connect to the IOLAN through a web browser.

perle
EasyPort Web
User's Guide | Perle Website
Home
Serial Ports
IO Channels
Welcome to EasyPort Web!
EasyPort Web allows users to perform tasks of communicating to serial devices and provides a real-time view of all equipment connected to the IOLAN.
Manage Serial Ports
Establish a connection to devices attached to the IOLAN or serial devices on additional IOLAN (slaves)
Control attached Remote Power Switches (RPS)
Manage I/O Channels
Monitor and control individual I/O interfaces
Logged in as: admin
Logout
Web Manager
System Name: Tracy-SDS2
Model: IOLAN SDS2
Version: 3.3
IP Address: 10.10.200.25
MAC Address: 00-80-d4-06-00-02

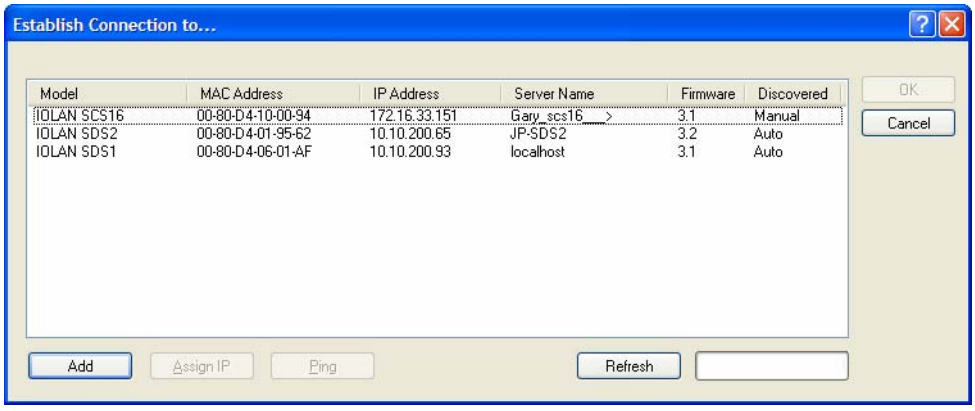
Using DeviceManager to Connect to the IOLAN

DeviceManager can connect to existing IOLANs or assign an IP address to a new IOLAN. Whenever you connect to the IOLAN through the DeviceManager, you connect as the Admin user and must supply the password for the Admin user.

Starting a New Session

To start a new session and connect to the IOLAN using the DeviceManager:

1. Start the DeviceManager by selecting **Start**, **All Programs**, **Perle**, **DeviceManager**, **DeviceManager**.
2. When the DeviceManager starts, it searches the network for IOLANs.



If your IOLAN is not in the local network and you do not have a multicast enabled router in your network and therefore is not displayed in the selectable list, but can be pinged from your PC, you can add it to the selectable list by clicking the **Add** button.

Type in the IOLAN's IP address and click **Add Server**. Select the manually added server to connect to it.

Assigning a Temporary IP Address to a New IOLAN

You can temporarily assign an IP address to the IOLAN that is connected to your local network segment, for the purpose of connecting to it and downloading a configuration file (containing a permanent IP address). To temporarily assign an IP address to the IOLAN, do the following:

1. Click the **Refresh** button. The IOLAN will be displayed in the **IP Address** column as **Not Configured**.
2. Select the new IOLAN and click the **Assign IP** button. The following window is displayed:

Version 3.1 or lower

Assign IP
The Device Server's current IP Address:
Not Configured
Set a new Device Server IP Address:
Have the Device Server automatically get a temporary IP Address.
Assign IP
Cancel

Version 3.2 or higher

3. Type a valid temporary IP address into the address field or, in version 3.2 or higher, enable the **Have the** IOLAN **automatically get a temporary IP address**. If you enable the temporary IP address, the IOLAN will enable DHCP/BOOTP on your IOLAN and attempt to get an IP address from the DHCP/BOOTP server (this will permanently enable DHCP/BOOTP in your IOLAN's configuration, until you change it). If your network does not have a DHCP/BOOTP server, the IOLAN will temporarily assign an IP address in the range of **`169.254.0.1`**-**`169.254.255.255`** (this IP address is only assigned for the duration of the DeviceManager/IOLAN connection).
4. Click the **Assign IP** button.
5. Double-click the IOLAN in the IOLAN **List**. If this is the first time you are accessing the IOLAN, type in the factory default Admin password, **`superuser`**, and click **OK**. The DeviceManager will display a window indicating that it is trying to authenticate and connect you on the IOLAN.
6. If the authentication and connection are successful, the Server Info window is displayed. You are now ready to configure the IOLAN. If authentication was unsuccessful, try to connect to the IOLAN again; you probably mistyped the password for the Admin user.

For more information about managing the IOLAN, see ***Configuration Files*** on page 79.

Adding/Deleting Manual IOLANs

To permanently add/delete the IOLAN to/from the IOLAN **List**, click the **Add** button. The following window is displayed:

To permanently add the IOLAN to the IOLAN list, type in the IP address of the IOLAN and click the **Add Server** button. To permanently delete the IOLAN from the IOLAN list, select the IOLAN's IP address and click the **Delete Server** button.

Logging in to the IOLAN

To log in to the IOLAN, double-click on the IOLAN in the **Device Server List**. You will be prompted for the Admin Password (the default is **`superuser`**).

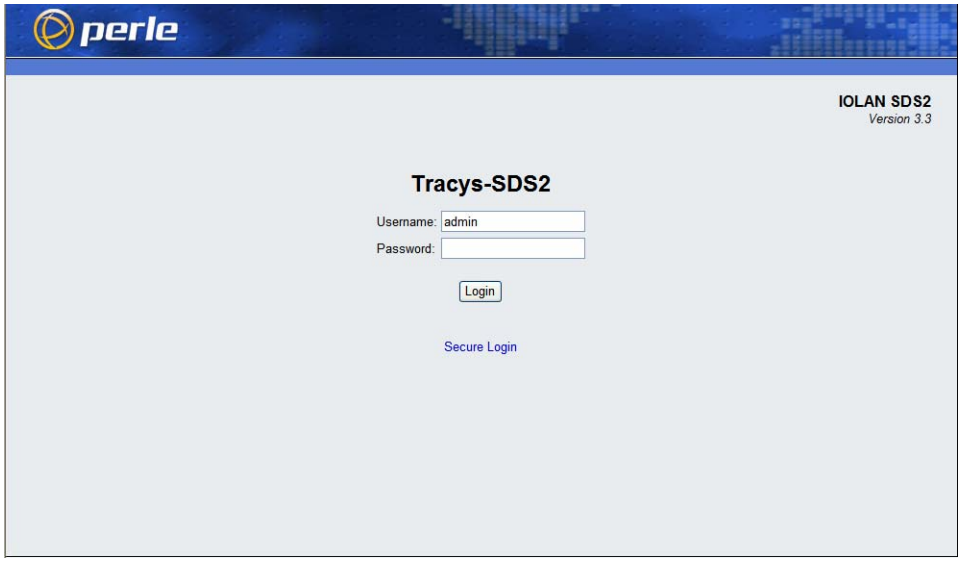
If the authentication and connection are successful, the IOLAN's **Server Info** window is displayed.

If you cannot connect to the IOLAN, you can highlight the IOLAN and click the **Ping** button to verify that the DeviceManager can communicate with the IOLAN's IP Address. If the ping times out, then you might need to set up a Gateway in your IOLAN or verify that your network is communicating correctly.

Using WebManager to Connect to the IOLAN

WebManager can only connect to IOLANs that already have an assigned IP address. To connect to the IOLAN, type the IP address of the IOLAN into the **Address** field as such: **`http://10.10.234.34`**.

You will see the login screen.



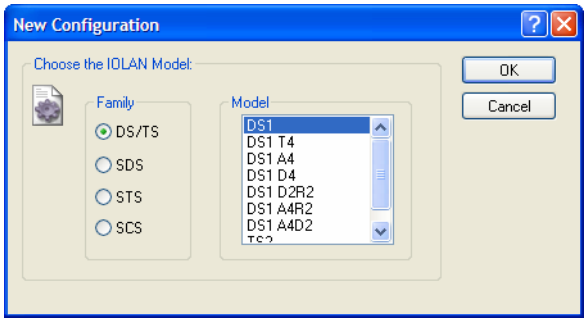
Logging into the IOLAN

Type in the Admin password in the Password field and click the **Login** button. A user who does not have admin privileges can access EasyPort Web to access clustered serial ports, Perle Remote Power Switches (RPS), and/or RPS plugs (must already be configured on this IOLAN) by typing their user name and password on the login screen.

Configuration Files

Creating a New IOLAN Configuration in DeviceManager

In DeviceManager, when you select **File**, **New**, the New Configuration window is displayed.



Select the IOLAN model for which you want to create a new configuration file. Any configuration file created in this manner can only be save locally. To download a created configuration file, you must first connect to the IOLAN, import the created configuration file into DeviceManager (this is not available in WebManager), and then download the configuration file to the IOLAN and reboot it.

Opening an Existing Configuration File

If you select the **File**, **Open**, a browse window is opened so you can select the configuration file you want to edit. IOLAN configuration files saved in the DeviceManager can be in the IOLAN-native binary format (**`.dme`**) or as a text file (**`.txt`**), which can be edited with a text editor. Either configuration version can be imported into the DeviceManager. IOLAN configuration files saved from WebManager can also be opened into DeviceManager.

Importing an Existing Configuration File

If you have a local, saved configuration file that you want to download to the IOLAN, you must first connect to the IOLAN that you want to download the configuration file to. Once you have successfully logged into the IOLAN, in DeviceManager select **Tools**, **Import Configuration from a File** and in WebManager select **Administration**, **Restore/Backup**. You need to download the file in DeviceManager and in both managers you need to reboot the IOLAN.

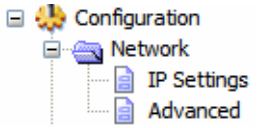
Managing the IOLAN

Most of the management tasks, such as setting the time/date, downloading keys/certificates, downloading firmware, downloading custom files, resetting serial ports, etc., are found under the **Tools** menu option in the DeviceManager and under **Administration** in WebManager.

6 Network Settings

Introduction

The Network section is used to configure the parameters that identify the IOLAN within the network and how the IOLAN accesses hosts on the network. The following configuration windows are available:



- **IP Settings**—This window sets up IOLAN's name, IP address, and Ethernet information. See ***IP Settings*** on page 82 for more information.
- **Advanced**—This window configures hosts that the IOLAN will be communicating with, routes, DNS/WINS servers, RIP, and Dynamic DNS. See ***Advanced*** on page 86 for more information on these options.

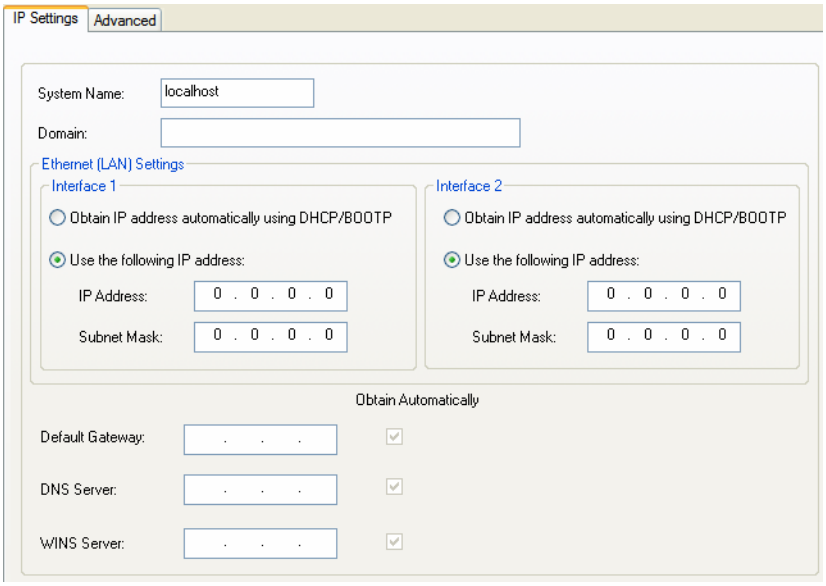
IP Settings

IP Settings

Overview

The parameters in IP settings are used to access the IOLAN and are how the IOLAN accesses the network.

Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

System Name	The **System Name** is used for informational purposes by such tools as the DeviceManager and is also used in conjunction with the Domain field to construct a fully qualified domain name (FQDN). **Default:** localhost
Domain	This field is combined with the **System Name** to construct the fully qualified domain name (FQDN). For example, if the domain is **mycompany.com** and the **Server Name** is set to **accounting**, the FQDN would be **accounting.mycompany.com**.
Obtain IP Address automatically using DHCP/BOOTP	When enabled, the IOLAN will request an IP address from the DHCP/BOOTP server. By default, when this option is enabled, the IOLAN will also attempt to retrieve the DNS server, WINS server, and default gateway from the DHCP/BOOTP server. **Default:** Disabled
Use the following IP Address	Assign a specific IP address to the IOLAN.
IP Address	The IOLAN's unique IPv4 network IP address. If you are using the IOLAN in an IPv6 network, this field can be left blank. **Field Options:** IPv4 address
Subnet Mask	The network subnet mask. For example, 255.255.0.0.

Default Gateway	Specify the gateway IP address that will provide general access beyond the local network. **Field Options:** IPv4 address
Default Gateway Obtain Automatically	When DHCP/BOOTP is enabled, you can enable this option to have the IOLAN receive the Default Gateway IP address from the DHCP/BOOTP server. **Default:** Enabled
DNS Server	Specify the IP address of a DNS host in your network for host name resolution. **Field Options:** IPv4 address
DNS Server Obtain Automatically	When DHCP/BOOTP is enabled, you can enable this option to have the IOLAN receive the DNS IP address from the DHCP/BOOTP server. **Default:** Enabled
WINS Server	Specify the IP address of a WINS (Windows Internet Naming Service) host in your network for host resolution. **Field Options:** IPv4 address
WINS Server Obtain Automatically	When DHCP/BOOTP is enabled, you can enable this option to have the IOLAN receive the WINS IP address from the DHCP/BOOTP server. **Default:** Enabled

Advanced

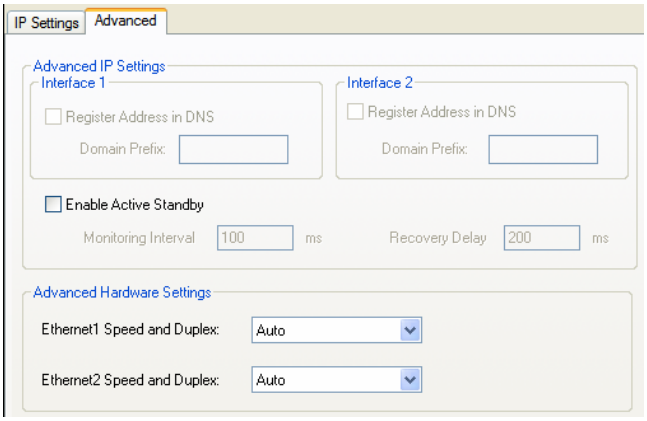
Overview

The **Advanced** tab configures Active Standby (SCS models only), DNS update, and the Ethernet interface(s) hardware speed and duplex.

Configure the parameters in the **Advanced** tab only if:

- you have already set up Dynamic DNS with DynDNS.com
- you want to enable Active Standby (SCS models only)
- you want to specify the line speed and duplex

Field Descriptions



Configure the appropriate parameters:

Register Address in DNS When this parameter is set, the IOLAN will provide the DHCP Server with a fully qualified domain name (FQDN), so that the DHCP server can update the network's DNS server with the newly assigned IP address.

Default: Disabled

Domain Prefix (SCS models only) A domain prefix to uniquely identify the Ethernet interface to the DNS when the IOLAN has two Ethernet interfaces.

Text Characteristics: <*Server Name*>.<*Domain Prefix*>.<*Domain Name*> or <*Server Name*>.<*Domain Prefix*>, depending on what is configured.

Enable Active Standby (SCS models only) **Active Standby** permits the grouping of Ethernet LAN connections to provide for link failover. Both Ethernet connections will have the same Ethernet MAC address. Active standby refers to the process by which a failure of one interface can be automatically overcome by having its traffic routed to the other interface.

Default: Disabled

Monitoring Interval (SCS only) The interval in which the active interface is checked to see if it is still communicating.

Default: 100 ms

Recovery Delay (SCS only) The time that the IOLAN will wait to make the secondary interface (Ethernet 2) active after it has been detected as up.

Default: 200 ms

Ethernet1 Speed and Duplex

Define the Ethernet connection speed (desktop models can support up to 100 Mbps and rack models can support up to 1000 Mbps).

Data Options:

- **Auto**—automatically detects the Ethernet interface speed and duplex
- **10 Mbps Half Duplex**
- **10 Mbps Full Duplex**
- **100 Mbps Half Duplex**
- **100 Mbps Full Duplex**
- **1000 Mbps Full Duplex**

Default: Auto

Ethernet2 Speed and Duplex

Define the Ethernet connection speed (available on SCS models only).

Data Options:

- **Auto**—automatically detects the Ethernet interface speed and duplex
- **10 Mbps Half Duplex**
- **10 Mbps Full Duplex**
- **100 Mbps Half Duplex**
- **100 Mbps Full Duplex**
- **1000 Mbps Full Duplex**

Default: Auto

Advanced

Host Table

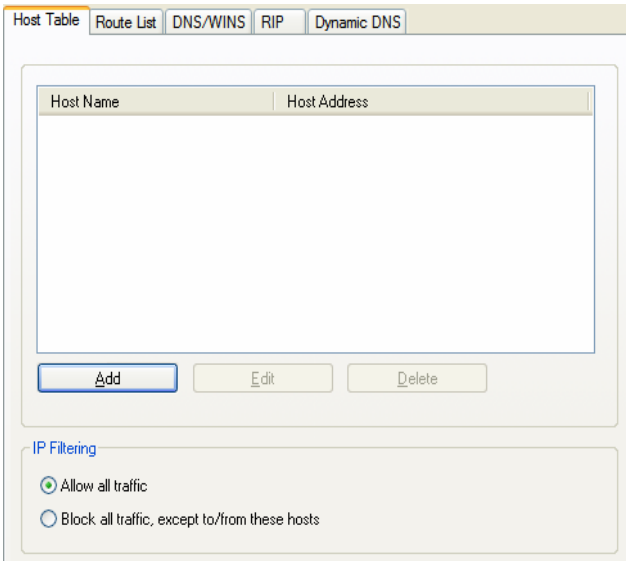
Overview

The Host table contains the list of hosts that will be accessed by an IP address or Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) from the IOLAN. This table will contain a symbolic name for the host as well as its IP address or FQDN. When a host entry is required elsewhere in the configuration, the symbolic name will be used.

Functionality

You can configure up to 20 hosts using IPv4 or IPv6 internet addresses on desktop IOLAN models; you can configure up to 49 hosts on rack mount IOLAN models.

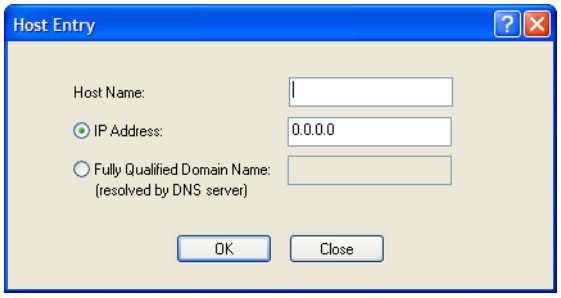
Field Descriptions



Configure the appropriate parameters:

IP Filtering	**Data Options:** • **Allow all traffic**—Allows any host to connect to the IOLAN. • **Allow traffic only to/from hosts defined with IP addresses**—A security feature that when enabled, the IOLAN will only accept data from or send data to hosts configured in the IOLAN's **Host Table**. **Default:** Allow all traffic
Add Button	Adds a host to the host table.
Edit Button	Changes a host that already exists in the host table.
Delete Button	Deletes a host from the host table.

Adding/Editing a Host



Configure the appropriate parameters:

Host Name	The name of the host. This is used only for the IOLAN configuration. **Text Characteristics:** Up to 14 characters, no spaces.
IP Address	The host's IP address. **Text Characteristics:** IPv4 or IPv6 Address
Fully Qualified Domain Name	When you have DNS defined in the IOLAN, you can enter a DNS resolvable fully qualified domain name (note: FQDN's are excluded as accessible hosts when **IP Filtering** is enabled).

Route List

Overview

Entering routes in the routing list enables the identification of gateways to be used for accessing specific hosts or external networks from the IOLAN's local network.

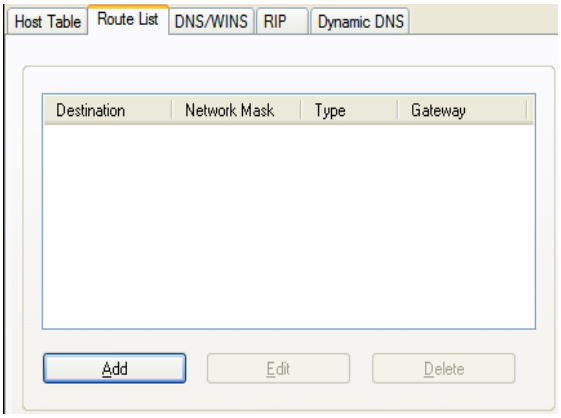
Functionality

There are three types of routes:

- **Default**—A route that provides general access beyond your local network.
- **Host**—A route defined for accessing a specific host external to your local network.
- **Network**—A route defined for accessing a specific network external to your local network.

You can specify up to 20 routes on desktop IOLAN models; you can specify up to 49 routes on rack mount IOLAN models.

Field Descriptions

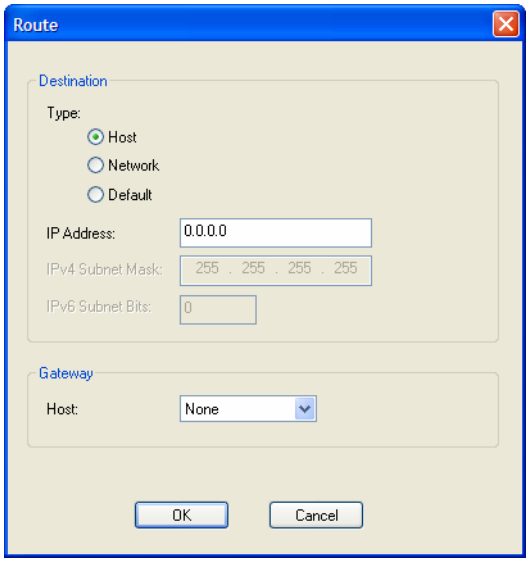


The following buttons are available on this window:

Add Button	Adds a route to the Route List.
Edit Button	Changes an existing route in the Route List.
Delete Button	Deletes a route from the Route List.

Adding/Editing Routes

From the **Route List** tab, if you click the **Add** or **Edit** button, you will be able to add a new or edit an existing route.



Configure the appropriate parameters:

Type

Specify the type of route you want to configure.

Data Options:

- **Host**—A route defined for accessing a specific host external to your local network.
- **Network**—A route defined for accessing a specific network external to your local network.
- **Default**—A route which provides general access beyond your local network.

Default: Default

IP Address

When the route **Type** is defined as **Host**, this field will contain the IP address of the host. If the route **Type** is defined as **Network**, the network portion of the IP address must be specified and the Host port of the address will be set to 0. Example: to access network 10.10.20, the address 10.10.20.0 would be specified in this field.

Format: IPv4 or IPv6 Address

IPv4 Subnet Mask

When the route is a **Network** route, you must specify the network's subnet mask.

IPv6 Subnet Bits

If the IP address is IPv6, then you must specify the network's subnet bits.

Range: 0-128

Host

The host that is being used at the route gateway.

DNS/WINS

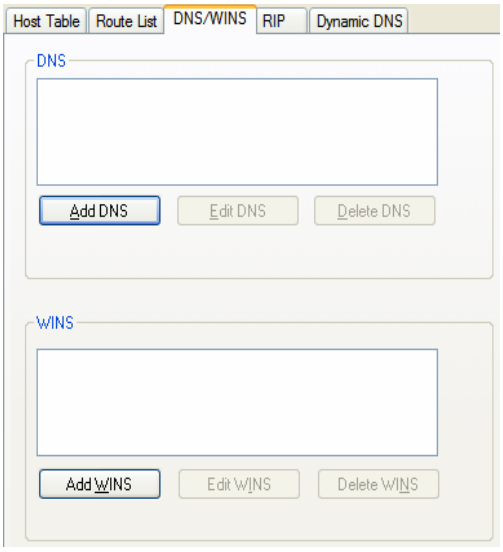
Overview

You can configure WINS servers for PPP-client name resolution and DNS servers for PPP-client name resolution and IOLAN host name resolution (for example, when specifying **Bootup** file).

Functionality

You can configure up to four DNS and four WINS servers. If only one DNS and/or one WINS servers is required, these parameters can be specified on the **Network**, **IP Settings** page; by making an entry there, they will automatically be entered into these tables. If the DNS or WINS is provided by the DHCP server, these tables can be used to supplement what DHCP provides.

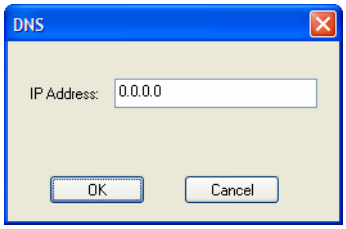
Field Descriptions

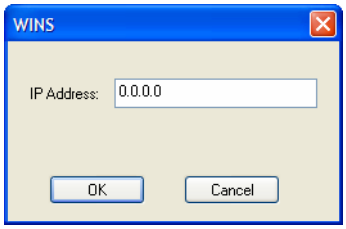


The following buttons are available on this window:

Add DNS Button	Adds a DNS server.
Edit DNS Button	Edits an existing DNS server.
Delete DNS Button	Deletes a DNS server.
Add WINS Button	Adds a WINS server.
Edit WINS Button	Edits an existing WINS server.
Delete WINS Button	Deletes a WINS server.

Editing/Adding DNS/WINS Servers





Configure the parameter:

IP Address	You can configure up to four DNS and four WINS servers. **Field Format:** IPv4 or IPv6 Address

RIP

Overview

The Routing Information Protocol (RIP) is a routing protocol used with almost every TCP/IP implementation. Its function is to pass routing information from a router or gateway to a neighboring router(s) or gateway(s). RIP messages contain information about destinations which can be reached and the number of hops which are required. The hop-count is the basic metric of RIP and so RIP is referred to as a 'distance vector protocol.' RIP messages are carried in UDP datagrams.

Functionality

RIP for Clients Configuration and Operation

The administrator can selectively advertise networks remotely connected via a SLIP/PPP link on the Ethernet connection, and pass RIP routing information to remotely connected clients. As this can be undesirable in some environments, this behavior can be configured and is defaulted to the non-routing behavior.

Additional PPP and SLIP Functionality - RIP Packet Exchange

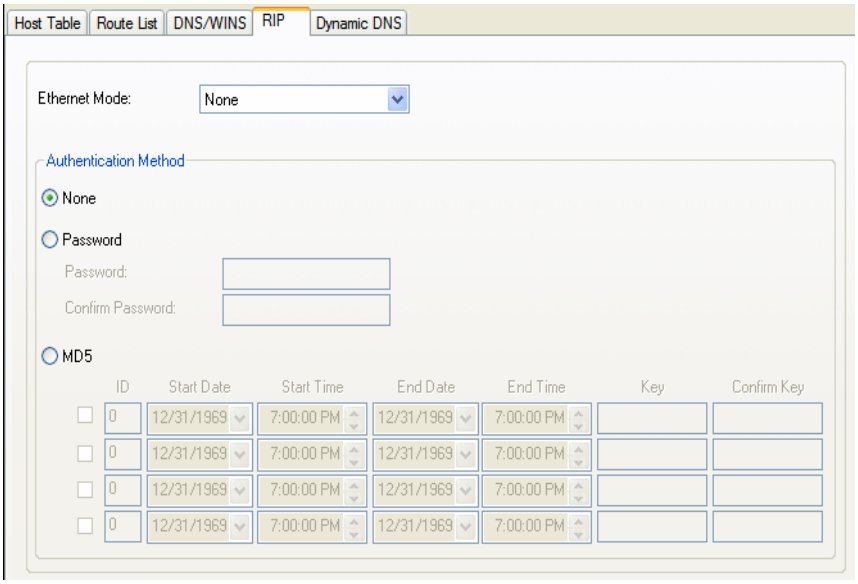
Transmission and reception of Routing Information Protocol (RIP) packets over PPP and SLIP connections can be configured on a per user basis or on a per line basis. The **Routing** parameter associated with a line and each local user determines the exchange of RIP packets between the IOLAN and remotely connected users connected from the serial side. For a user authenticated by RADIUS, the **Framed-Routing** parameter determines the exchange of RIP packets.

The administrator has four options for setting the routing and Framed-Routing parameters:

- **None**—Routing information is not exchanged across the link. This is the default setting for a line and a locally defined user.
- **Send**—Routing information is only transmitted to the remote user.
- **Listen**—Routing information is only received from the remote user.
- **Send and Listen**—Routing information is transmitted to and received from the remote user.

The setting for the **Line Routing** parameter is the default for a connection, but the setting for the local **User Routing** parameter or RADIUS **Framed-Routing** parameter is used if this differs from the **Line Routing** parameter.

Field Descriptions



Configure the appropriate parameters:

Ethernet Mode — Enable/disable RIP (Routing Information Protocol) mode for the Ethernet interface.

Data Options:

- **None**—Disables RIP over the Ethernet interface.
- **Send**—Sends RIP over the Ethernet interface.
- **Listen**—Listens for RIP over the Ethernet interface.
- **Send and Listen**—Sends RIP and listens for RIP over the Ethernet interface.

Default: None

Authentication Method — Specify the type of RIP authentication.

Data Options:

- **None**—No authentication for RIP.
- **Password**—Simple RIP password authentication.
- **MD5**—Use MD5 RIP authentication.

Default: None

Password — Specify the password that allows the router tables to be updated.

Confirm Password — Retype in the password to verify that you typed in it correctly.

ID — The **MD5** identification key.

Start Date — The start date that the MD5 key becomes valid. The date format is dependent on your system's settings.

Start Time — The time that the MD5 key becomes valid. The time format is dependent on your system's settings.

End Date — The last day that the MD5 key is valid. The date format is dependent on your system's settings.

End Time	The time that the MD5 key becomes invalid. The time format is dependent on your system's settings.
Key	The MD5 key that is being used by your routers.
Confirm Key	Retype the MD5 key that is being used by your routers to verify that it was typed correctly.

Dynamic DNS

Overview

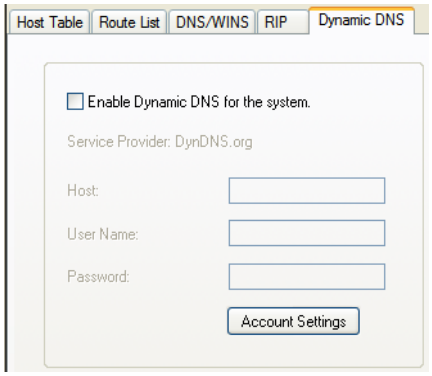
Dynamic DNS Service providers enable users to access a server connected to the internet that has been assigned a dynamic IP address. The IOLAN product line has built-in support for the DynDNS.com service provider. Refer to **www.DynDNS.com** for information on setting up an account.

Functionality

When the IOLAN is assigned a dynamic IP address, it will inform the DynDNS.com service provider of its new IP address. Users can then use DynDNS.com as a DNS service to get the IP address of the IOLAN. In order to take advantage of this service, the following steps need to be taken.

1. Create an account with DynDNS.com and configure the name your IOLAN will be known by on the internet (the **Host** name). For example, create a host name such as **yourcomapnySCS.DynDNS.org**.
2. Enable the **Network Dynamic DNS** feature and configure the IOLAN's dynamic DNS parameters to match the **Host**'s configuration on the DynDNS.com server. Every time the IOLAN gets assigned a new IP address, it will update DynDNS.com with the new IP address.
3. Users accessing the IOLAN via the internet can now access it via its fully qualified host name. For example, **telnet yourcompanySCS.DynDNS.org**.

Field Descriptions



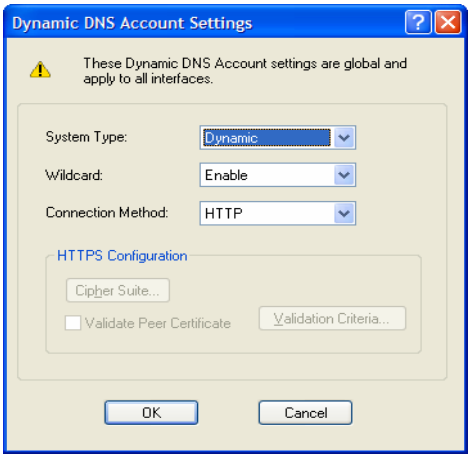
Configure the appropriate parameters:

Enable Dynamic DNS for the system	Enables/disables the dynamic DNS feature. When **Dynamic DNS** is enabled, the IOLAN will automatically update its IP address with DynDNS.org if it changes. **Default:** Disabled
Host	Specify the registered hostname with DynDNS.org that will be updated with the IOLAN's IP address should it change. Put in the full name; for example, **mydeviceserver.dyndns.org**.

User Name	Specify the user name used to access the account set up on the DynDNS.org server.
Password	Specify the password used to access the account set up on the DynDNS.org server.
Account Settings Button	Click this button to configure the Dynamic DNS DynDNS.org account information.

Account Settings

Enter the information about your DynDNS.com account so the IOLAN can communicate IP address updates. These settings are global and apply to all Dynamic DNS settings.



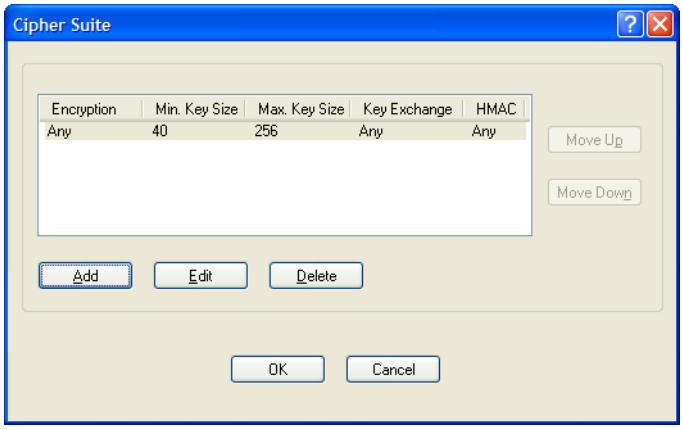
Configure the appropriate parameters:

System Type	Specify how your account IP address schema was set up with DynDNS.org. Refer to www.DynDNS,org for information about this parameter. **Data Options:** Dynamic, Static, Custom **Default:** Dynamic
Wildcard	Adds an alias to **`*.yourcompanySCS.dyndns.org`** pointing to the same IP address as entered for **`yourcompanySCS.dyndns.org`**.
Connection Method	Specify how the IOLAN is going to connect to the DynDNS.org server. **Data Options:** • HTTP • HTTP through Port 8245 • HTTPS—for a secure connection to the DynDNS server **Default:** Disabled
Cipher Suite Button	Launches the cipher information window so you can specify the type of encryption that will be used for data that is transferred between the DynDNS.org server and the IOLAN. See ***Cipher Suite Field Descriptions*** on page 95 for more information.

Validate Peer Certificate	Enables/disables peer validation between the DynDNS.org server and the IOLAN. This may be desirable, since the DynDNS user name and password are sent from the IOLAN to the DynDNS server when the IP address needs to be updated and when an account refresh is performed. Account refreshes are done periodically to ensure that DynDNS accounts do not auto-delete should the IP address change infrequently. This parameter will only take effect if **HTTPS** is selected as the connection method. **Default:** Disabled
Validation Criteria Button	Launches the peer validation criteria window so you can specify the information used to validate the connection between the DynDNS.org server and the IOLAN. See ***Validation Criteria Field Descriptions*** on page 97 for more information.

Cipher Suite Field Descriptions

The SSL/TLS cipher suite is used to encrypt data between the IOLAN and the client. You can specify up to five cipher groups.

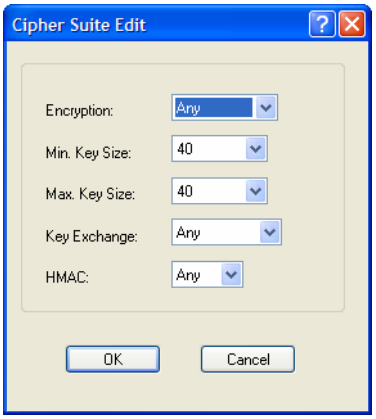


The following buttons are available:

Add Button	Adds a cipher to the cipher list.
Edit Button	Edits a cipher in the cipher list.
Delete Button	Deletes a cipher to the cipher list.
Move Up Button	Moves a cipher up in preference in the cipher list.
Move Down Button	Moves a cipher down in preference in the cipher list.

Adding/Editing a Cipher Suite

To see a list of valid cipher suite combinations, see Appendix B, SSL/TLS Ciphers on page 327.



Configure the following parameters:

Encryption — Select the type of encryption that will be used for the SSL connection.

Data Options:

- Any—Will use the first encryption format that can be negotiated.
- AES
- 3DES
- DES
- ARCFOUR
- ARCTWO

Default: Any

Min Key Size — The minimum key size value that will be used for the specified encryption type.

Data Options: 40, 56, 64, 128, 168, 256

Default: 40

Max Key Size — The maximum key size value that will be used for the specified encryption type.

Data Options: 40, 56, 64, 128, 168, 256

Default: 256

Key Exchange — The type of key to exchange for the encryption format.

Data Options:

- **Any**—Any key exchange that is valid is used (this does not, however, include ADH keys).
- **RSA**—This is an RSA key exchange using an RSA key and certificate.
- **EDH-RSA**—This is an EDH key exchange using an RSA key and certificate.
- **EDH-DSS**—This is an EDH key exchange using a DSA key and certificate.
- **ADH**—This is an anonymous key exchange which does not require a private key or certificate. Choose this key if you do not want to authenticate the peer device, but you want the data encrypted on the SSL/TLS connection.

Default: Any

HMAC

Select the key-hashing for message authentication method for your encryption type.

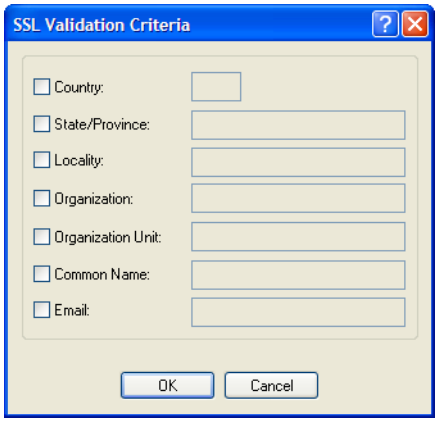
Data Options:

- Any
- MD5
- SHA1

Default: Any

Validation Criteria Field Descriptions

If you choose to configure validation criteria, the information in the peer SSL/TLS certificate must match exactly the information configured in this window in order to pass peer authentication and create a valid SSL/TLS connection.



Configure the following parameters:

Country

A country code; for example, US. This field is case sensitive in order to successfully match the information in the peer SSL/TLS certificate.

Data Options: Two characters

State/Province

An entry for the state/province; for example, IL. This field is case sensitive in order to successfully match the information in the peer SSL/TLS certificate.

Data Options: Maximum 128 characters

Locality

An entry for the location; for example, Chicago. This field is case sensitive in order to successfully match the information in the peer SSL/TLS certificate.

Data Options: Maximum 128 characters

Organization

An entry for the organization; for example, Accounting. This field is case sensitive in order to successfully match the information in the peer SSL/TLS certificate.

Data Options: Maximum 64 characters

Organization Unit

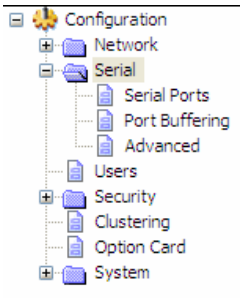
An entry for the unit in the organization; for example, Payroll. This field is case sensitive in order to successfully match the information in the peer SSL/TLS certificate.

Data Options: Maximum 64 characters

Common Name	An entry for common name; for example, the host name or fully qualified domain name. This field is case sensitive in order to successfully match the information in the peer SSL/TLS certificate. **Data Options:** Maximum 64 characters
Email	An entry for an email address; for example, acct@anycompany.com. This field is case sensitive in order to successfully match the information in the peer SSL/TLS certificate. **Data Options:** Maximum 64 characters

7 Configuring Serial Ports

Introduction



The Serial section is used to configure the serial ports on your IOLAN. The following configuration windows are available:

- **Serial Ports**—This window sets up the type of connection that the serial port is being used for. This is accomplished by selecting a connection profile and then configuring the applicable parameters for that profile. See ***Serial Ports*** on page 99 for more information.
- **Port Buffering**—This window configures serial port data buffering preferences. See ***Port Buffering*** on page 177 for more information.
- **Advanced**—This window configures those parameters that are applicable to specific environments. You will find modem and TruePort configuration options, in addition to others, here. See ***Advanced*** on page 180 for more information.

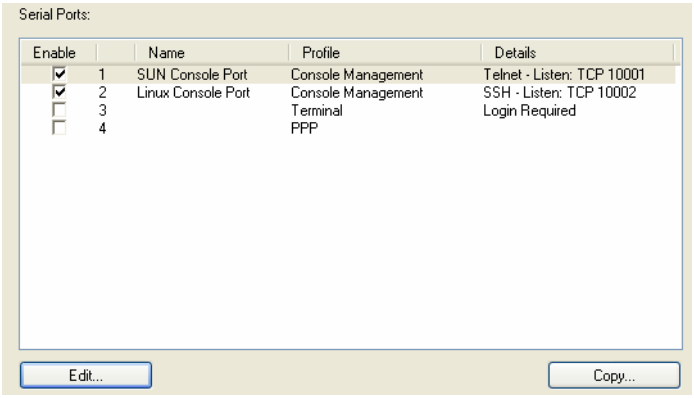
Serial Ports

Overview

Each IOLAN serial port can be connected to serial device. Each serial port can then be configured according to a serial port profile that coincides with the serial device attached to that serial port and how the serial device is accessed/used.

Functionality

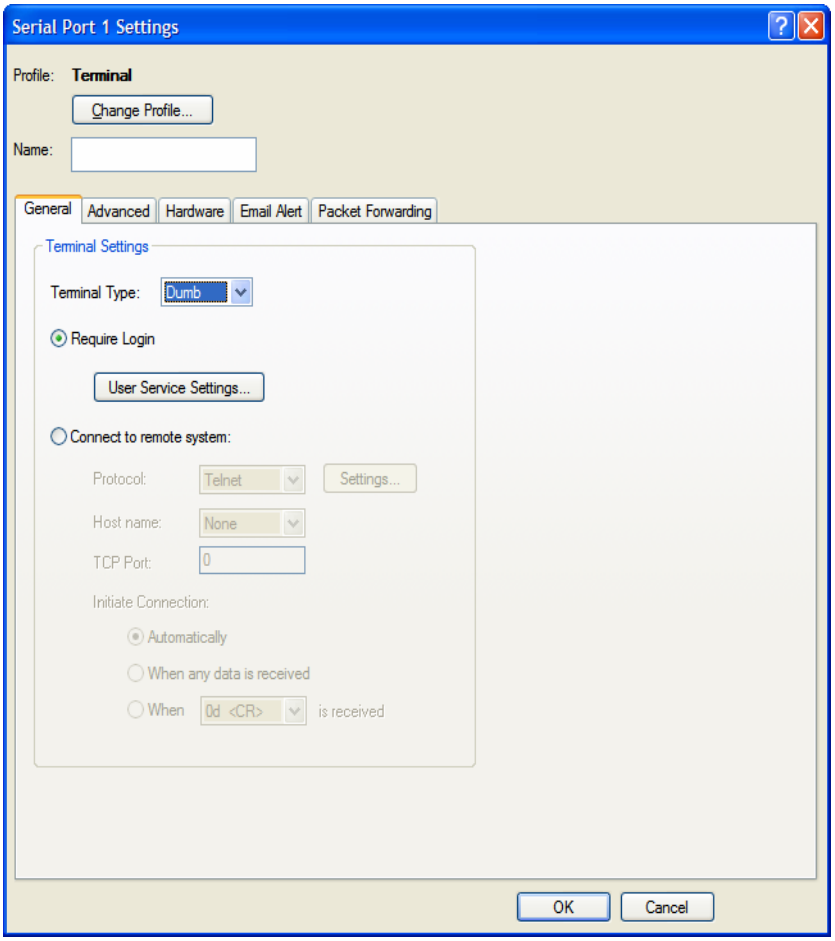
When you select the **Serial Ports** navigation option, you will see a list with the number of serial ports on your IOLAN. As you configure the serial ports, the information for each serial port is displayed.



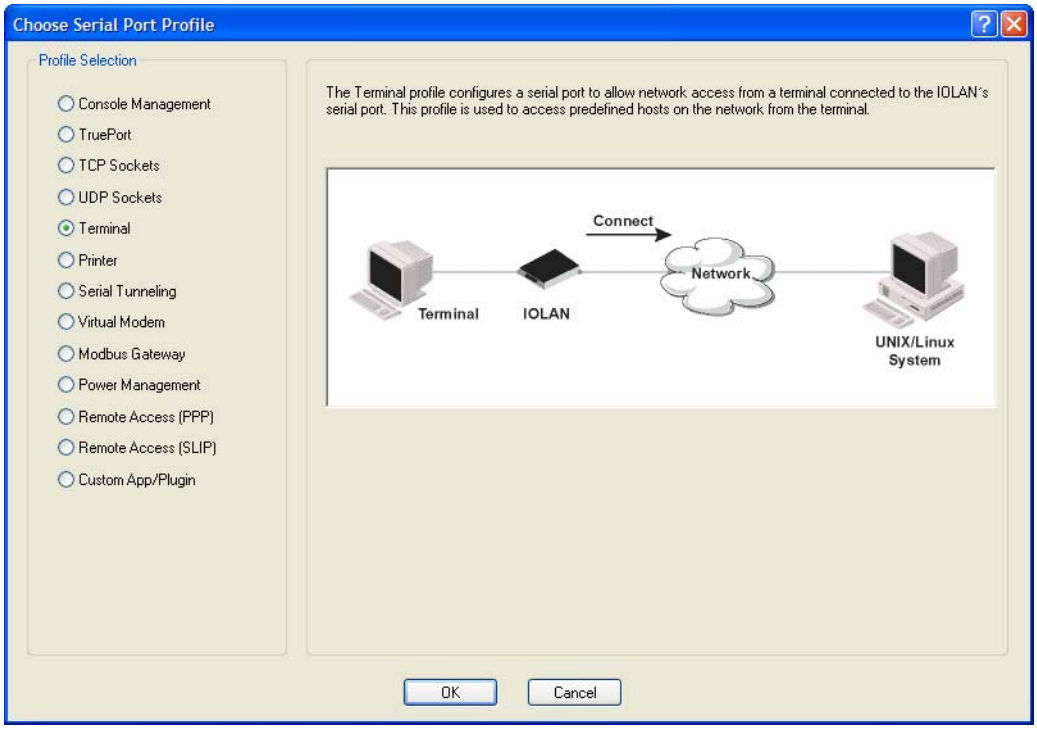
To configure/change a serial port, click the **Edit** button.

Editing a Serial Port

In the **Serial Port Settings** window, click on a serial port and then click the **Edit** button, the following window is displayed:



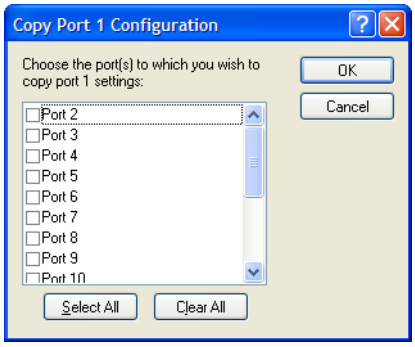
Click the **Change Profile** button to select a different serial port profile if you don't want the displayed profile:



As you select the different serial port profiles, a short description and a picture representing a typical application of the profile is displayed. When you have selected the appropriate profile for the serial port, click **OK** and those serial port profile configuration options will be displayed.

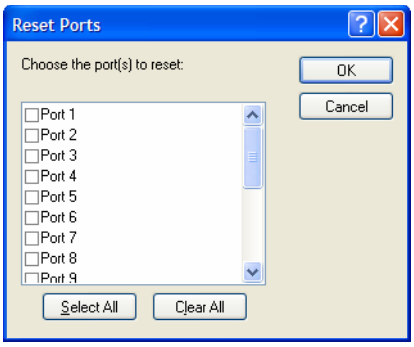
Copying a Serial Port

Once you configure a serial port, you can copy the serial port settings to other serial ports by selecting a serial port and then clicking the **Copy** button on the Serial Ports Settings window.



Resetting a Serial Port

When you change a serial port's configuration, you can download the configuration file to the IOLAN and then reset a specific serial port(s) to see how you change affects the serial port's behavior. To reset a serial port, select **Tools**, **Reset**, **Serial Port(s)**.



Serial Port Profiles

Common Tabs

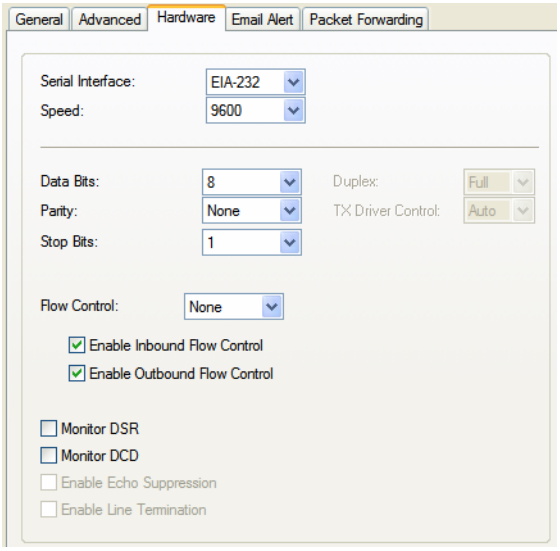
Overview

There are several functions that are common to more than one profile. These functions are:

- **Hardware**—Configure the physical serial line parameters. See ***Hardware Tab Field Descriptions*** on page 103.
- **Email Alert**—Configure email alerts for the serial line (these can also be configured globally for all lines under the **System** settings). See ***Email Alert Tab Field Descriptions*** on page 105.
- **Packet Forwarding**—Configure data packet parameters. See ***Packet Forwarding Tab Field Descriptions*** on page 106.
- **SSL/TLS**—Configure SSL/TLS encryption options for the serial port. See ***SSL/TLS Setting Tab Field Descriptions*** on page 109.

Hardware Tab Field Descriptions

The **Hardware** tab configures all the serial port hardware connection information. The window below shows an SDS1 model; your **Hardware** tab might display a subset of the parameters described.



Configure the following parameters:

Serial Interface

Specifies the type of serial line that is being used with the IOLAN.

Data Options: EIA-232, EIA-422, or EIA-485. SCS/STS models support only EIA-232.

Default: EIA-232

Speed

Specifies the baud rate of the serial line; keep in mind that speed is affected by the length of the cable. You can also specify a custom baud rate. When you enter a custom baud rate, the IOLAN will calculate the closest baud rate available to the hardware. The exact baud rate calculated can be viewed in the **Serial Ports** statistics.

Range: 50-230400, custom supports 50-1843200

Default: 9600

Data Bits

Specifies the number of bits in a transmitted character.

Default: 8

Parity

Specifies the type of parity being used for the data communication on the serial port. If you want to force a parity type, you can specify **Mark** for 1or **Space** for 0.

Data Options: Even, Odd, Mark, Space, None

Default: None

Stop Bits

Specifies the number of stop bits that follow a byte.

Data Options: 1,1.5, 2. 1.5 is only available on the 1-port and 2-port models, but not on the modem line (Serial Port 2) of the SDS1M model.

Default: 1

Duplex

Used with a **EIA-485** serial interface, specify whether the serial port is **Full Duplex** (communication both ways at the same time) or **Half Duplex** (communication in one direction at a time).

Default: Full

TX Driver Control Used with a **EIA-485** serial interface, if your application supports **RTS** (Request To Send), select this option. Otherwise, select **Auto**.

Default: Auto

Flow Control Defines whether the data flow is handled by the software (**Soft**), hardware (**Hard**), **Both**, or **None**. If you are using **SLIP**, set to **Hard** only. If you are using **PPP**, set to either **Soft** or **Hard** (**Hard** is recommended). If you select **Soft** with **PPP**, you must set the **ACCM** parameter when you configure **PPP** for the **Serial Port**.

Data Options: Soft, Hard, Both, None

Default: None

Enable Inbound Flow Control Determines if input flow control is to be used.

Default: Enabled

Enable Outbound Flow Control Determines if output flow control is to be used.

Default: Enabled

Monitor DSR Specifies whether the EIA-232 signal DSR (Data Set Ready) should be monitored. This is used with modems or any device that sends a DSR signal. When it is monitored and the IOLAN detects a DSR signal, the line profile is started. If both **Monitor DCD** and **Monitor DSR** are enabled, both signals must be detected before the line profile is started.

Default: Disabled

Monitor DCD Specifies whether the EIA-232 signal DCD (Data Carrier Detect) should be monitored. This is used with modems or any other device that sends a DCD signal. When it is monitored and the IOLAN detects a DCD signal, the line profile is started. If both **Monitor DCD** and **Monitor DSR** are enabled, both signals must be detected before the line profile is started.

Default: Disabled

Enable Line Termination Used with **EIA-422** and **EIA-485** on SDS rack mount IOLAN models, specifies whether or not the line is terminated; use this option when the serial port is connected to a device at the end of the serial network.

Default: Disabled

Enable Echo Suppression This parameter applies only to **EIA-485 Half Duplex** mode. All characters will be echoed to the user and transmitted across the serial ports. Some EIA-485 applications require local echo to be enabled in order to monitor the loopback data to determine that line contention has occurred. If your application cannot handle loopback data, echo suppression should be enabled.

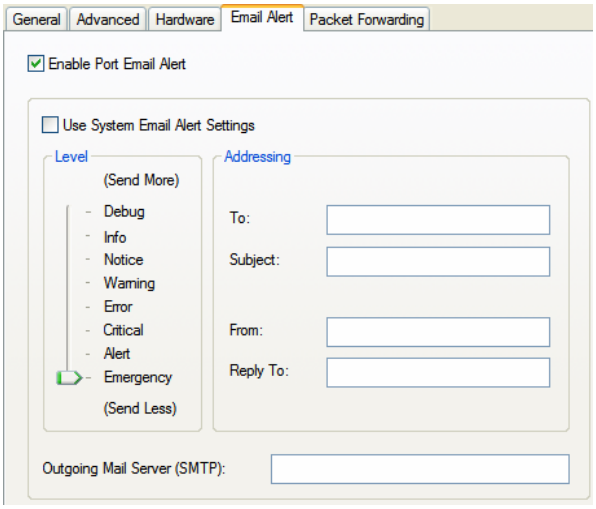
Default: Disabled

Email Alert Tab Field Descriptions

Email notification can be set at the Server and/or Line levels. You can set email notification at these levels because it is possible that the person who administers the IOLAN might not be the same person who administers the serial device(s) attached to the IOLAN port. Therefore, email notification can be sent to the proper person(s) responsible for the hardware.

The following event triggers an email notification on the **Serial Port** for the specified **Level**:

- DSR signal loss, Warning Level
- I/O alerts, Critical Level

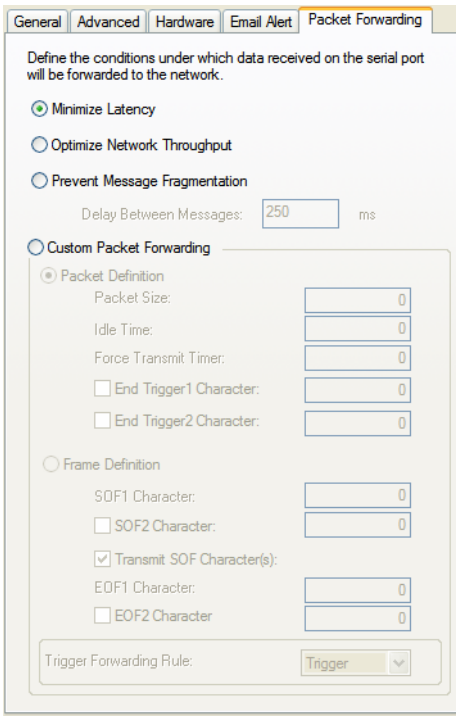


Configure the following parameters:

Enable Port Email Alert	Enable/disable email alert settings for this serial port. **Default:** Disabled
Use System Email Alert Settings	Determines whether you want the **Serial Port** to inherit the **Email Alert** settings from the **System Email Alert** configuration. If this is enabled, **System** and **Serial Port** notification events will have the same **Email Alert** setting. **Default:** Enabled
Level	Choose the event level that triggers an email notification. **Data Options:** Emergency, Alert, Critical, Error, Warning, Notice, Info, Debug **Default:** Emergency
To	An email address or list of email addresses that will receive the email notification.
Subject	A text string, which can contain spaces, that will display in the **Subject** field of the email notification.
From	This field can contain an email address that might identify the IOLAN name or some other value.
Reply To	The email address to whom all replies to the email notification should go.
Outgoing Mail Server (SMTP)	The SMTP host (email server) that will process the email notification request. This can be either a host name defined in the IOLAN host table or the SMTP host IP address.

Packet Forwarding Tab Field Descriptions

The **Packet Forwarding** tab can be used to control/define how and when data packets are sent from the IOLAN.



Configure the following parameters:

Minimize Latency
This option ensures that all application data is immediately forwarded to the serial device and that every character received from the device is immediately sent on the network. Select this option for timing-sensitive applications.
Default: Enabled

Optimize Network Throughput
This option provides optimal network usage while ensuring that the application performance is not compromised. Select this option when you want to minimize overall packet count, such as when the connection is over a WAN.
Default: Disabled

Prevent Message Fragmentation
This option detects the message, packet, or data blocking characteristics of the serial data and preserves it throughout the communication. Select this option for message-based applications or serial devices that are sensitive to inter-character delays within these messages.
Default: Disabled

Delay Between Messages
The minimum time, in milliseconds, between messages that must pass before the data is forwarded by the IOLAN.
Range: 0-65535
Default: 250 ms

Custom Packet Forwarding
This option allows you to define the packet forwarding rules based on the packet definition or the frame definition.
Default: Disabled

Packet Definition When enabled, this group of parameters allows you to set a variety of packet definition options. The first criteria that is met causes the packet to be transmitted. For example, if you set a **Force Transmit Timer** of **1000** ms and a **Packet Size** of **100** bytes, whichever criteria is met first is what will cause the packet to be transmitted.

Default: Enabled

Packet Size The number of bytes that must be received from the serial port before the packet is transmitted to the network. A value of zero (0) ignores this parameter.

Range: 0-1024 bytes

Default: 0

Idle Time The amount of time, in milliseconds, that must elapse between characters before the packet is transmitted to the network. A value of zero (0) ignores this parameter.

Range: 0-65535 ms

Default: 0

Enable Trigger1 Character When enabled, specifies the character that when received will define when the packet is ready for transmission. The actual transmission of the packet is based on the Trigger Forwarding Rule.

Range: Hex 0-FF

Default: 0

Enable Trigger2 Character When enabled, creates a sequence of characters that must be received to specify when the packet is ready for transmission (if the End Trigger1 character is not immediately followed by the End Trigger2 character, the IOLAN waits for another End Trigger1 character to start the End Trigger1/End Trigger2 character sequence). The actual transmission of the packet is based on the Trigger Forwarding Rule.

Range: Hex 0-FF

Default: 0

Frame Definition When enabled, this group of parameters allows you to control the frame that is transmitted by defining the start and end of frame character(s). If the internal buffer (1024 bytes) is full before the EOF character(s) are received, the packet will be transmitted and the EOF character(s) search will continue.

Default: Disabled

SOF1 Character When enabled, the Start of Frame character defines the first character of the frame, any character(s) received before the Start of Frame character is ignored.

Range: Hex 0-FF

Default: 0

SOF2 Character When enabled, creates a sequence of characters that must be received to create the start of the frame (if the SOF1 character is not immediately followed by the SOF2 character, the IOLAN waits for another SOF1 character to start the SOF1/SOF2 character sequence).

Range: Hex 0-FF

Default: 0

Transmit SOF Character(s) When enabled, the SOF1 or SOF1/SOF2 characters will be transmitted with the frame. If not enabled, the SOF1 or SOF1/SOF2 characters will be stripped from the transmission.

Default: Disabled

EOF1 Character

Specifies the End of Frame character, which defines when the frame is ready to be transmitted. The actual transmission of the frame is based on the Trigger Forwarding Rule.

Range: Hex 0-FF

Default: 0

EOF2 Character

When enabled, creates a sequence of characters that must be received to define the end of the frame (if the EOF1 character is not immediately followed by the EOF2 character, the IOLAN waits for another EOF1 character to start the EOF1/EOF2 character sequence), which defines when the frame is ready to be transmitted. The actual transmission of the frame is based on the Trigger Forwarding Rule.

Range: Hex 0-FF

Default: 0

Trigger Forwarding Rule

Determines what is included in the Frame (based on the EOF1 or EOF1/EOF2) or Packet (based on Trigger1 or Trigger1/Trigger2). Choose one of the following options:

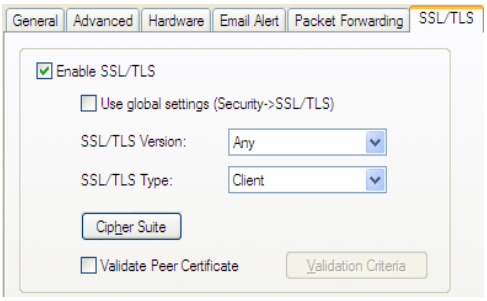
- **Strip-Trigger**—Strips out the EOF1, EOF1/EOF2, Trigger1, or Trigger1/Trigger2, depending on your settings.
- **Trigger**—Includes the EOF1, EOF1/EOF2, Trigger1, or Trigger1/Trigger2, depending on your settings.
- **Trigger+1**—Includes the EOF1, EOF1/EOF2, Trigger1, or Trigger1/Trigger2, depending on your settings, plus the first byte that follows the trigger.
- **Trigger+2**—Includes the EOF1, EOF1/EOF2, Trigger1, or Trigger1/Trigger2, depending on your settings, plus the next two bytes received after the trigger.

Default: Trigger

SSL/TLS Setting Tab Field Descriptions

You can create an encrypted connection using SSL/TLS for any profile that accesses the IOLAN from the network. You can set up the IOLAN to act as an SSL/TLS client or server. There is an extensive selection of SSL/TLS ciphers that you can configure for your SSL/TLS connection; Appendix B, SSL/TLS Ciphers on page 327 for a list of SSL/TLS ciphers. You can also enable peer certificate validation, for which you must supply the validation criteria that was used when creating the peer certificate (this is case sensitive, so keep that in mind when enabling and configuring this option).

See ***Keys and Certificates*** on page 221 for information about SSL/TLS support documents.



Configure the following parameters:

Enable SSL/TLS
Activates the SSL/TLS settings for the serial port.
Default: Disabled

Use global settings
Uses the SSL/TLS settings configured in the **Security** section for the serial port.
Default: Enabled

SSL/TLS Version
Specify whether you want to use:
- **Any**—The IOLAN will try a TLSv1 connection first. If that fails, it will try an SSLv3 connection. If that fails, it will try an SSLv2 connection.
- **TLSv1**—The connection will use only TLSv1.
- **SSLv3**—The connection will use only SSLv3.

Default: Any

SSL/TLS Type
Specify whether the IOLAN serial port will act as an SSL/TLS client or server.
Default: Client

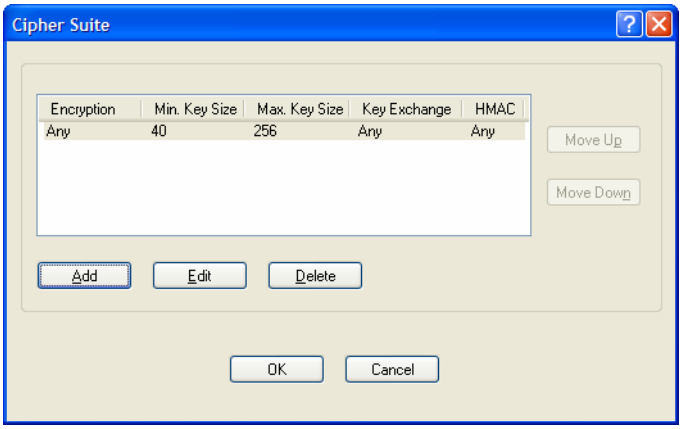
Cipher Suite Button
Click this button to specify SSL/TLS connection ciphers.
See ***Cipher Suite Field Descriptions*** on page 110 for more information.

Validate Peer Certificate
Enable this option when you want the Validation Criteria to match the Peer Certificate for authentication to pass. If you enable this option, you need to download an SSL/TLS certificate authority (CA) list file to the IOLAN.
Default: Disabled

Validation Criteria Button
Click this button to create peer certificate validation criteria that must be met for a valid SSL/TLS connection.
See ***Validation Criteria Field Descriptions*** on page 112 for more information.

Cipher Suite Field Descriptions

The SSL/TLS cipher suite is used to encrypt data between the IOLAN and the client. You can specify up to five cipher groups.

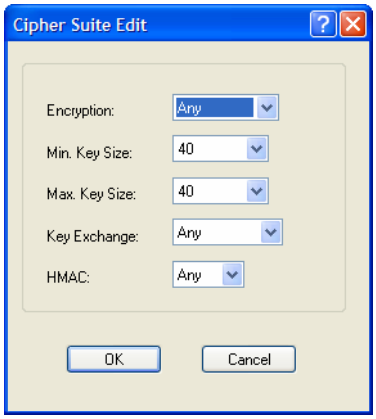


The following buttons are available on this window:

Add Button	Adds a cipher to the cipher list.
Edit Button	Edits a cipher in the cipher list.
Delete Button	Deletes a cipher to the cipher list.
Move Up Button	Moves a cipher up in preference in the cipher list.
Move Down Button	Moves a cipher down in preference in the cipher list.

Adding/Editing a Cipher Suite

To see a list of valid cipher suite combinations, see Appendix B, SSL/TLS Ciphers on page 327.



Configure the following parameters:

Encryption — Select the type of encryption that will be used for the SSL connection.

Data Options:

- Any—Will use the first encryption format that can be negotiated.
- AES
- 3DES
- DES
- ARCFOUR
- ARCTWO

Default: Any

Min Key Size — The minimum key size value that will be used for the specified encryption type.

Data Options: 40, 56, 64, 128, 168, 256

Default: 40

Max Key Size — The maximum key size value that will be used for the specified encryption type.

Data Options: 40, 56, 64, 128, 168, 256

Default: 256

Key Exchange — The type of key to exchange for the encryption format.

Data Options:

- **Any**—Any key exchange that is valid is used (this does not, however, include ADH keys).
- **RSA**—This is an RSA key exchange using an RSA key and certificate.
- **EDH-RSA**—This is an EDH key exchange using an RSA key and certificate.
- **EDH-DSS**—This is an EDH key exchange using a DSA key and certificate.
- **ADH**—This is an anonymous key exchange which does not require a private key or certificate. Choose this key if you do not want to authenticate the peer device, but you want the data encrypted on the SSL/TLS connection.

Default: Any

HMAC

Select the key-hashing for message authentication method for your encryption type.

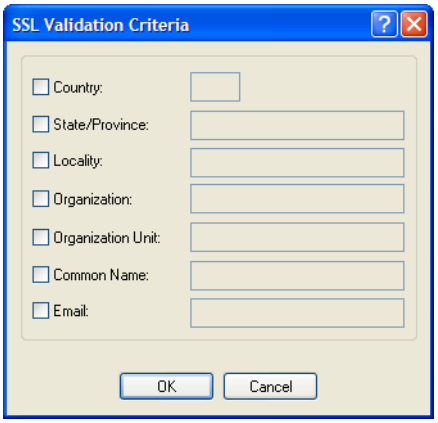
Data Options:

- Any
- MD5
- SHA1

Default: Any

Validation Criteria Field Descriptions

If you choose to configure validation criteria, the information in the peer SSL/TLS certificate must match exactly the information configured in this window in order to pass peer authentication and create a valid SSL/TLS connection.



Configure the following parameters:

Country

A country code; for example, US. This field is case sensitive in order to successfully match the information in the peer SSL/TLS certificate.

Data Options: Two characters

State/Province

An entry for the state/province; for example, IL. This field is case sensitive in order to successfully match the information in the peer SSL/TLS certificate.

Data Options: Maximum 128 characters

Locality

An entry for the location; for example, Chicago. This field is case sensitive in order to successfully match the information in the peer SSL/TLS certificate.

Data Options: Maximum 128 characters

Organization

An entry for the organization; for example, Accounting. This field is case sensitive in order to successfully match the information in the peer SSL/TLS certificate.

Data Options: Maximum 64 characters

Organization Unit

An entry for the unit in the organization; for example, Payroll. This field is case sensitive in order to successfully match the information in the peer SSL/TLS certificate.

Data Options: Maximum 64 characters

Common Name	An entry for common name; for example, the host name or fully qualified domain name. This field is case sensitive in order to successfully match the information in the peer SSL/TLS certificate. **Data Options:** Maximum 64 characters
Email	An entry for an email address; for example, acct@anycompany.com. This field is case sensitive in order to successfully match the information in the peer SSL/TLS certificate. **Data Options:** Maximum 64 characters

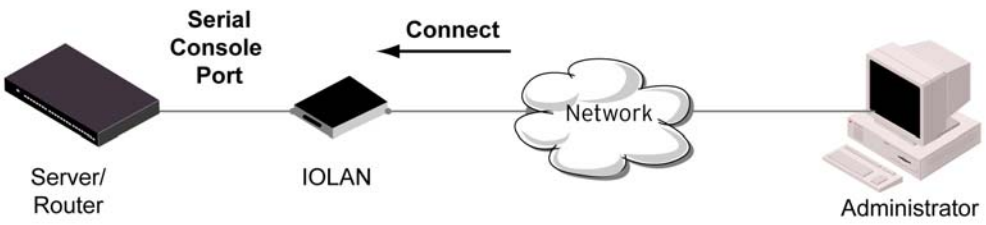
Console Management Profile

Overview

The Console Management profile provides access through the network to a console or administrative port of a server or router attached to the IOLAN's serial port. This profile configures the IOLAN's serial port to set up a TCP socket that will listen for a Telnet or SSH connection from the network.

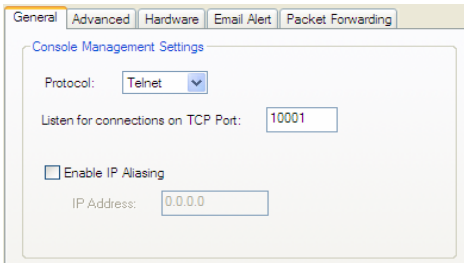
Functionality

Use the Console Management profile when you are configuring users who need to access a serial console port from the network.



General Tab Field Descriptions

The **Console Management General** tab configures how the serial port will be accessed by the user through the network.

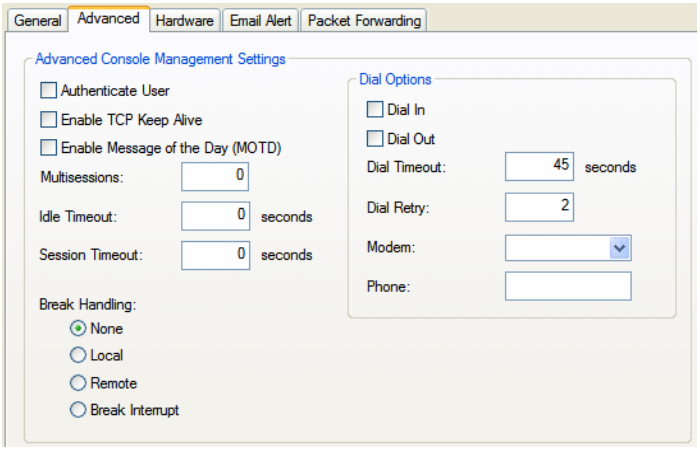


Configure the following parameters:

Protocol	Specify the connection method that users will use to communicate with a serial device connected to the IOLAN through the network. **Data Options:** Telnet, SSH **Default:** Telnet
Listen for Connections on TCP Port	The port number that the IOLAN will listen on for incoming TCP connections. **Default:** 10001, depending on the serial port number
Enable IP Aliasing	Enables/disables the ability to access a serial device connected to the serial port by an IP address (or host name that can be resolved to the Internet Address in a DNS network) instead of the IOLAN's IP address and port number. **Default:** Disabled
IP Address	Users can access serial devices connected to the IOLAN through the network by the specified Internet Address (or host name that can be resolved to the Internet Address in a DNS network). **Data Options:** IPv4 Address

Advanced Tab Field Descriptions

The **Console Management Advanced** tab configures serial port options that may be required by certain applications.



Configure the following parameters:

Authenticate User
Enables/disables login/password authentication for users connecting from the network.

Default: Disabled

Enable TCP Keep Alive
Enables a per-connection TCP keepalive feature. After the configured number of seconds, the connection will send a gratuitous ACK to the network peer, thus either ensuring the connection stays active OR causing a dropped connection condition to be recognized.

This parameter needs to be used in conjunction with **Monitor Connection Status Interval** parameter found in the **Serial**, **Advanced**, **Advanced Settings** tab. The interval determines how long the IOLAN will wait during inactivity before "testing" the connection. It should be noted that if a network connection is accidentally dropped, it can take as long as the specified interval before anyone can reconnect to the serial port.

Default: Disabled

Enable Message of the Day (MOTD)
Enables/disables the display of the message of the day.

Default: Disabled

Multisessions
The number of extra network connections available on a serial port (available only on 2 port+ models), in addition to the single session that is always available. Enabling multisessions will permit multiple users to monitor the same console port. Each user monitoring the port can be assigned different privileges to this port.

Data Range: 0-7 multisessions per serial port

Default: 0

Idle Timeout
Use this timer to close a connection because of inactivity. When the **Idle Timeout** expires, the IOLAN will end the connection.

Default: 0 seconds so the port will never timeout

Range: 0-4294967 seconds (about 49 days)

Break Handling Specifies how a break is interpreted.

Data Range:

- **None**—The IOLAN ignores the break key completely and it is not passed through to the host.
- **Local**—The IOLAN deals with the break locally. If the user is in a session, the break key has the same effect as a hot key.
- **Remote**—When the break key is pressed, the IOLAN translates this into a telnet break signal which it sends to the host machine.
- **Break Interrupt**—On some systems such as SunOS, XENIX, and AIX, a break received from the peripheral is not passed to the client properly. If the client wishes to make the break act like an interrupt key (for example, when the stty options **`-ignbrk`** and **`brkintr`** are set).

Default: None

Dial In If the console port is remote and will be dialing in via modem or ISDN TA, enable this parameter.

Default: Disabled

Dial Out If you want the modem to dial a number when the serial port is started, enable this parameter.

Default: Disabled

Dial Timeout The number of seconds the IOLAN will wait to establish a connection to a remote modem.

Range: 1-99

Default: 45 seconds

Dial Retry The number of times the IOLAN will attempt to re-establish a connection with a remote modem.

Range: 0-99

Default: 2

Modem The name of the predefined modem that is used on this line.

Phone The phone number to use when **Dial Out** is enabled.

TruePort Profile

Overview

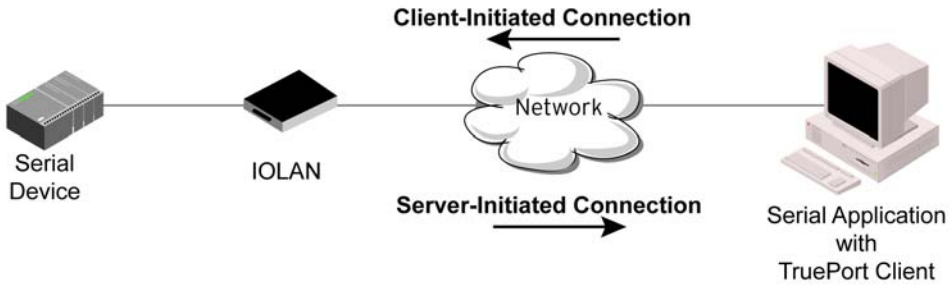
TruePort is especially useful when you want to improve data security, as you can enable an SSL/TLS connection between the TruePort host port and the IOLAN. TruePort is COM Port redirector that is supplied with the IOLAN. TruePort can be installed as a client on a Workstation or Server and supports a variety of operating systems. It, in conjunction with the IOLAN, emulates a local serial port (COM port), to the application, to provide connectivity to a remote serial device over the network. The TruePort profile operates in conjunction with the TruePort software.

Functionality

TruePort is a COM port redirector utility for the IOLAN. It can be run in two modes (these modes will be set on the client software when it is configured):

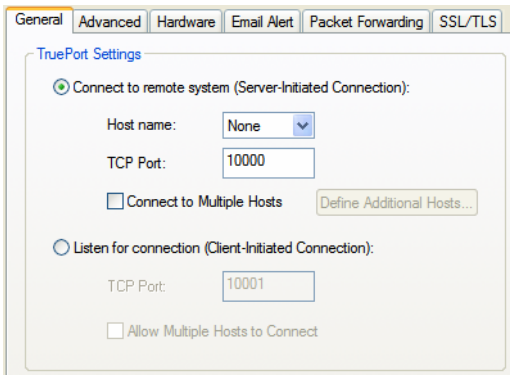
- **TruePort Full mode**—This mode allows complete device control and operates as if the device was directly connected to the Workstation/Server's local serial port. It provides a complete COM port interface between the attached serial device and the network. All serial controls, baud rate control, etc., are sent to the IOLAN and replicated on its associated serial port.
- **TruePort Lite mode**—This mode provides a simple raw data interface between the application and the remote serial port. Although the port will still operate as a COM port, control signals are ignored. In this mode, the serial communications parameters must be configured on the IOLAN.

See the *TruePort User's Guide* for more details about the TruePort client software.



General Tab Field Descriptions

The **TruePort General** tab determines how the TruePort connection is initiated and then sets up the appropriate connection parameters.

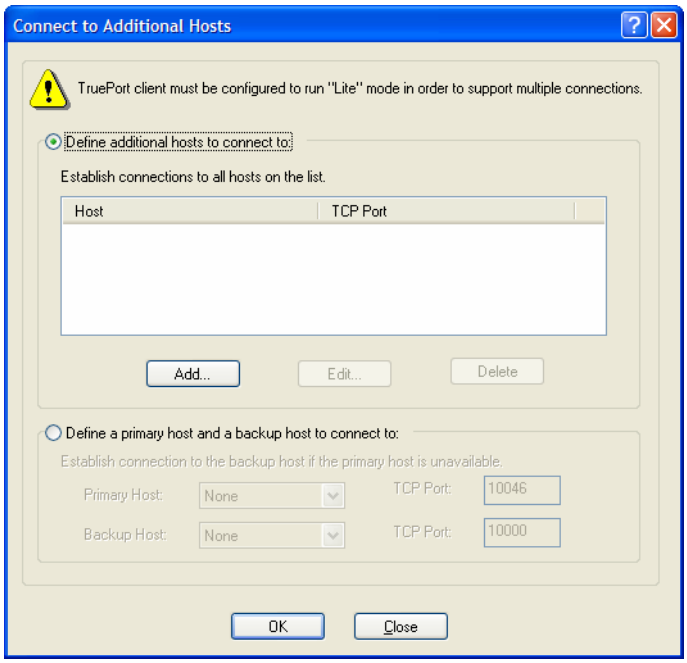


Configure the following parameters:

Connect to remote system	When enabled, the IOLAN initiates communication to the TruePort client. **Default:** Enabled
Host Name	The configured host that the IOLAN will connect to (must be running TruePort). **Default**: None
TCP Port	The TCP Port that the IOLAN will use to communicate through to the TruePort client. **Default:** 10001 for serial port 1, then increments by one for each serial port
Connect to Multiple Hosts	When enabled, the IOLAN will establish a connection to multiple clients (Hosts). When using the multiple hosts feature, all TruePort clients must be running in Lite mode. **Default:** Disabled
Define Additional Hosts Button	Click this button to define the hosts that this serial port will connect to. This button is also used to define the Primary/Backup host functionality. See ***Adding/Editing Additional TruePort Hosts*** on page 119 for more information.
Listen for Connection	When enabled, the IOLAN will wait for connections to be initiated by the TruePort Client. **Default:** Disabled
TCP Port	The TCP Port that the IOLAN will use to communicate through to the TruePort client. **Default:** 10001 for serial port 1, then increments by one for each serial port
Allow Multiple Hosts to Connect	When this option is enabled, multiple hosts can connect to a serial device that is connected to this serial port. Note: These multiple clients (Hosts) need to be running TruePort in Lite mode. **Default:** Disabled

Adding/Editing Additional TruePort Hosts

You can define a list of hosts that the serial device will communicate to through TruePort Lite or a primary/backup host.



Configure the following parameters:

Define additional hosts to connect to

When this option is enabled, you can define up to 49 hosts that the serial device connected to this serial port will attempt communicate to. With this mode of operation, the IOLAN will connect to multiple hosts simultaneously.

Default: Enabled

Add Button

Click the **Add** button to add a host to the list of hosts that will be receiving communication from the serial device connected to the IOLAN.

See ***Adding/Editing a Multihost Entry*** on page 120 for more information.

Edit Button

Highlight an existing host and click the **Edit** button to edit a host in the list of hosts that will be receiving communication from the serial device connected to the IOLAN.

Delete Button

Highlight an existing host and click the **Edit** button to edit a host in the list of hosts that will be receiving communication from the serial device connected to the IOLAN.

Define a primary host and backup...

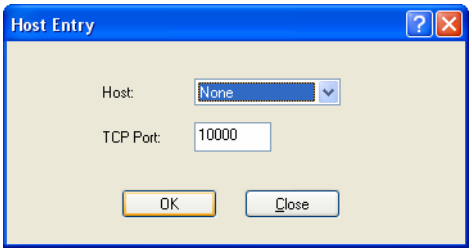
When this option is enabled, you need to define a primary host that the serial device connected to this serial port will communicate to and a backup host, in the event that the IOLAN looses communication to the primary host. The IOLAN will first establish a connection to the primary host. Should the connection to the primary host be lost (or never established), the IOLAN will establish a connection the backup host. Once connected to the backup, the IOLAN will attempt to re-establish a connection to the Primary host, once this is successfully done, it gracefully shuts down the backup connection.

Default: Disabled

Primary Host	Specify a preconfigured host that the serial device will communicate to through the IOLAN. **Default:** None
TCP Port	Specify the TCP port that the IOLAN will use to communicate to the **Primary Host**. **Default:** 0
Backup Host	Specify a preconfigured host that the serial device will communicate to through the IOLAN if the IOLAN cannot communicate with the **Primary Host**. **Default:** None
TCP Port	Specify the TCP port that the IOLAN will use to communicate to the **Backup Host**. **Default:** 10000

Adding/Editing a Multihost Entry

When you click the **Add** or **Edit** button, the Host Entry window appears. The hosts in the multihost list must already be defined. If you add a host that was defined with its fully qualified domain name (FQDN), it must be resolvable by your configured DNS server.

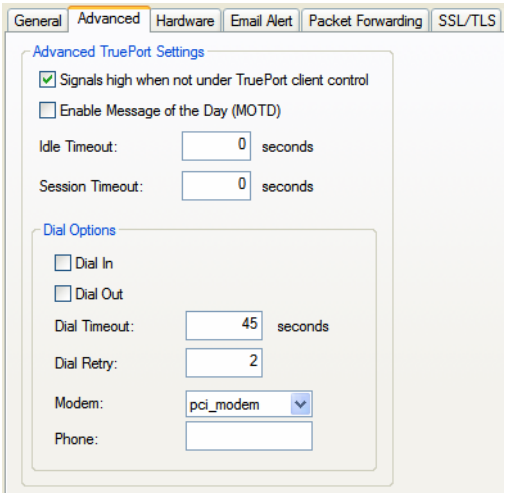


Configure the following parameters:

Host Name	Specify the preconfigured host that will be in the multihost list. **Default:** None
TCP Port	Specify the TCP port that the IOLAN will use to communicate to the **Primary Host**. **Default:** 10000 + serial port number - 1 (so serial port 47 defaults to 10046)

Advanced Tab Field Descriptions

The **TruePort Advanced** tab determines how the TruePort connection is initiated and then sets up the appropriate connection parameters.



Configure the following parameters:

Signals high when...

When a TruePort line becomes active, this option has the following impact:

- **TruePort Lite Mode**—When enabled, the EIA-232 signals remain high (active) before, during, and after the TruePort session. When disabled, the EIA-232 signals remain low (inactive).
- **TruePort Full Mode**—During the session, the TruePort client will be control the state of these signal before and after the connection.

Default: Enabled

Enable Message of the Day (MOTD)

Enables/disables the display of the message of the day.

Default: Disabled

Idle Timeout

Use this timer to close a connection because of inactivity. When the **Idle Timeout** expires, the IOLAN will end the connection.

Default: 0 seconds so the port will never timeout

Range: 0-4294967 seconds (about 49 days)

Session Timeout

Use this timer to forcibly close the session/connection when the **Session Timeout** expires.

Default: 0 seconds so the port will never timeout

Range: 0-4294967 seconds (about 49 days)

Dial In

If the device is remote and will be dialing in via modem or ISDN TA, enable this parameter.

Default: Disabled

Dial Out

If you want the modem to dial a number when the serial port is started, enable this parameter.

Default: Disabled

Dial Timeout	The number of seconds the IOLAN will wait to establish a connection to a remote modem. **Range:** 1-99 **Default:** 45 seconds
Dial Retry	The number of times the IOLAN will attempt to re-establish a connection with a remote modem. **Range:** 0-99 **Default:** 2
Modem	The name of the predefined modem that is used on this line.
Phone	The phone number to use when **Dial Out** is enabled.

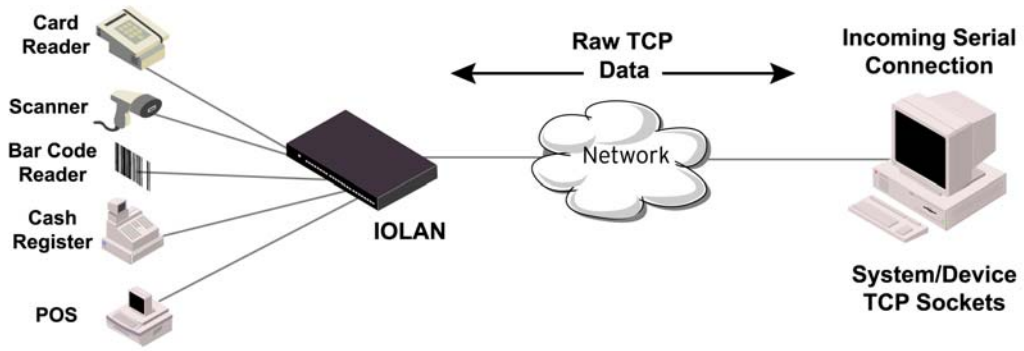
TCP Sockets Profile

Overview

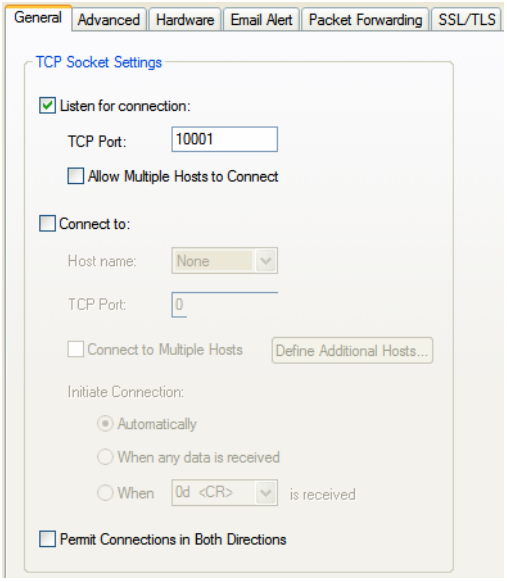
The TCP Socket profile allows for a serial device to communicate over a TCP network. The TCP connection can be initiated from a host on the network and/or a serial device. This is typically used with an application on a Workstation or Server that communicates to a device using a specific TCP socket. This is often referred to as a RAW connection.

Functionality

The **TCP Sockets** profile permits a raw connection to be established in either direction, meaning that the connection can be initiated by either the Workstation/Server or the IOLAN.



General Tab Field Descriptions



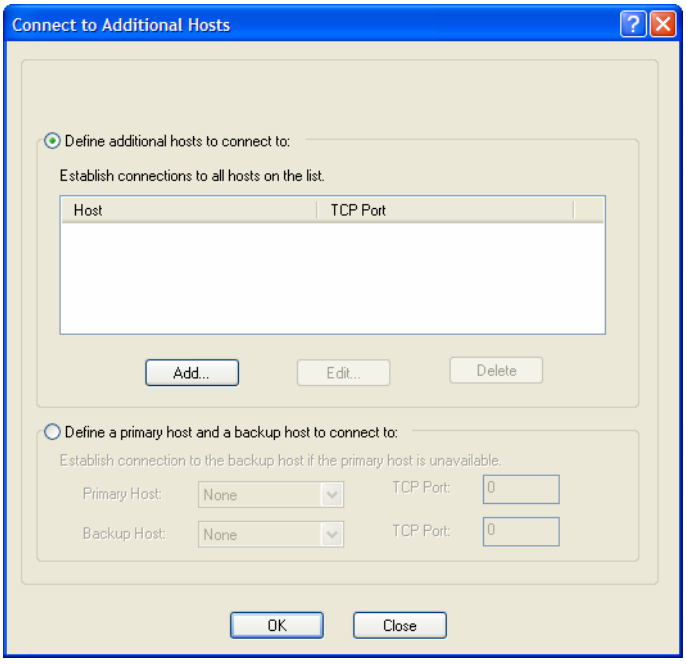
Configure the following parameters:

Listen for Connection	When enabled, the IOLAN listens for a connection to be established by the Workstation/Server on the network. **Default:** Enabled
TCP Port	The TCP port that the IOLAN will use to listen for incoming connections. **Default:** 10000 plus the serial port number, so serial port 5 would have a default of 10005
Allow Multiple Hosts to Connect	When this option is enabled, multiple hosts can connect to the serial device that is connected to this serial port. **Default:** Disabled
Connect To	When enabled, the IOLAN initiates communication to the Workstation/Server. **Default:** Disabled
Host Name	The configured host that the IOLAN will connect to.
TCP Port	The TCP Port that the IOLAN will use to communicate to the client. **Default:** 0
Connect to Multiple Hosts	When enabled, allows a serial device connected to this serial port to communicate to multiple hosts. **Default:** Disabled
Define Additional Hosts Button	Click this button to define the hosts that this serial port will connect to. This button is also used to define the Primary/Backup host functionality.
Initiate Connection Automatically	If the serial port hardware parameters have been setup to monitor DSR or DCD, the host session will be started once the signals are detected. If no hardware signals are being monitored, the IOLAN will initiate the session immediately after being powered up. **Default:** Enabled

Initiate Connection When any data is received	Initiates a connection to the specified host when any data is received on the serial port. **Default:** Disabled
Initiate Connection When <*hex value*> is received	Initiates a connection to the specified host only when the specified character is received on the serial port. **Default:** Disabled
Permit Connections in Both Directions	When this option is enabled, the connection can be initiated by either the IOLAN or a host. **Default:** Disabled

Adding/Editing Additional Hosts

You can define a list of hosts that the serial device will communicate to or a primary/backup host.



Configure the following parameters:

Define additional hosts to connect to	When this option is enabled, you can define up to 49 hosts that the serial device connected to this serial port will attempt communicate to. With this mode of operation, the IOLAN will connect to multiple hosts simultaneously. **Default:** Enabled
Add Button	Click the **Add** button to add a host to the list of hosts that will be receiving communication from the serial device connected to the IOLAN.
Edit Button	Highlight an existing host and click the **Edit** button to edit a host in the list of hosts that will be receiving communication from the serial device connected to the IOLAN.
Delete Button	Click the **Delete** button to delete a host to the list of hosts that will be receiving communication from the serial device connected to the IOLAN.

Define a primary host and backup... When this option is enabled, you need to define a primary host that the serial device connected to this serial port will communicate to and a backup host, in the event that the IOLAN looses communication to the primary host. The IOLAN will first establish a connection to the primary host. Should the connection to the primary host be lost (or never established), the IOLAN will establish a connection the backup host. Once connected to the backup, the IOLAN will attempt to re-establish a connection to the Primary host, once this is successfully done, it gracefully shuts down the backup connection.

Default: Disabled

Primary Host Specify a preconfigured host that the serial device will communicate to through the IOLAN.

Default: None

TCP Port Specify the TCP port that the IOLAN will use to communicate to the **Primary Host**.

Default: 0

Backup Host Specify a preconfigured host that the serial device will communicate to through the IOLAN if the IOLAN cannot communicate with the **Primary Host**.

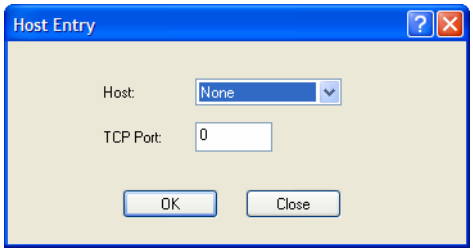
Default: None

TCP Port Specify the TCP port that the IOLAN will use to communicate to the **Backup Host**.

Default: 10000

Adding/Editing a Multihost Entry

When you click the **Add** or **Edit** button, the Host Entry window appears. The hosts in the multihost list must already be defined (see ***Host Table*** on page 86 to learn how to create a host). If you add a host that was defined with its fully qualified domain name (FQDN), it must be resolvable by your configured DNS server.



Configure the following parameters:

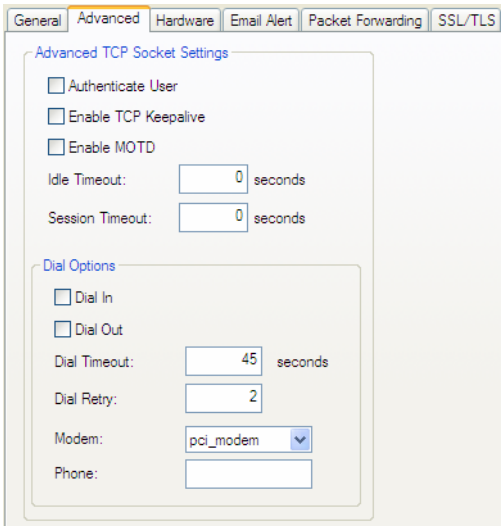
Host Name Specify the preconfigured host that will be in the multihost list.

Default: None

TCP Port Specify the TCP port that the IOLAN will use to communicate to the **Host**.

Default: 0

Advanced Tab Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

Authenticate User
Enables/disables login/password authentication for users connecting from the network.
Default: Disabled

Enable TCP Keepalive
Enables a per-connection TCP keepalive feature. After the configured number of seconds, the connection will send a gratuitous ACK to the network peer, thus either ensuring the connection stays active OR causing a dropped connection condition to be recognized.
This parameter needs to be used in conjunction with **Monitor Connection Status Interval** parameter found in the **Serial**, **Advanced**, **Advanced Settings** tab. The interval determines how long the IOLAN will wait during inactivity before "testing" the connection. It should be noted that if a network connection is accidentally dropped, it can take as long as the specified interval before anyone can reconnect to the serial port.
Default: Disabled

Enable Message of the Day (MOTD)
Enables/disables the display of the message of the day.
Default: Disabled

Idle Timeout
Use this timer to close a connection because of inactivity. When the **Idle Timeout** expires, the IOLAN will end the connection.
Default: 0 seconds so the port will never timeout
Range: 0-4294967 seconds (about 49 days)

Session Timeout
Use this timer to forcibly close the session/connection when the **Session Timeout** expires.
Default: 0 seconds so the port will never timeout
Range: 0-4294967 seconds (about 49 days)

Dial In
If the device is remote and will be dialing in via modem or ISDN TA, enable this parameter.
Default: Disabled

Dial Out	If you want the modem to dial a number when the serial port is started, enable this parameter. **Default:** Disabled
Dial Timeout	The number of seconds the IOLAN will wait to establish a connection to a remote modem. **Range:** 1-99 **Default:** 45 seconds
Dial Retry	The number of times the IOLAN will attempt to re-establish a connection with a remote modem. **Range:** 0-99 **Default:** 2
Modem	The name of the predefined modem that is used on this line.
Phone	The phone number to use when **Dial Out** is enabled.

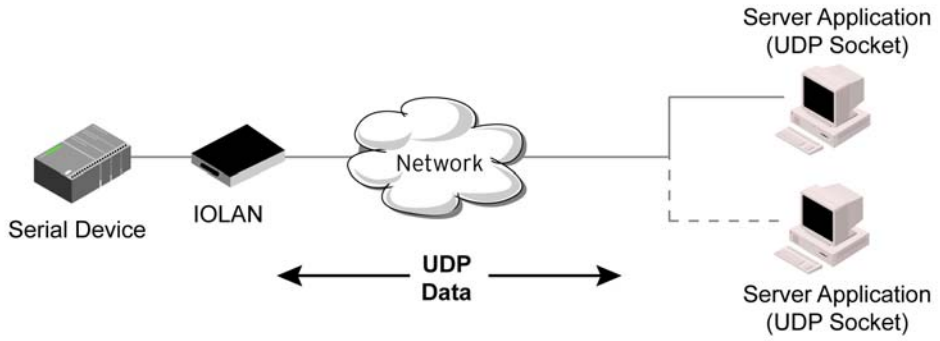
UDP Sockets Profile

Overview

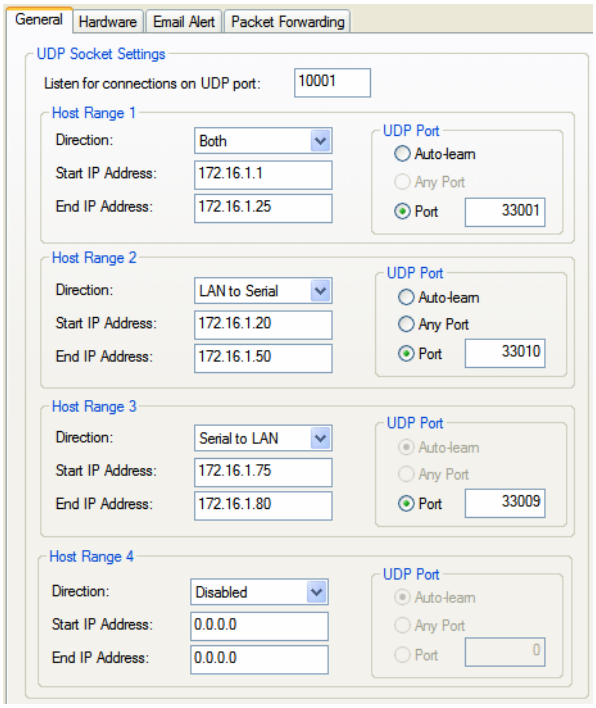
When you configure **UDP**, you are setting up a range of IP addresses and the port numbers that you will use to send UDP data to or receive UDP data from.

Functionality

The UDP profile configures a serial port to broadcast UDP data to systems and/or receive UDP data from systems.



An example UDP configuration is described based on the following window.



The UDP configuration window, taken from the DeviceManager, is configured to:

- **UDP Entry 1**

  All hosts that have an IP address that falls within the range of **`172.16.1.1`** to **`172.16.1.25`** and listen to **Port `33001`** will be sent the data from the serial device in UDP format. The serial device will only receive UDP data from the hosts in that range with a source **Port** of **`33001`**. The IOLAN will listen for data on the port value configured in the **Listen for connections on UDP port** parameter.

- **UDP Entry 2**

  All UDP data received from hosts that have an IP address that falls within the range of **`172.16.1.20`** to **`172.16.1.50`** and **Port `33010`** will be sent to the serial device. The IOLAN will not send any data received on its serial port.

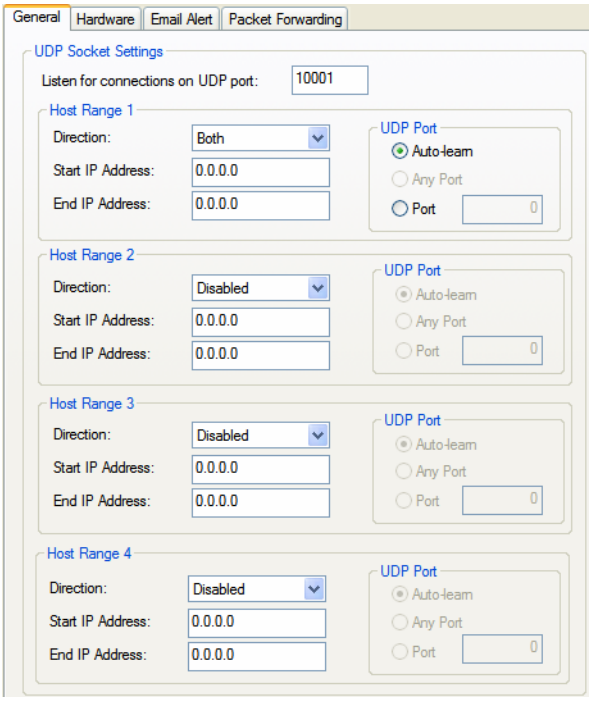
- **UDP Entry 3**

  All hosts that have an IP Address that falls within the range of **`172.16.1.75`** to **`172.16.1.80`** and who listen to **Port `33009`** will receive UDP data from the serial device. The IOLAN will listen for messages on the port value configured in the **Listen for connections on UDP port** parameter. No UDP data will be sent to the serial device.

- **UDP Entry 4**

  This entry is disabled since **Direction** is set to **Disabled**.

General Tab Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

Listen for connections on UDP port

The IOLAN will listen for UDP packets on the specified port.

Default: 1000+<*port-number*> (for example, 10001 for serial port 1)

Direction

The direction in which information is received or relayed:

- **Disabled**—UDP service not enabled.
- **LAN to Serial—UDP Port** can be set to **Auto-learn** or **Port**. The IOLAN will listen on port value configured in the **Listen for connections on UDP port** parameter for messages coming from the learned or configured port.
- **Serial to LAN—UDP Port** can be set to **Port** only. The IOLAN will listen on the port value configured in the **Listen for connections on UDP port** parameter and will send to the configured port.
- **Both**—Messages are relayed in both directions. UDP Port can be set to **Auto-learn** or **Port**. For messages coming from the LAN to the serial device, IOLAN will listen on port value configured in the **Listen for connections on UDP port** parameter for messages coming from the learned or configured port. For messages going from the serial device to the LAN, the IOLAN will listen on the port value configured in the **Listen for connections on UDP port** parameter and will send to the configured or learned (if **Auto-learn** is enabled, the IOLAN must receive a UDP message before it can send one, since the port must first be 'learned') port.

Start IP Address

The first host IP address in the range of IP addresses (for IPV4 or IPV6) that the IOLAN will listen for messages from and/or send messages to.

End IP Address

The last host IP address in the range of IP addresses (for IPV4, not required for IPV6) that the IOLAN will listen for messages from and/or send messages to.

Autolearn

The IOLAN will only listen to the first port that it receives a UDP packet from. Applicable when **Direction** is set to **LAN to Serial** or **Both**.

Any Port	The IOLAN will receive messages from any port sending UDP packets. Applicable when **Direction** is set to **LAN to Serial**.
Port	The port that the IOLAN will use to relay messages to servers/hosts. This option works with any **Direction** except **Disabled**. The IOLAN will listen for UDP packets on the port configured by the **Listen for connections on UDP port** parameter. **Default:** 0 (zero)

Terminal Profile

Overview

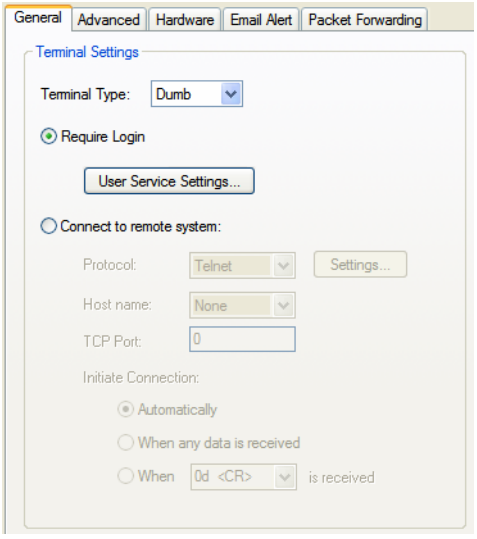
The Terminal profile allows network access from a terminal connected to the IOLAN's serial port. This profile is used to access pre-defined hosts on the network from the terminal.

Functionality

This profile can be setup in two ways:

1. The user can be required to log into the IOLAN and then a connection to a host can be established.
2. The user connecting to the serial port will be directly connected a host.

General Tab Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

Terminal Type

Specifies the type of terminal connected to the line.

Data Options:

- **Dumb**
- **WYSE60**
- **VT100**
- **ANSI**
- **TVI925**
- **IBM3151TE**
- **VT320** (specifically supporting VT320-7)
- **HP700** (specifically supporting HP700/44)
- **Term1, Term2, Term3** (user-defined terminals)

Default: Dumb

Require Login

When users access the IOLAN through the serial port, they must be authenticated, using either the local user database or an external authentication server.

Default: Enabled

User Service Settings Button

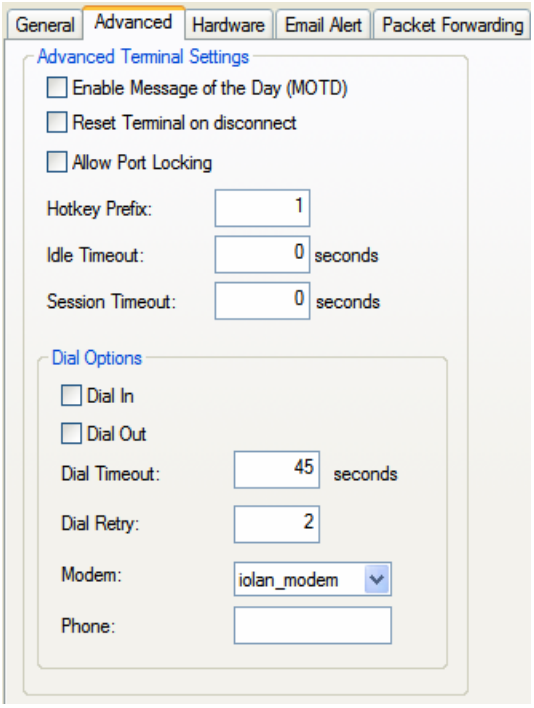
After a user has been successfully authenticated, the IOLAN will connect to the specified host using the specified protocol according to:

- the **User Service** parameter for locally configured users
- the **Default User Service** parameter for users who are externally authenticated
- TACACS+/RADIUS for externally authenticated users where the target host is passed to the IOLAN

See ***User Service Settings*** on page 135 for field descriptions of the various User Service Settings.

Connect to Remote System	When the serial port is started, the IOLAN will initiate a connection to the specified host using the specified protocol. With this option, user authentication will not be performed by the IOLAN. **Default:** Disabled
Protocol	Specify the protocol that will be used to connect to the specified host. **Data Options:** Telnet, SSH, Rlogin **Default:** Telnet
Settings Button	Click this button to define the settings for the protocol that will be used to connect the user to the specified host.
Host Name	The configured host that the IOLAN will connect to.
TCP Port	The TCP Port that the IOLAN will use to connect to the host. **Default:** Telnet-23, SSH-22, Rlogin-513
Automatically	If the serial port hardware parameters have been setup to monitor DSR or DCD, the host session will be started once the signals are detected. If no hardware signals are being monitored, the IOLAN will initiate the session immediately after being powered up. **Default:** Enabled
When any data is received	Initiates a connection to the specified host when any data is received on the serial port. **Default:** Disabled
When <*hex value*> is received	Initiates a connection to the specified host only when the specified character is received on the serial port. **Default:** Disabled

Advanced Tab Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

Enable Message of the Day (MOTD)
Enables/disables the display of the message of the day.
Default: Disabled

Reset Terminal on disconnect
When enabled, resets the terminal definition connected to the serial port when a user logs out.
Default: Disabled

Allow Port Locking
When enabled, the user can lock his terminal with a password using the **Hotkey Prefix** (default Ctrl-a) **^a l** (lowercase L). The IOLAN prompts the user for a password and a confirmation.
Default: Disabled

Hotkey Prefix
The prefix that a user types to lock a serial port or redraw the Menu.
Data Range:

- **^a l**—(Lowercase L) Locks the serial port until the user unlocks it. The user is prompted for a password (any password, excluding spaces) and locks the serial port. Next, the user must retype the password to unlock the serial port.
- **^r**—When you switch from a session back to the Menu, the screen may not be redrawn correctly. If this happens, use this command to redraw it properly. This is always **Ctrl R**, regardless of the **Hotkey Prefix**.

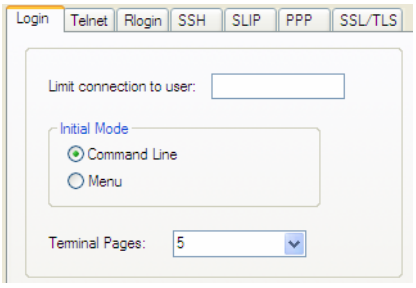
You can use the **Hotkey Prefix** key to lock a serial port only when the **Allow Port Locking** parameter is enabled.
Default: Hex 01 (Ctrl-a, ^a)

Idle Timeout	Use this timer to close a connection because of inactivity. When the **Idle Timeout** expires, the IOLAN will end the connection. **Default: 0** seconds so the port will never timeout **Range:** 0-4294967 seconds (about 49 days)
Session Timeout	Use this timer to forcibly close the session/connection when the **Session Timeout** expires. **Default: 0** seconds so the port will never timeout **Range:** 0-4294967 seconds (about 49 days)
Dial Timeout	The number of seconds the IOLAN will wait to establish a connection to a remote modem. **Range:** 1-99 **Default:** 45 seconds
Dial Retry	The number of times the IOLAN will attempt to re-establish a connection with a remote modem. **Range:** 0-99 **Default:** 2
Dial In	If the device is remote and will be dialing in via modem or ISDN TA, enable this parameter. **Default:** Disabled
Dial Out	If you want the modem to dial a number when the serial port is started, enable this parameter. **Default:** Disabled

User Service Settings

Login Settings

These settings apply to users who are accessing the network from a terminal connected to the IOLAN's serial port. The Telnet, Rlogin, SSH, SLIP, PPP settings take effect when the connection method is defined in the user's profile (or are passed to the IOLAN by a RADIUS or TACACS+ server when those authentication methods are being used).

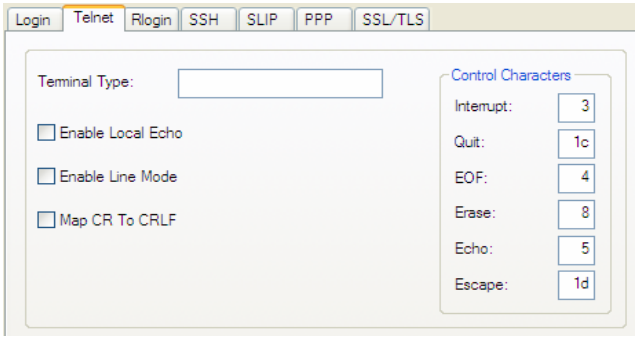


Configure the following parameters:

Limit Connection to User	Makes the serial port dedicated to the specified user. The user won't need to enter their login name - just their password.
Initial Mode	Specifies the initial interface a user navigates when logging into the serial port. **Data Options:** Menu, Command Line **Default:** Command Line
Terminal Pages	The number of video pages the terminal supports. **Range:** 1-7 **Default:** 5 pages

Telnet Settings

The Telnet settings apply when the **User Service** is set to **Telnet** or the Terminal profile specifies a **Telnet** connection to a host.



Configure the following parameters:

Terminal Type Type of terminal attached to this serial port; for example, ANSI or WYSE60.

Enable Local Echo Toggles between local echo of entered characters and suppressing local echo. Local echo is used for normal processing, while suppressing the echo is convenient for entering text that should not be displayed on the screen, such as passwords. This parameter can be used only when **Enable Line Mode** is enabled.

Default: Disabled

Enable Line Mode When enabled, keyboard input is not sent to the remote host until **Enter** is pressed, otherwise input is sent every time a key is pressed.

Default: Disabled

Map CR to CRLF When enabled, maps carriage returns (CR) to carriage return line feed (CRLF).

Default: Disabled

Interrupt Defines the interrupt character. Typing the interrupt character interrupts the current process. This value is in hexadecimal.

Default: 3 (ASCII value **^C**)

Quit Defines the quit character. Typing the quit character closes and exits the current telnet session. This value is in hexadecimal.

Default: 1c (ASCII value **FS**)

EOF Defines the end-of-file character. When **Enable Line Mode** is enabled, entering the EOF character as the first character on a line sends the character to the remote host. This value is in hexadecimal.

Default: 4 (ASCII value **^D**)

Erase Defines the erase character. When **Line Mode** is **Off**, typing the erase character erases one character. This value is in hexadecimal.

Default: 8 (ASCII value **^H**)

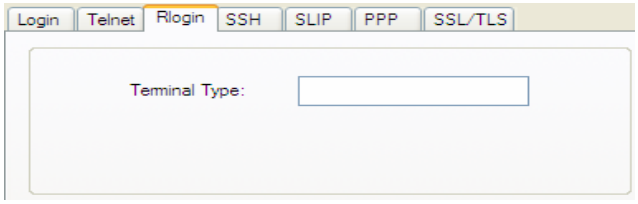
Echo Defines the echo character. When **Line Mode** is **On**, typing the echo character echoes the text locally and sends only completed lines to the host. This value is in hexadecimal.

Default: 5 (ASCII value **^E**)

Escape	Defines the escape character. Returns you to the command line mode. This value is in hexadecimal. **Default:** 1d (ASCII value **GS**)

Rlogin Settings

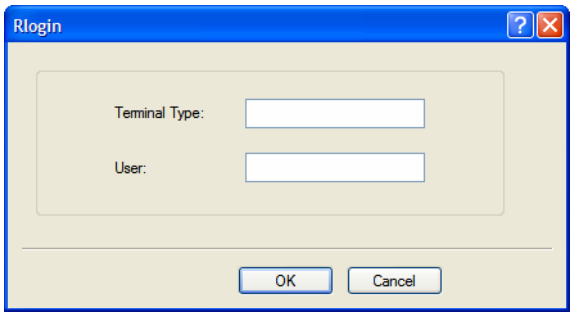
The Rlogin settings apply when the **User Service** is set to **Rlogin** or the Terminal profile has **Require Login** selected and specifies an **Rlogin** connection to a host.



Configure the following parameter:

Terminal Type	Type of terminal attached to this serial port; for example, ANSI or WYSE60.

When **Connect to remote system** is selected, the Rlogin window requires the name of the user who is connecting to the host.

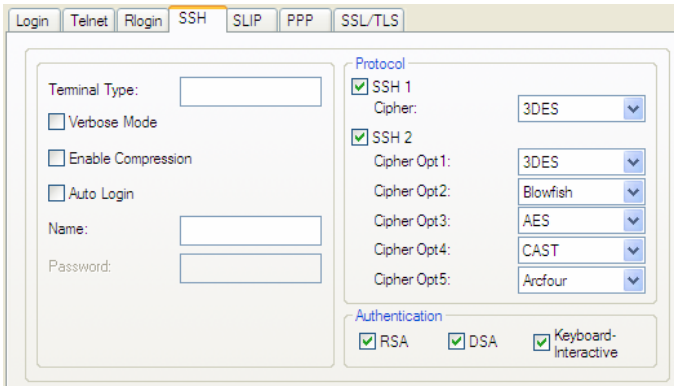


Configure the following parameters:

Terminal Type	Type of terminal attached to this serial port; for example, ANSI or WYSE60.
User	This name is passed on to the specified host for the Rlogin session, so that the user is only prompted for a password.

SSH Settings

The SSH settings apply when the **User Service** is set to **SSH** or the Terminal profile specifies an **SSH** connection to a host.



Configure the following parameters:

Terminal Type — Type of terminal attached to this serial port; for example, ANSI or WYSE60.

Verbose Mode — When enabled, displays debug messages on the terminal.
Default: Disabled

Enable Compression — When enabled, requests compression of all data. Compression is desirable on modem lines and other slow connections, but will only slow down things on fast networks.
Default: Disabled

Auto Login — When enabled, creates an automatic SSH login, using the **Name** and **Password** values.
Default: Disabled

Name — The name of the user logging into the SSH session.
Field Format: Up to 20 alphanumeric characters, excluding spaces

Password — The user's password when **Auto Login** is enabled.
Field Format: Up to 20 alphanumeric characters, excluding spaces

SSH1 — When enabled, selects an SSH version 1 connection.
Default: Enabled

SSH1 Cipher — Select the encryption method (cipher) that you want to use for your SSH version 1 connection:
Data Options:
- **3DES**
- **Blowfish**

Default: 3DES

SSH2 — When enabled, selects an SSH version 2 connection. If both SSH 1 and SSH 2 are selected, the IOLAN will attempt to make an SSH 2 connection first. If that connection fails, it will attempt to connect to the specified host using SSH 1.
Default: Enabled

SSH2 Ciphers Opt1-5

Select the order of negotiation for the encryption method (ciphers) that the IOLAN will use for the SSH version 2 connection:

Data Options:

- **3DES**
- **Blowfish**
- **AES**
- **Arcfour**
- **CAST**

RSA

When enabled, an authentication method used by SSH version 1 and 2. Use RSA authentication for the SSH session.

Default: Enabled

DSA

When enabled, an authentication method used by SSH version 2. Use DSA authentication for the SSH session.

Default: Enabled

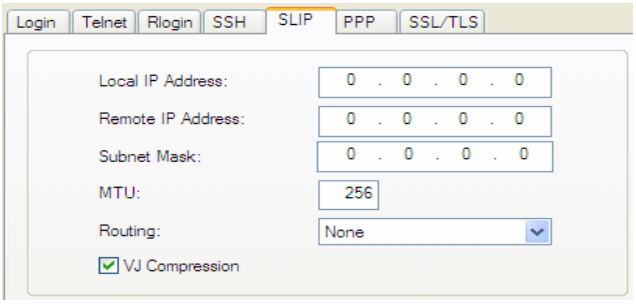
Keyboard Authentication

When enabled, the user types in a password for authentication.

Default: Enabled

SLIP Settings

The SLIP settings apply when the **User Service** to **SLIP**.



Configure the following parameters:

Local IP Address

The IPv4 address of the IOLAN end of the SLIP link. For routing to work you must enter an IP address in this field. Choose an address that is part of the same network or subnetwork as the remote end; for example, if the remote end is address 192.101.34.146, your local IP address can be 192.101.34.145. Do not use the IOLAN's (main) IP address in this field; if you do so, routing will not take place correctly.

Remote IP Address

The IPv4 address of the remote end of the SLIP link. Choose an address that is part of the same network or subnetwork as the IOLAN. If your user is authenticated by the IOLAN, this remote IP address will be overridden if you have set a **Framed IP Address** for the user. If your user is authenticated by RADIUS *and* the RADIUS parameter **Framed-Address** is set in the RADIUS file, the IOLAN will use the value in the RADIUS file in preference to the value configured here.

Subnet Mask

The network subnet mask. For example, 255.255.0.0. If your user is authenticated by RADIUS *and* the RADIUS parameter **Framed-Netmask** is set in the RADIUS file, the IOLAN will use the value in the RADIUS file in preference to the value configured here.

MTU

The Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) parameter restricts the size of individual SLIP packets being sent by the IOLAN. Enter a value between 256 and 1006 bytes; for example, 512. The default value is **256**. If your user is authenticated by the IOLAN, this MTU value will be overridden when you have set a **Framed MTU** value for the user. If your user is authenticated by RADIUS *and* the RADIUS parameter **Framed-MTU** is set in the RADIUS file, the IOLAN will use the value in the RADIUS file in preference to the value configured here.

Default: 256

Routing

Determines the routing mode (RIP, Routing Information Protocol) used on the **SLIP** interface as one of the following options:

- **None**—Disables RIP over the SLIP interface.
- **Send**—Sends RIP over the SLIP interface.
- **Listen**—Listens for RIP over the SLIP interface.
- **Send and Listen**—Sends RIP and listens for RIP over the SLIP interface.

This is the same function as the **Framed-Routing** attribute for RADIUS authenticated users.

Default: None

VJ Compression

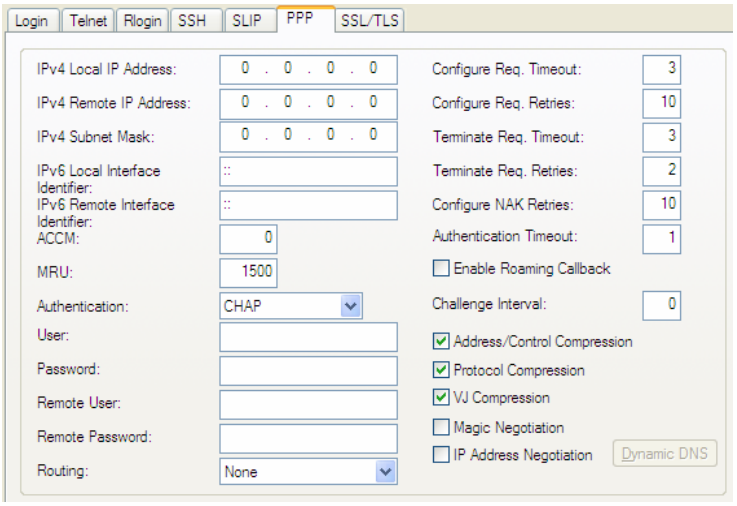
When enabled, Van Jacobson compression is used on this link. When enabled, C-SLIP, or compressed SLIP, is used. When disabled, plain SLIP is used. C-SLIP greatly improves the performance of interactive traffic, such as Telnet or Rlogin.

If your user is authenticated by the IOLAN, this VJ compression value will be overridden if you have set a **Framed Compression** value for a user. If your user is authenticated by RADIUS *and* the RADIUS parameter **Framed-Compression** is set in the RADIUS file, the IOLAN will use the value in the RADIUS file in preference to the value configured here.

Default: Enabled

PPP Settings

The PPP settings apply when the **User Service** is set to **PPP**.



Configure the following parameters:

IPv4 Local IP Address

The IPV4 IP address of the IOLAN end of the PPP link. For routing to work, you must enter a local IP address. Choose an address that is part of the same network or subnetwork as the remote end; for example, if the remote end is address 192.101.34.146, your local IP address can be 192.101.34.145. Do not use the IOLAN's (main) IP address in this field; if you do so, routing will not take place correctly.

IPv4 Remote IP Address

The IPV4 IP address of the remote end of the PPP link. Choose an address that is part of the same network or subnetwork as the IOLAN. If you set the PPP parameter IP Address Negotiation to On, the IOLAN will ignore the remote IP address value you enter here and will allow the remote end to specify its IP address. If your user is authenticated by RADIUS *and* the RADIUS parameter **Framed-Address** is set in the RADIUS file, the IOLAN will use the value in the RADIUS file in preference to the value configured here. The exception to this rule is a **Framed-Address** value in the RADIUS file of **255.255.255.254**; this value allows the IOLAN to use the remote IP address value configured here.

IPv4 Subnet Mask

The network subnet mask. For example, 255.255.0.0. If your user is authenticated by RADIUS *and* the RADIUS parameter **Framed-Netmask** is set in the RADIUS file, the IOLAN will use the value in the RADIUS file in preference to the value configured here.

IPv6 Local Interface Identifier

The local IPv6 interface identifier of the IOLAN end of the PPP link. For routing to work, you must enter a local IP address. Choose an address that is part of the same network or subnetwork as the remote end. Do not use the IOLAN's (main) IP address in this field; if you do so, routing will not take place correctly.

Field Format: The first 64 bits of the Interface Identifier must be zero, therefore, ::abcd:abcd:abcd:abcd is the expected format.

IPv6 Remote Interface Identifier

The remote IPv6 interface identifier of the remote end of the PPP link. Choose an address that is part of the same network or subnetwork as the IOLAN. If you enable **Negotiate IP Address Automatically**, the IOLAN will ignore the remote IP address value you enter here and will allow the remote end to specify its IP address. If your user is authenticated by RADIUS *and* the RADIUS parameter **Framed-Interface-ID** is set in the RADIUS file, the IOLAN will use the value in the RADIUS file in preference to the value configured here.

Field Format: The first 64 bits of the Interface Identifier must be zero, therefore, ::abcd:abcd:abcd:abcd is the expected format.

ACCM

Specifies the ACCM (Asynchronous Control Character Map) characters that should be escaped from the data stream.

Field Format: This is entered as a 32-bit hexadecimal number with each bit specifying whether or not the corresponding character should be escaped. The bits are specified as the most significant bit first and are numbered 31-0. Thus if bit 17 is set, the 17th character should be escaped, that is, 0x11 (XON). The value 000a0000 will cause the control characters 0x11 (XON) and 0x13 (XOFF) to be escaped on the link, thus allowing the use of XON/XOFF (software) flow control. If you have selected **Soft Flow Control** on the **Serial Port**, you must enter a value of at least **000a0000** for the **ACCM**.

Default: 00000000, which means no characters will be escaped

MRU

The Maximum Receive Unit (MRU) parameter specifies the maximum size of PPP packets that the IOLAN's port will accept. If your user is authenticated by the IOLAN, the **MRU** value will be overridden if you have set a **MTU** value for the user. If your user is authenticated by RADIUS *and* the RADIUS parameter **Framed-MTU** is set in the RADIUS file, the IOLAN will use the value in the RADIUS file in preference to the value configured here.

Range: 64-1500 bytes

Default: 1500

Authentication

The type of authentication that will be done on the link. You can use **PAP** or **CHAP** to authenticate a serial port or user on the IOLAN, from a remote location, or authenticate a remote client/device, from the IOLAN.

When setting either **PAP** and **CHAP**, make sure the IOLAN and the remote client/device have the same setting. For example, if the IOLAN is set to **PAP**, but the remote end is set to **CHAP**, the connection will be refused.

Data Options:

- **None**
- **PAP—**is a one time challenge of a client/device requiring that it respond with a valid username and password. A timer operates during which successful authentication must take place. If the timer expires before the remote end has been authenticated successfully, the link will be terminated.
- **CHAP—**challenges a client/device at regular intervals to validate itself with a username and a response, based on a hash of the secret (password). A timer operates during which successful authentication must take place. If the timer expires before the remote end has been authenticated successfully, the link will be terminated.

Default: CHAP

User

Complete this field only if you have specified **PAP** or **CHAP** (security protocols) in the **Authentication** field, *and*

- you wish to dedicate this line to a single remote user, who will be authenticated by the IOLAN, *or*
- you are using the IOLAN as a router (back-to-back with another IOLAN).

When **Connect** is set to **Dial Out** or both **Dial In/Dial Out** are enabled, the **User** is the name the remote device will use to authenticate a port on this IOLAN. The remote device will only authenticate your IOLAN's port when **PAP** or **CHAP** are operating. You can enter a maximum of sixteen alphanumeric characters; for example, tracy201. When connecting together two networks, enter a dummy user name; for example, DS_HQ.

Note If you want a reasonable level of security, the user name and password should not be similar to a user name or password used regularly to login to the IOLAN. External authentication can not be used for this user.

Password

Complete this field only if you have specified **PAP** or **CHAP** (security protocols) in the **Security** field and:

- you wish to dedicate this line to a single remote user, who will be authenticated by the IOLAN, *or*
- you are using the IOLAN as a router (back-to-back with another IOLAN)

Password means the following:

- When **PAP** is specified, this is the password the remote device will use to authenticate the port on this IOLAN.
- When **CHAP** is specified, this is the secret (password) known to both ends of the link upon which responses to challenges shall be based.

Field Format: You can enter a maximum of 16 alphanumeric characters.

Remote User

Complete this field only if you have specified **PAP** or **CHAP** (security protocols) in the **Security** field, *and*

- you wish to dedicate this line to a single remote user, who will be authenticated by the IOLAN, *or*
- you are using the IOLAN as a router (back-to-back with another IOLAN)

When **Dial In** or **Dial In/Dial Out** is enabled, the **Remote User** is the name the IOLAN will use to authenticate the port on the remote device. Your IOLAN will only authenticate the port on the remote device when **PAP** or **CHAP** are operating. When connecting together two networks, enter a dummy user name; for example, DS_SALES.

Note If you want a reasonable level of security, the user name and password should not be similar to a user name or password used regularly to login to the IOLAN. This option does not work with external authentication.

Field Format: You can enter a maximum of 16 alphanumeric characters.

Remote Password

Complete this field only if you have specified **PAP** or **CHAP** (security protocols) in the **Security** field, *and*

- you wish to dedicate this line to a single remote user, and this user will be authenticated by the IOLAN, *or*
- you are using the IOLAN as a router (back-to-back with another IOLAN)

Remote password means the following:

- When **PAP** is specified, this is the password the IOLAN will use to authenticate the remote device.
- When **CHAP** is specified, this is the secret (password) known to both ends of the link upon which responses to challenges will be based.

Remote Password is the opposite of the parameter **Password**. Your IOLAN will only authenticate the remote device when **PAP** or **CHAP** is operating.

Field Format: You can enter a maximum of 16 alphanumeric characters.

Routing

Determines the routing mode (RIP, Routing Information Protocol) used on the **PPP** interface.This is the same function as the **Framed-Routing** attribute for RADIUS authenticated users.

Data Options

- **None**—Disables RIP over the PPP interface.
- **Send**—Sends RIP over the PPP interface.
- **Listen**—Listens for RIP over the PPP interface.
- **Send and Listen**—Sends RIP and listens for RIP over the PPP interface.

Default: None

Configure Req. Timeout

The maximum time, in seconds, that LCP (Link Control Protocol) will wait before it considers a **`configure request`** packet to have been lost.

Range: 1-255

Default: 3 seconds

Configure Req. Retries

The maximum number of times a **`configure request`** packet will be re-sent before the link is terminated.

Range: 0-255

Default: 10 seconds

Terminate Req. Timeout

The maximum time, in seconds, that LCP (Link Control Protocol) will wait before it considers a **`terminate request`** packet to have been lost.

Range: 1-255

Default: 3 seconds

Terminate Req. Retries

The maximum number of times a **`terminate request`** packet will be re-sent before the link is terminated.

Range: 0-255

Default: 2 seconds

Configure NAK Retries

The maximum number of times a **`configure NAK`** packet will be re-sent before the link is terminated.

Range: 0-255

Default: 10 seconds

Authentication Timeout

The timeout, in minutes, during which successful PAP or CHAP authentication must take place (when **PAP** or **CHAP** are specified). If the timer expires before the remote end has been authenticated successfully, the link will be terminated.

Range: 1-255

Default: 1 minute

Roaming Callback

A user can enter a telephone number that the IOLAN will use to callback him/her. This feature is particularly useful for a mobile user. Roaming callback can only work when the **User Enable Callback** parameter is enabled. **Enable Roaming Callback** therefore overrides (fixed) **User Enable Callback**.To use **Enable Roaming Callback**, the remote end must be a Microsoft Windows OS that supports Microsoft's Callback Control Protocol (CBCP). The user is allowed 30 seconds to enter a telephone number after which the IOLAN ends the call.

Default: Disabled

Challenge Interval

The interval, in minutes, for which the IOLAN will issue a CHAP re-challenge to the remote end. During CHAP authentication, an initial CHAP challenge takes place, and is unrelated to CHAP re-challenges. The initial challenge takes place even if re-challenges are disabled. Some PPP client software does *not* work with CHAP re-challenges, so you might want to leave the parameter disabled in the IOLAN.

Range: 0-255

Default: 0 (zero), meaning CHAP re-challenge is disabled

Address/Control Compression

This determines whether compression of the **PPP Address** and **Control** fields take place on the link. For most applications this should be enabled.

Default: Enabled

Protocol Compression

This determines whether compression of the PPP Protocol field takes place on this link.

Default: Enabled

VJ Compression

When enabled, Van Jacobson Compression is used on this link. If your user is authenticated by the IOLAN, this VJ compression value will be overridden if you have enabled the **User**, **Enable VJ Compression** parameter. If the user is authenticated by RADIUS *and* the RADIUS parameter **Framed-Compression** is set in the RADIUS file, the IOLAN will use the value in the RADIUS file in preference to the value configured here.

Default: Enabled

Magic Negotiation

Determines if a line is looping back. If enabled (**On**), random numbers are sent on the link. The random numbers should be different, unless the link loops back.

Default: Disabled

IP Address Negotiation

Specifies whether or not IP address negotiation will take place. IP address negotiation is where the IOLAN allows the remote end to specify its IP address. When **On**, the IP address specified by the remote end will be used in preference to the **Remote IP Address** set for a **Serial Port**. When **Off**, the **Remote IP Address** set for the **Serial Port** will be used.

Default: Disabled

Dynamic DNS Button

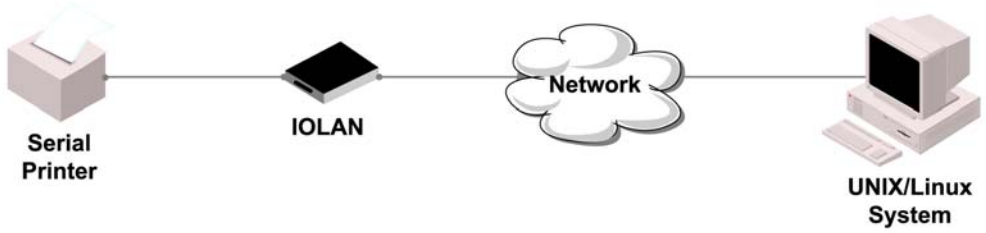
Launches the Dynamic DNS window when IP Address Negotiation is enabled, which can then update the DNS server with the IP address that is negotiated and accepted for the PPP session.

See ***Dynamic DNS Field Descriptions*** on page 170 for more information.

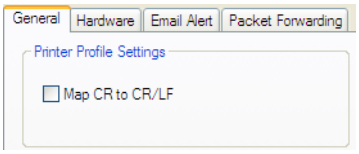
Printer Profile

Overview

The Printer profile allows for the serial port to be configured to support a serial printer device that can be access by the network.



General Tab Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameter:

Map CR to CR/LF	Defines the default end-of-line terminator as CR/LF (ASCII carriage-return line-feed) when enabled. **Default:** Disabled

Serial Tunneling Profile

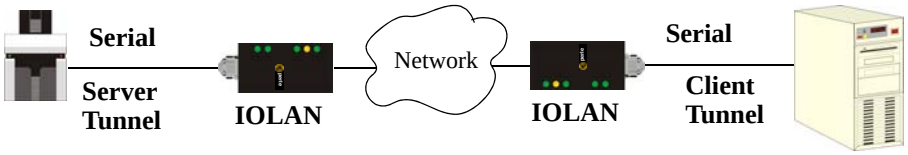
Overview

The Serial Tunneling profile allows two IOLANs to be connected back-to-back over the network to establish a virtual link between two serial ports based on RFC 2217.

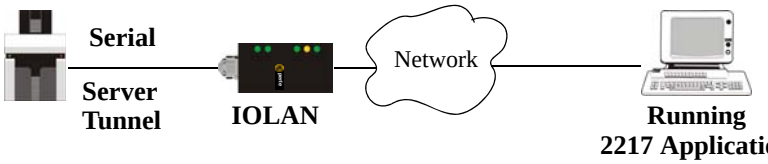
Functionality

The serial device that initiates the connection is the **Tunnel Client** and the destination is the **Tunnel Server**, although once the serial communication tunnel has been successfully established, communication can go both ways.

A more detailed implementation of the Serial Tunneling profile is as follows:

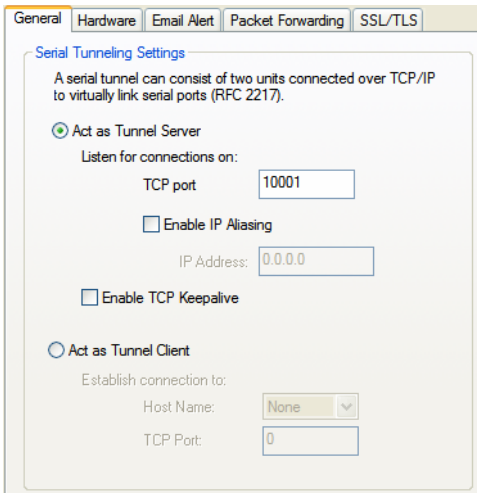


The **Server Tunnel** will also support Telnet Com Port Control protocol as detailed in RFC 2217.



The IOLAN serial port signals will also follow the signals on the other serial port. If one serial port receives DSR then it will raise DTR on the other serial port. If one serial port receives CTS then it will raise RTS on the other serial port. The CD signal is ignored.

General Tab Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

Act As Tunnel Server	The IOLAN will listen for an incoming connection request on the specified **Internet Address** on the specified **TCP Port**. **Default:** Enabled
TCP Port	The TCP port that the IOLAN will listen for incoming connection on. **Default:** 10000+serial port number; so serial port 5 is 10005.
Enable TCP Keepalive	Enables a per-connection TCP keepalive feature. After the configured number of seconds, the connection will send a gratuitous ACK to the network peer, thus either ensuring the connection stays active OR causing a dropped connection condition to be recognized. This parameter needs to be used in conjunction with **Monitor Connection Status Interval** parameter found in the **Serial**, **Advanced**, **Advanced Settings** tab. The interval determines how long the IOLAN will wait during inactivity before "testing" the connection. It should be noted that if a network connection is accidentally dropped, it can take as long as the specified interval before anyone can reconnect to the serial port. **Default:** Disabled
Act as Tunnel Client	The IOLAN will initiate the connection the Tunnel Server. **Default:** Disabled
Host Name	A preconfigured host name that is associated with the IP address of the Tunnel Server.
TCP Port	The TCP port that the IOLAN will use to connect to the Tunnel Server. **Default:** 10000+serial port number; so serial port 5 is 10005.

Virtual Modem Profile

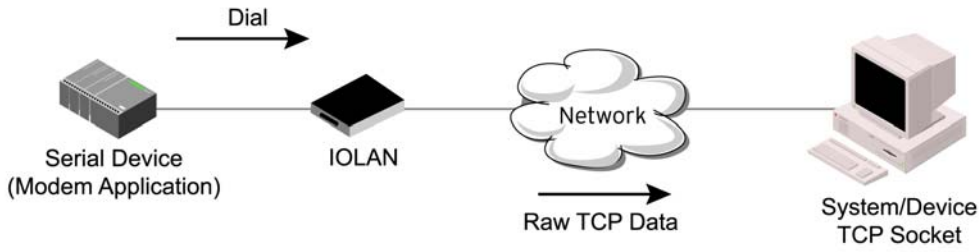
Overview

Virtual Modem (Vmodem) is a feature of the IOLAN that provides a modem interface to a serial device. It will respond to AT commands and provide signals in the same way that a serially attached modem would. This feature is typically used when you are replacing dial-up modems with the IOLAN in order to provide Ethernet network connectivity.

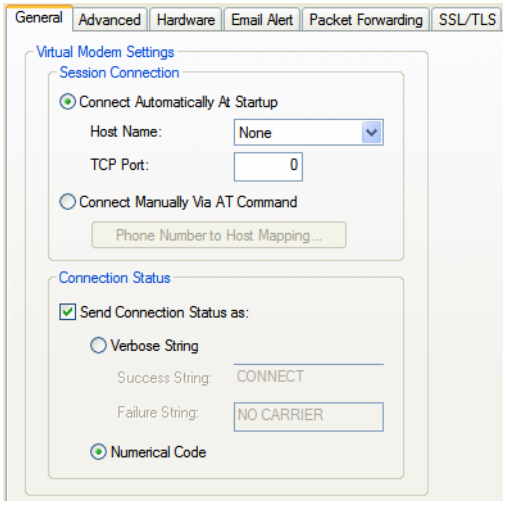
Functionality

The serial port will behave in exactly the same fashion as it would if it were connected to a modem. Using AT commands, it can configure the modem and the issue a dial-out request (ATTD). The IOLAN will then translate the dial request into a TCP connection and data will be begin to flow in both directions. The connection can be terminated by 'hanging' up the phone line.

You can also manually start a connection by typing **ATD<*ip_address*>,<*port_number*>** and end the connection by typing **+++ATH**. The ***ip_address*** can be in IPv4 or IPv6 formats and is the IP address of the receiver. For example, **ATD123.34.23.43,10001** or you can use **ATD12303402304310001**, without any punctuation (although you do need to add zeros where there are not three digits presents, so that the IP address is 12 digits long).



General Tab Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

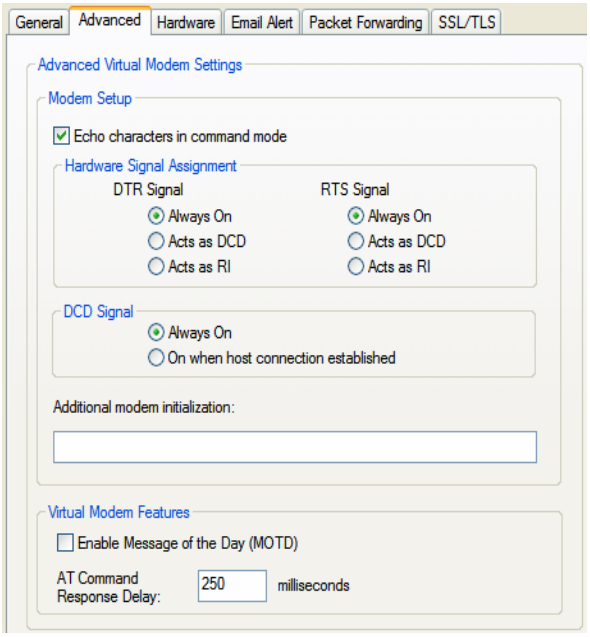
Connect Automatically At Startup	When enabled, automatically establishes the virtual modem connection when the serial port becomes active. **Default:** Enabled
Host Name	The preconfigured target host name.
TCP Port	The port number the target host is listening on for messages. **Default:** 0 (zero)
Connect Manually Via AT Command	When enabled, the virtual modem requires an AT command before it establishes a connection. Specify this option when your modem application sends a phone number or other AT command to a modem. The serial device can supply an IP address directly or it can provide a phone number that will be translated into an IP address by the IOLAN using the mapping table. **Default:** Disabled
Phone Number to Host Mapping Button	When your modem application provides a phone number in an AT command string, you can map that phone number to the destination host. See ***Phone Number to Host Mapping*** on page 152 for information about the window that appears when you click this button.
Send Connection Status As	When enabled, the connection success/failure indication strings are sent to the connected device, otherwise these indications are suppressed. This option also determines the format of the connection status results that are generated by the virtual modem. **Default:** Enabled
Verbose String	When enabled, the connection status is sent by text strings to the connected device. **Default:** Disabled
Success String	String that is sent to the serial device when a connection succeeds. **Default:** CONNECT <*speed*>, for example, **`CONNECT 9600`**
Failure String	String that is sent to the serial device when a connection fails. **Default:** NO CARRIER

Numeric Codes When enabled, the connection status is sent to the connected device using the following numeric codes:

- **1** Successfully Connected
- **2** Failed to Connect
- **4** Error

Default: Enabled

Advanced Tab Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

Echo characters in command mode When enabled, echoes back characters that are typed in (equivalent to ATE0/ATE1 commands).
Default: Disabled

DTR Signal Always On Specify this option to make the DTR signal always act as a DTR signal.
Default: Enabled

DTR Signal Acts as DCD Specify this option to make the DTR signal always act as a DCD signal.
Default: Disabled

DTR Signal Acts as RI Specify this option to make the DTR signal always act as a RI signal.
Default: Disabled

RTS Signal Always On Specify this option to make the RTS signal always act as a RTS signal.
Default: Enabled

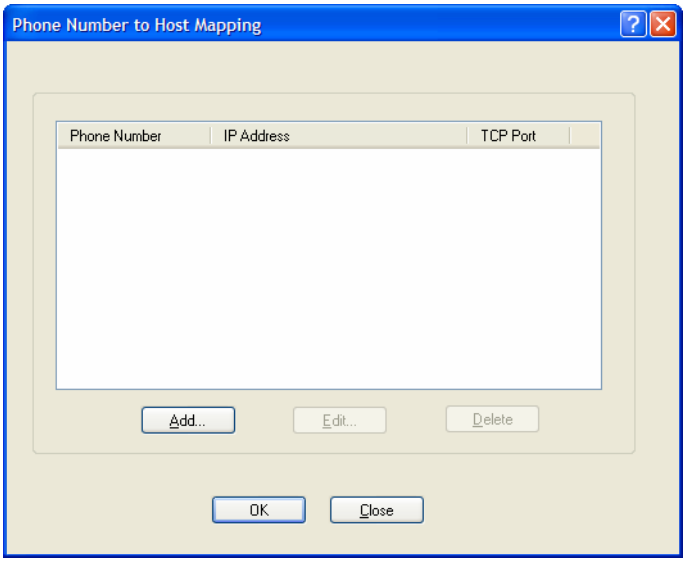
RTS Signal Acts as DCD Specify this option to make the RTS signal always act as a DCD signal.
Default: Disabled

RTS Signal Acts as RI Specify this option to make the RTS signal always act as a RI signal.
Default: Disabled

Additional modem initialization	You can specify additional virtual modem commands that will affect how virtual modem starts. The following commands are supported: ATQn, ATVn, ATEn, +++ATH, ATA, ATI0, ATI3, ATS0, AT&Z1, AT&Sn, AT&Rn, AT&Cn, AT&F, ATS2, ATS12, ATO (ATD with no phone number), and ATDS1. See Appendix C, Virtual Modem AT Commands on page 329 for a more detailed explanation of the support initialization commands.
Enable Message of the Day (MOTD)	When enabled, displays the Message of the Day (MOTD) when a successful virtual modem connection is made. **Default:** Disabled
AT Command Response Delay	The amount of time, in milliseconds, before an AT response is sent to the requesting device. **Default:** 250 ms

Phone Number to Host Mapping

If your modem application dials using a phone number, you can add an entry in the Phone Number to Host Mapping window that can be accessed by all serial ports configured as Virtual Modem. You need to enter the phone number sent by your modem application and the IOLAN IP address and TCP Port that will be receiving the ’call.’ 1-port models support up to 4 entries, all other desktop models support up to 8 entries, and rack-mount models support up to 48 entries.

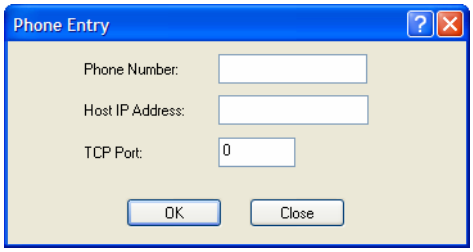


The following buttons are available:

Add Button	Click the **Add** button to display a window that allows you to configure the phone number or AT command your modem application sends and the IOLAN’s IP address and TCP port number that is receiving the call.
Edit Button	Click on a phone number entry and click the **Edit** button to change any values configured for the phone number.
Delete Button	Click on a phone number entry and click the **Delete** button to remove it from the phone number list.

VModem Phone Number Entry

Create an entry in the Phone Number to Host Mapping window.



Configure the following parameters:

Phone Number	Specify the phone number your modem application sends to the modem. Note: The IOLAN does not validate the phone number, so it must be entered in the exact way the application will send it. For example, if you enter 555-1212 in this table and the application sends 5551212, the IOLAN will not match the two numbers.
Host IP Address	Specify the IP address of the IOLAN that is receiving the virtual modem connection.
TCP Port	Specify the TCP Port on the IOLAN that is set to receive the virtual modem connection. **Default:** 0

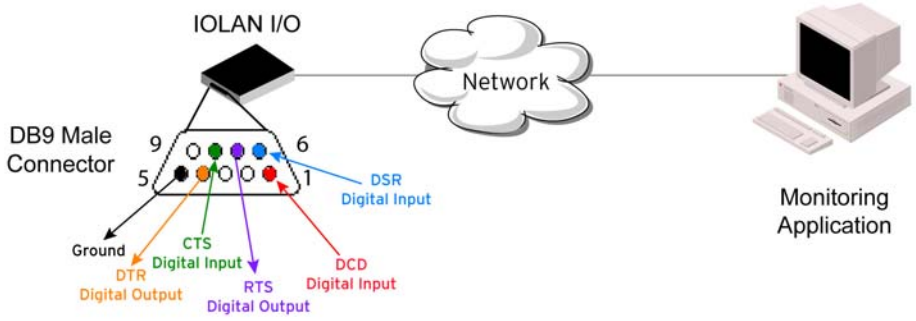
Control Signal I/O Profile

Overview

The **Control Signal I/O** profile is only available on IOLAN I/O models. When you configure a serial port for **Control Signal I/O**, you are using the DSR, DCD, CTS, DTR, and RTS serial pins for I/O channel Digital Input (DSR, DCD, and CTS) or Digital Output (DTR and RTS).

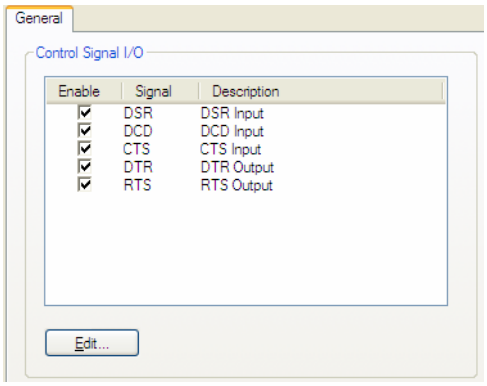
Functionality

The Control Signal I/O profile enables the use of the EIA-232 serial port pins to be used as assigned Digital Inputs or Digital Outputs.



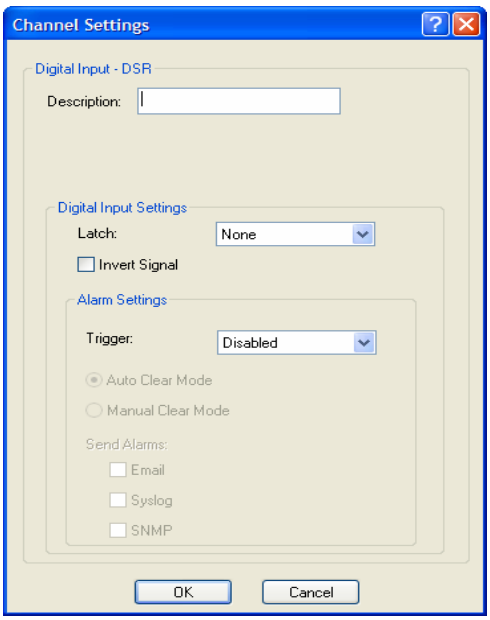
General Tab Field Descriptions

The **General** tab displays the signal pins. This window is also used to enable/disable the signal pins.



Highlight a signal and then click the **Edit** button to configure the signal pin's parameters.

Input Signal Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

Description	Provide a description of the channel, making it easier to identify. **Data Options:** Maximum 20 characters, including spaces
Latch	Latches (remembers) the activity transition (active to inactive or inactive to active). **Data Options:** None, Inactive-to-Active, Active-to-Inactive **Default:** None
Invert Signal	When enabled, inverts the actual condition of the I/O signal in the status; therefore, an inactive status will be displayed as active. **Default:** Disabled

Trigger

When the trigger condition is met, triggers the specified alarm action.

Data Options:

- **Disabled**—No alarm settings. This is the default.
- **Inactive**—When the expected Digital input is active, going inactive will trigger an alarm.
- **Active**—When the expected Digital input is inactive, going active will trigger an alarm.

Default: Disabled

Auto Clear Mode

When enabled, automatically clears the alarm when the trigger condition changes; for example, if the **Trigger** is **Inactive** and the alarm is triggered, once the input becomes active again, the alarm will automatically be cleared

Default: Enabled

Manual Clear Mode

When enabled, a triggered alarm must be manually cleared.

Default: Disabled

Email

When enabled, sends an email alert to an email account(s) set up in the **System** settings when an alarm is triggered or cleared. The email alert data includes the severity level and the value that caused the alarm to trigger or clear. The **Email Alert** is associated with **Level Critical**.

Default: Disabled

Syslog

When enabled, sends a message to syslog when an alarm is triggered or cleared. The syslog entry includes the severity level and the value that caused the alarm to trigger or clear. The syslog message is associated with **Level Critical**.

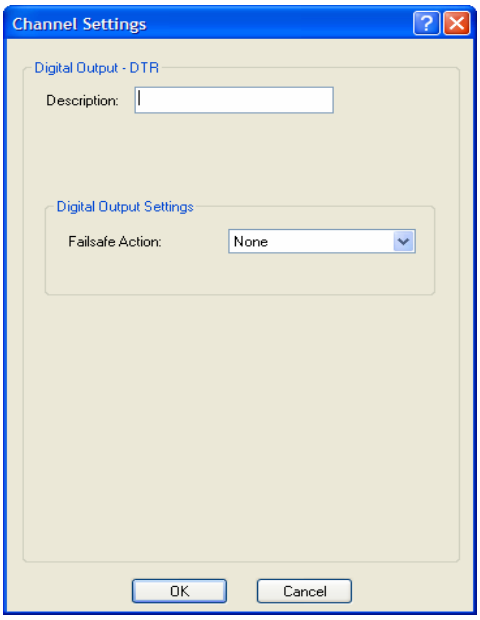
Default: Disabled

SNMP

When enabled, sends an SNMP trap when an alarm is triggered or cleared. The trap consists of the severity level and whether the alarm was triggered or cleared.

Default: Disabled

Output Signal Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

Description — Provide a description of the channel, making it easier to identify.

Data Options: Maximum 20 characters, including spaces

Failsafe Action — When there has been no I/O activity within the specified time (set in the **I/O Interfaces**, **Settings** on the **Failsafe Timer** tab) and the **Failsafe Timer** is triggered.

Data Options:

- **None**—The state of the Digital/Relay output remains the same, no change.
- **Activate Output**—Activates the channel.
- **Deactivate Output**—Deactivates the channel.

Default: None

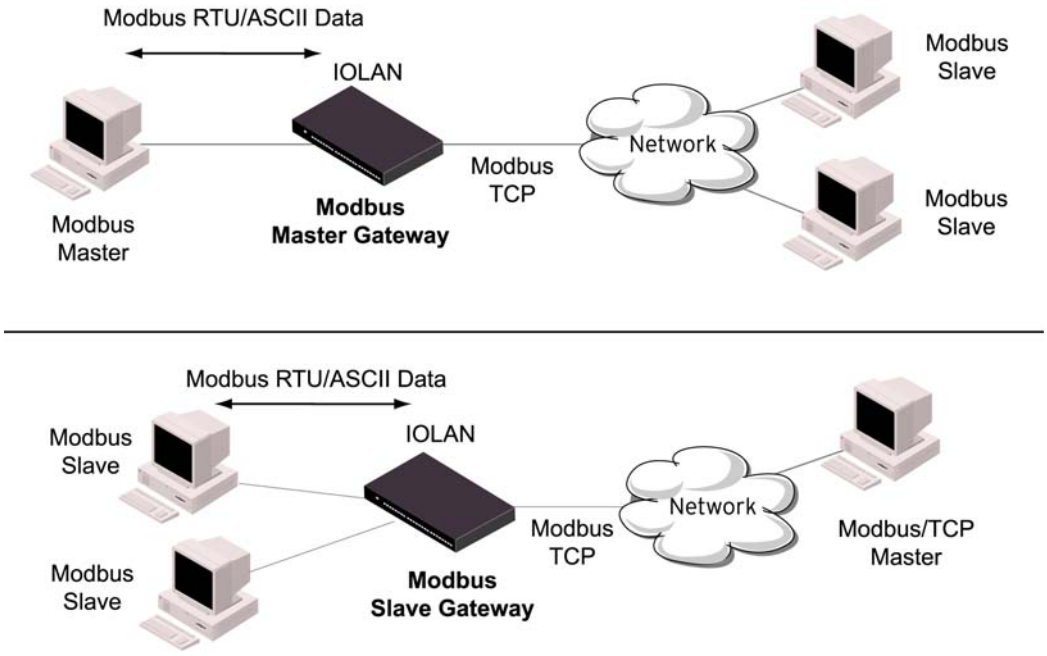
Modbus Gateway Profile

Overview

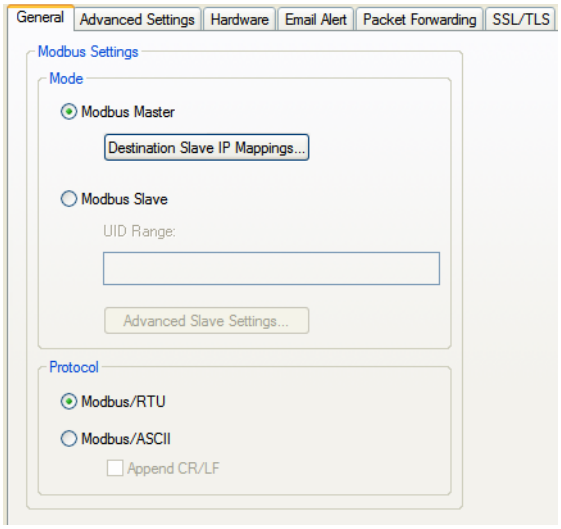
Each serial port can be configured as either a Modbus Master gateway or a Modbus Slave gateway, depending on your configuration and requirements. If your model supports I/O, see ***Modbus I/O Access*** on page 249 for more information on using the Modbus protocol to access I/O data.

Functionality

The Modbus Gateway profile configures a serial port to act as a Modbus Master Gateway or a Modbus Slave Gateway.



General Tab Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

Mode

Specify how the Modbus Gateway is defined on the serial port.

Data Options:

- **Modbus Master**—Typically, the Modbus Master is connected to the Serial Port and is communicating to Modbus Slaves on the network.
- **Modbus Slave**—Typically, the Modbus Master is accessing the IOLAN through the network to communicated to Modbus Slaves connected to the IOLAN's Serial Ports.

Default: Modbus Master Gateway

Destination Slave IP Mappings Button

Click this button to launch the Destination Slave IP Settings window, where you can configure the TCP/Ethernet Modbus Slaves that the Modbus Master on the Serial Port will communicate with.

Advanced Slave Settings Button

Click this button to configure global Modbus Slave settings.

UID Range

You can specify a range of UIDs (1-247), in addition to individual UIDs.

Field Format: Comma delimited; for example, 2-35, 50, 100-103

Modbus/RTU

Select this option when the Modbus/RTU protocol is being used for communication between the Modbus Master and Slave.

Default: Enabled

Modbus/ASCII

Select this option when Modbus/ASCII protocol is being used for communication between the Modbus Master and Slave.

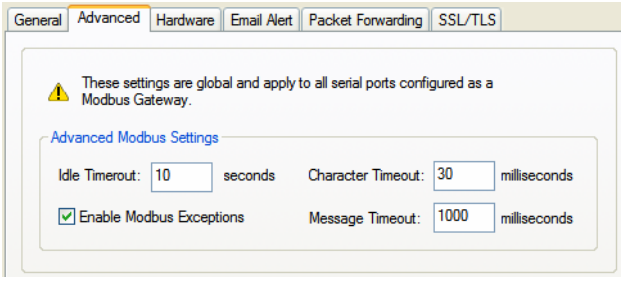
Default: Disabled

Append CR/LF

When **Modbus/ASCII** is selected, adds a CR/LF to the end of the transmission; most Modbus devices require this option.

Default: Enabled

Advanced Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

Idle Timeout

Use this timer to close a connection because of inactivity. When the **Idle Timeout** expires, the IOLAN will end the connection.

Range: 0-4294967 seconds (about 49 days)

Default: 0 (zero), which does not timeout, so the connection is permanently open.

Enable Modbus Exceptions

Click this button to launch the Destination Slave IP Settings window, where you can configure the TCP/Ethernet Modbus Slaves that the Modbus Master on the Serial Port will communicate with.

Character Timeout

Used in conjunction with the Modbus RTU protocol, specifies how long to wait, in milliseconds, after a character to determine the end of frame.

Range: 10-10000

Default: 30 ms

Message Timeout

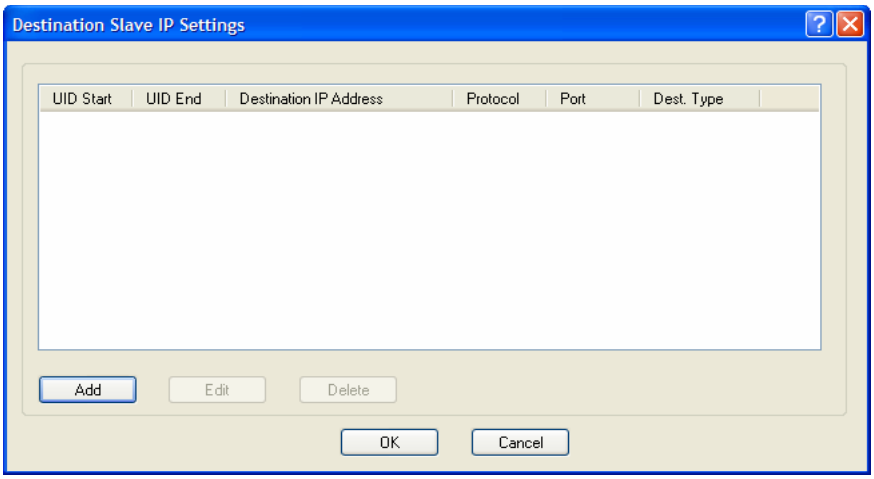
Time to wait, in milliseconds, for a response message from a Modbus TCP or serial slave (depending if the Modbus Gateway is a Master Gateway or Slave Gateway, respectively) before sending a Modbus exception.

Range: 10-10000

Default: 1000 ms

Modbus Slave IP Settings Field Descriptions

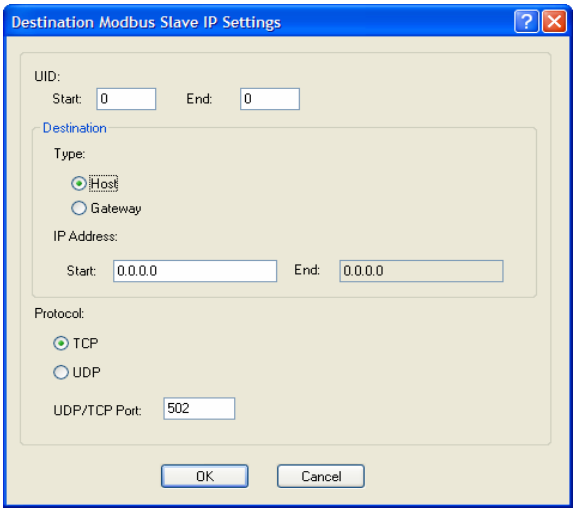
This window is used to configure the Modbus Slaves.



The following buttons are available:

Add Button	Adds an entry into the Modbus Destination Slave IP Settings table.
Edit Button	Edits an entry in the Modbus Destination Slave IP Settings table.
Delete Button	Deletes an entry from the Modbus Destination Slave IP Settings table.

Adding/Editing Modbus Slave IP Settings



Configure the following parameters:

UID Start	When **Destination** is set to **Host** and you have sequential Modbus Slave IP addresses (for example, 10.10.10.1, 10.10.10.2, 10.10.10.3, etc.), you can specify a UID range and the IOLAN will automatically increment the last digit of the configured IP address. Therefore, you can specify a UID range of 1-100, and the IOLAN will route Master Modbus messages to all Modbus Slaves with IP addresses of 10.10.10.1 - 10.10.10.100. **Range:** 1-247 **Default:** 0 (zero)

UID End

When **Destination** is set to **Host** and you have sequential Modbus Slave IP addresses (for example, 10.10.10.1, 10.10.10.2, 10.10.10.3, etc.), you can specify a UID range and the IOLAN will automatically increment the last digit of the configured IP address. Therefore, you can specify a UID range of 1-100, and the IOLAN will route Master Modbus messages to all Modbus Slaves with IP addresses of 10.10.10.1 - 10.10.10.100.

Range: 1-247

Default: 0 (zero)

Type

Specify the configuration of the Modbus Slaves on the network.

Data Options:

- **Host**—The IP address is used for the first UID specified in the range. The last octet in the IPv4 address is then incriminated for subsequent UID's in that range. The **Host** option is not applicable for IPv6 addresses.
- **Gateway**—The Modbus Master Gateway will use the same IP address when connecting to all the remote Modbus slaves in the specified UID range.

Default: Host

Start IP Address

The IP address of the TCP/Ethernet Modbus Slave.

Field Format: IPv4 or IPv6 (IPv6 format not supported for **Destination Host**)

End IP Address

Displays the ending IP address of the TCP/Ethernet Modbus Slaves, based on the Start IP address and the UID range.

Protocol

Specify the protocol that is used between the Modbus Master and Modbus Slave(s).

Data Options: TCP or UDP

Default: TCP

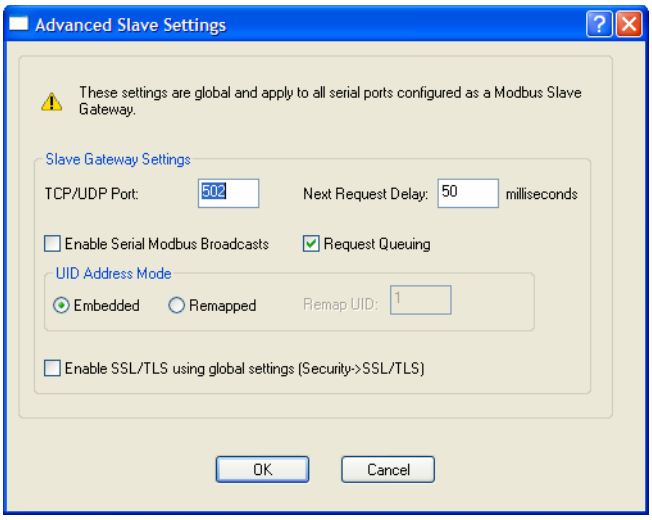
UDP/TCP Port

The destination port of the remote Modbus TCP Slave that the IOLAN will connect to.

Range: 0-65535

Default: 502

Modbus Slave Advanced Settings Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

TCP/UDP Port — The network port number that the Slave Gateway will listen on for both TCP and UDP messages.

Default: 502

Next Request Delay — A delay, in milliseconds, to allow serial slave(s) to re-enable receivers before issuing next Modbus Master request.

Range: 0-1000

Default: 50 ms

Enable Serial Modbus Broadcasts — When enabled, a UID of 0 (zero) indicates that the message will be broadcast to all Modbus Slaves.

Default: Disabled

Request Queuing — When enabled, allows multiple, simultaneous messages to be queued and processed in order of reception.

Default: Enabled

Embedded — When this option is selected, the address of the slave Modbus device is embedded in the message header.

Default: Enabled

Remapped — Used for single device/port operation. Older Modbus devices may not include a UID in their transmission header. When this option is selected, you can specify the UID that will be inserted into the message header for the Modbus slave device. This feature supersedes the Broadcast feature.

Default: Disabled

Remap UID — Specify the UID that will be inserted into the message header for the Slave Modbus serial device.

Range: 1-247

Default: 1

Enable SSL/TLS using global settings — When enabled, Modbus Slave Gateway messages to remote TCP Modbus Masters are encrypted via SSL/TLS.

Default: Disabled

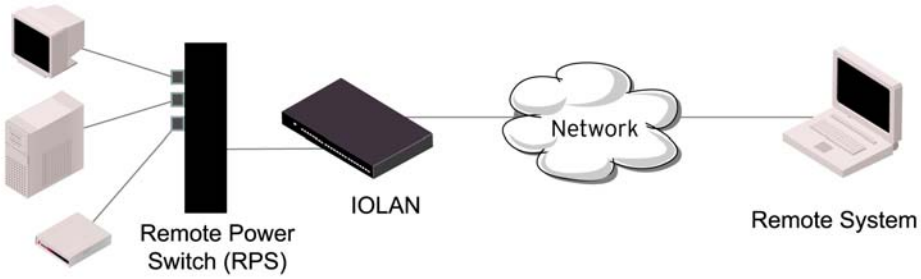
Power Management Profile

Overview

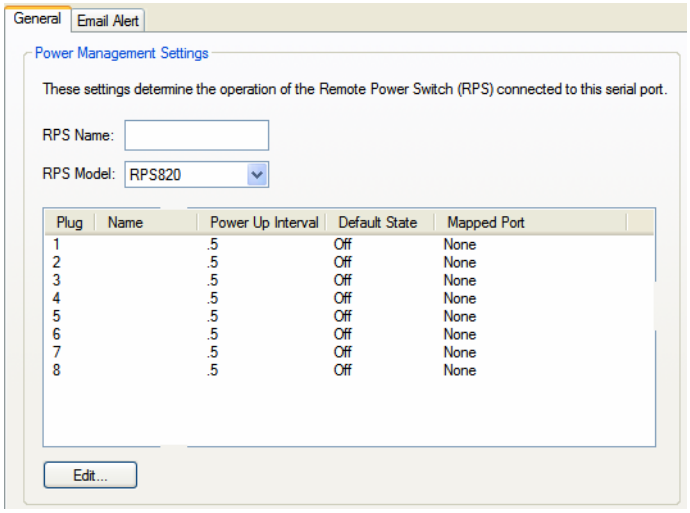
The Power Management profile applies when there is a Perle Remote Power Switch (RPS) connected to the serial port. This profile is used to configure the RPS. See ***RPS Control*** on page 283 for information on how to actively management the RPS.

Functionality

The Power Management profile configures a serial port to communicate with a Remote Power Switch's (RPS) administration port. This allows network access to the RPS and permits access to statistics and control of the RPS's power plugs.



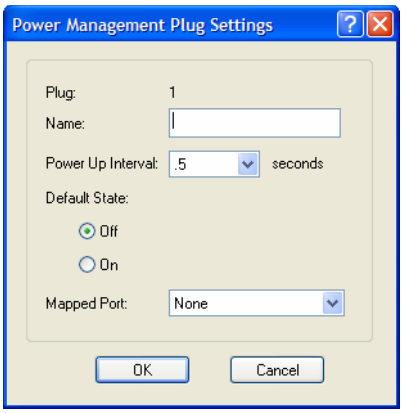
General Tab Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

RPS Name	Specify a name for the RPS.
RPS Model	Specify the RPS model. **Data Options:** RSP820, RPS830, RPS1620, RPS1630 **Default:** RSP820
Edit Button	Highlight a plug and then click the **Edit** button to configure the plug.

Editing Power Management Plug Settings Field Descriptions



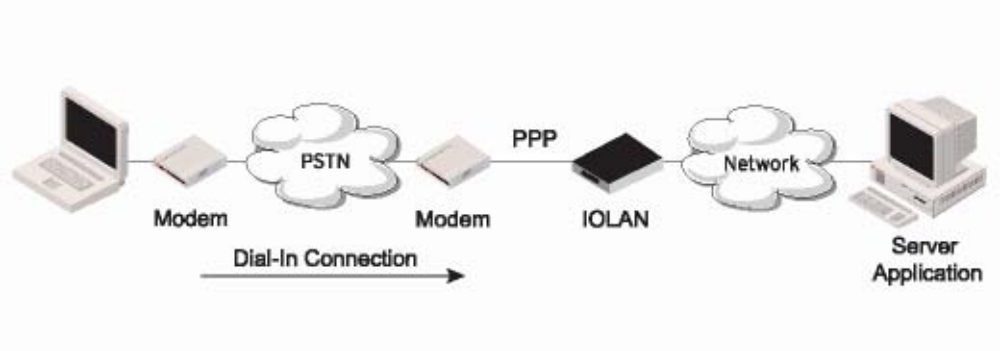
Configure the following parameters:

Plug	Displays the plug number you are configuring.
Name	Specify a name for the plug to make it easier to recognize and manage.
Power Up Interval	Specify the amount of time, in seconds, that the RPS will wait before powering up a plug. This can be useful if you have peripherals that need to be started in a specific order. **Data Options:** .5, 1, 2, 5, 15, 30, 60, 120, 180, 300 **Default:** .5 seconds
Default State	Sets the default state of the plug **Data Options:** On, Off **Default:** Off
Mapped Port	When a server or router has its console port connected to one of the serial ports on this IOLAN and that server/router is also powered by this RPS, the server/router serial port number should be entered here. This will give you direct access to some RPS commands when managing that server or router (using Telnet or SSH).

Remote Access (PPP) Profile

Overview

The **Remote Access (PPP)** profile configures a serial port to allow a remote user to establish a PPP connection to the IOLAN's serial port. This is typically used with a modem for dial-in or dial-out access to the network or a wireless WAN card.



Functionality

You can download a secrets file to the IOLAN for CHAP or PAP authentication; the files must be downloaded to the IOLAN using the names chap-secrets and pap-secrets, respectively. File can be downloaded to the IOLAN in under the **Custom Files** option and then the **Download Other File** parameter.

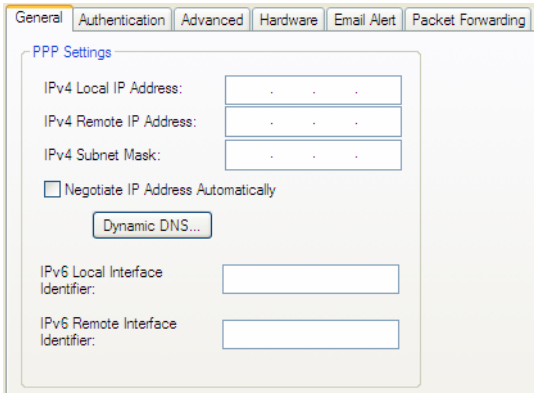
An example of the CHAP secrets file follows:

```
# Secrets for authentication using CHAP
# client        server    secret                acceptable local IP addresses
  barney        fred      flintstone1234567890  192.168.43.1
  fred          barney    wilma                 192.168.43.2
```

An example of the PAP secret file follows:

```
# Secrets for authentication using PAP
# client        server    secret                acceptable local IP addresses
  barney          *       flintstone1234567890
  fred            *       wilma
```

General Tab Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

IPv4 Local IP Address
The IPV4 IP address of the IOLAN end of the PPP link. For routing to work, you must enter a local IP address. Choose an address that is part of the same network or subnetwork as the remote end; for example, if the remote end is address 192.101.34.146, your local IP address can be 192.101.34.145. Do not use the IOLAN's (main) IP address in this field; if you do so, routing will not take place correctly.

IPv4 Remote IP Address
The IPV4 IP address of the remote end of the PPP link. Choose an address that is part of the same network or subnetwork as the IOLAN. If you set the PPP parameter IP Address Negotiation to On, the IOLAN will ignore the remote IP address value you enter here and will allow the remote end to specify its IP address. If your user is authenticated by RADIUS *and* the RADIUS parameter **Framed-Address** is set in the RADIUS file, the IOLAN will use the value in the RADIUS file in preference to the value configured here. The exception to this rule is a **Framed-Address** value in the RADIUS file of **255.255.255.254**; this value allows the IOLAN to use the remote IP address value configured here.

IPv4 Subnet Mask
The network subnet mask. For example, 255.255.0.0. If your user is authenticated by RADIUS *and* the RADIUS parameter **Framed-Netmask** is set in the RADIUS file, the IOLAN will use the value in the RADIUS file in preference to the value configured here.

Negotiate IP Address Automatically
Specifies whether or not IP address negotiation will take place. IP address negotiation is where the IOLAN allows the remote end to specify its IP address. When **On**, the IP address specified by the remote end will be used in preference to the **Remote IP Address** set for a **Serial Port**. When **Off**, the **Remote IP Address** set for the **Serial Port** will be used.

Default: Disabled

Dynamic DNS Button
Launches the Dynamic DNS window when IP Address Negotiation is enabled, which can then update the DNS server with the IP address that is negotiated and accepted for the PPP session.

See ***Dynamic DNS Field Descriptions*** on page 170 for more information.

IPv6 Local Interface Identifier

The local IPv6 interface identifier of the IOLAN end of the PPP link. For routing to work, you must enter a local IP address. Choose an address that is part of the same network or subnetwork as the remote end. Do not use the IOLAN's (main) IP address in this field; if you do so, routing will not take place correctly.

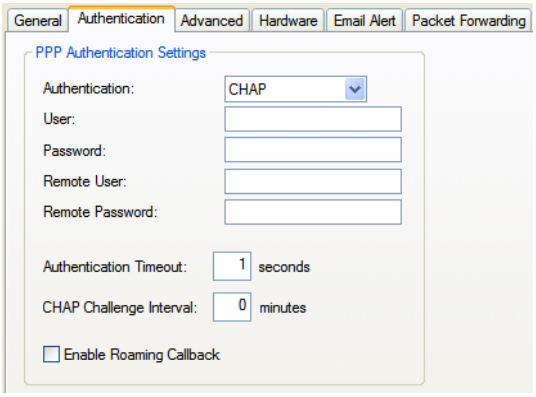
Field Format: The first 64 bits of the Interface Identifier must be zero, therefore, ::abcd:abcd:abcd:abcd is the expected format.

IPv6 Remote Interface Identifier

The remote IPv6 interface identifier of the remote end of the PPP link. Choose an address that is part of the same network or subnetwork as the IOLAN. If you enable **Negotiate IP Address Automatically**, the IOLAN will ignore the remote IP address value you enter here and will allow the remote end to specify its IP address. If your user is authenticated by RADIUS *and* the RADIUS parameter **Framed-Interface-ID** is set in the RADIUS file, the IOLAN will use the value in the RADIUS file in preference to the value configured here.

Field Format: The first 64 bits of the Interface Identifier must be zero, therefore, ::abcd:abcd:abcd:abcd is the expected format.

Authentication Tab Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

Authentication

The type of authentication that will be done on the link. You can use **PAP** or **CHAP** to authenticate a serial port or user on the IOLAN, from a remote location, or authenticate a remote client/device, from the IOLAN.

When setting either **PAP** and **CHAP**, make sure the IOLAN and the remote client/device have the same setting. For example, if the IOLAN is set to **PAP**, but the remote end is set to **CHAP**, the connection will be refused.

Data Options:

- **None**
- **PAP—**is a one time challenge of a client/device requiring that it respond with a valid username and password. A timer operates during which successful authentication must take place. If the timer expires before the remote end has been authenticated successfully, the link will be terminated.
- **CHAP—**challenges a client/device at regular intervals to validate itself with a username and a response, based on a hash of the secret (password). A timer operates during which successful authentication must take place. If the timer expires before the remote end has been authenticated successfully, the link will be terminated.

Default: CHAP

User

Complete this field only if you have specified **PAP** or **CHAP** (security protocols) in the **Authentication** field, *and*

- you wish to dedicate this line to a single remote user, who will be authenticated by the IOLAN, *or*
- you are using the IOLAN as a router (back-to-back with another IOLAN).

When **Connect** is set to **Dial Out** or both **Dial In/Dial Out** are enabled, the **User** is the name the remote device will use to authenticate a port on this IOLAN. The remote device will only authenticate your IOLAN's port when **PAP** or **CHAP** are operating. You can enter a maximum of sixteen alphanumeric characters; for example, tracy201. When connecting together two networks, enter a dummy user name; for example, DS_HQ.

Note If you want a reasonable level of security, the user name and password should not be similar to a user name or password used regularly to login to the IOLAN. External authentication can not be used for this user.

Password

Complete this field only if you have specified **PAP** or **CHAP** (security protocols) in the **Security** field and:

- you wish to dedicate this line to a single remote user, who will be authenticated by the IOLAN, *or*
- you are using the IOLAN as a router (back-to-back with another IOLAN)

Password means the following:

- When **PAP** is specified, this is the password the remote device will use to authenticate the port on this IOLAN.
- When **CHAP** is specified, this is the secret (password) known to both ends of the link upon which responses to challenges shall be based.

Field Format: You can enter a maximum of 16 alphanumeric characters.

Remote User

Complete this field only if you have specified **PAP** or **CHAP** (security protocols) in the **Security** field, *and*

- you wish to dedicate this line to a single remote user, who will be authenticated by the IOLAN, *or*
- you are using the IOLAN as a router (back-to-back with another IOLAN)

When **Dial In** or **Dial In/Dial Out** is enabled, the **Remote User** is the name the IOLAN will use to authenticate the port on the remote device. Your IOLAN will only authenticate the port on the remote device when **PAP** or **CHAP** are operating. When connecting together two networks, enter a dummy user name; for example, DS_SALES.

Note If you want a reasonable level of security, the user name and password should not be similar to a user name or password used regularly to login to the IOLAN. This option does not work with external authentication.

Field Format: You can enter a maximum of 16 alphanumeric characters.

Remote Password

Complete this field only if you have specified **PAP** or **CHAP** (security protocols) in the **Security** field, *and*

- you wish to dedicate this line to a single remote user, and this user will be authenticated by the IOLAN, *or*
- you are using the IOLAN as a router (back-to-back with another IOLAN)

Remote password means the following:

- When **PAP** is specified, this is the password the IOLAN will use to authenticate the remote device.
- When **CHAP** is specified, this is the secret (password) known to both ends of the link upon which responses to challenges will be based.

Remote Password is the opposite of the parameter **Password**. Your IOLAN will only authenticate the remote device when **PAP** or **CHAP** is operating.

Field Format: You can enter a maximum of 16 alphanumeric characters.

Authentication Timeout

The timeout, in minutes, during which successful PAP or CHAP authentication must take place (when **PAP** or **CHAP** are specified). If the timer expires before the remote end has been authenticated successfully, the link will be terminated.

Range: 1-255

Default: 1 minute

CHAP Challenge Interval

The interval, in minutes, for which the IOLAN will issue a CHAP re-challenge to the remote end. During CHAP authentication, an initial CHAP challenge takes place, and is unrelated to CHAP re-challenges. The initial challenge takes place even if re-challenges are disabled. Some PPP client software does *not* work with CHAP re-challenges, so you might want to leave the parameter disabled in the IOLAN.

Range: 0-255

Default: 0 (zero), meaning CHAP re-challenge is disabled

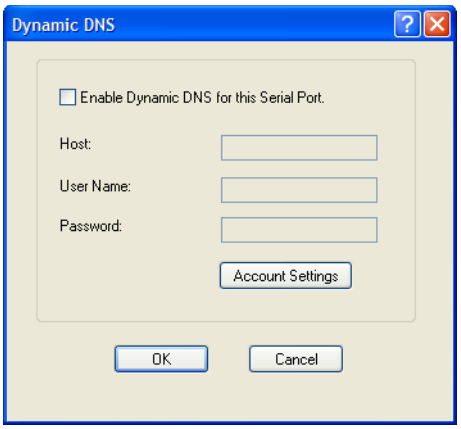
Enable Roaming Callback

A user can enter a telephone number that the IOLAN will use to callback him/her. This feature is particularly useful for a mobile user. Roaming callback can only work when the **User Enable Callback** parameter is enabled. **Enable Roaming Callback** therefore overrides (fixed) **User Enable Callback**.To use **Enable Roaming Callback**, the remote end must be a Microsoft Windows OS that supports Microsoft's Callback Control Protocol (CBCP). The user is allowed 30 seconds to enter a telephone number after which the IOLAN ends the call.

Default: Disabled

Dynamic DNS Field Descriptions

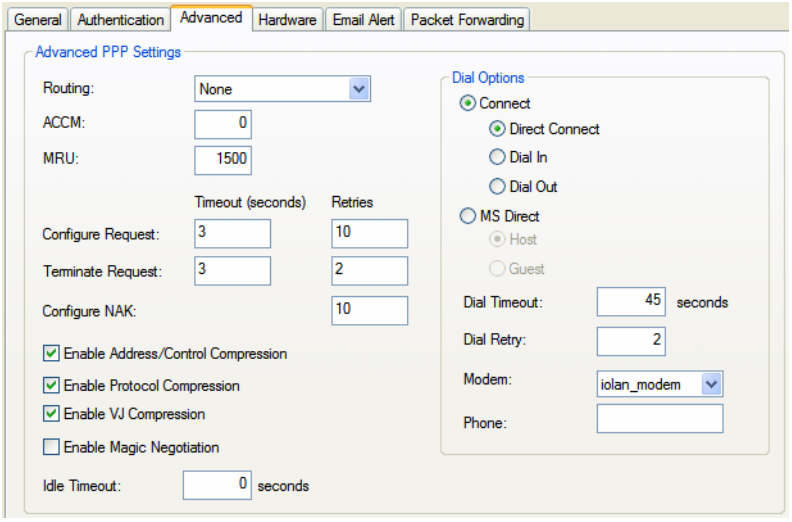
Dynamic DNS can be enabled and configured on a serial port level. If you enable Dynamic DNS and leave the parameters blank, the Dynamic DNS system parameters will be used (**Network**, **Advanced**, **Dynamic DNS** tab).



Configure the following parameters:

Enable Dynamic DNS for this Serial Port	Enables/disables the ability to register a new IP address with the DNS server. **Default:** Disabled
Host	Specify the host name that will be updated with the PPP session's IP address on the DNS server.
User Name	Specify the user name used to access the DNS server.
Password	Specify the password used to access the DNS server.
Account Settings Button	Click this button to configure the Dynamic DNS DynDNS.org account information. See ***Account Settings*** on page 94 for information on how to configure the **Account Settings** window.

Advanced Tab Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

Routing

Determines the routing mode (RIP, Routing Information Protocol) used on the **PPP** interface.This is the same function as the **Framed-Routing** attribute for RADIUS authenticated users.

Data Options

- **None**—Disables RIP over the PPP interface.
- **Send**—Sends RIP over the PPP interface.
- **Listen**—Listens for RIP over the PPP interface.
- **Send and Listen**—Sends RIP and listens for RIP over the PPP interface.

Default: None

ACCM

Specifies the ACCM (Asynchronous Control Character Map) characters that should be escaped from the data stream.

Field Format: This is entered as a 32-bit hexadecimal number with each bit specifying whether or not the corresponding character should be escaped. The bits are specified as the most significant bit first and are numbered 31-0. Thus if bit 17 is set, the 17th character should be escaped, that is, 0x11 (XON). The value 000a0000 will cause the control characters 0x11 (XON) and 0x13 (XOFF) to be escaped on the link, thus allowing the use of XON/XOFF (software) flow control. If you have selected **Soft Flow Control** on the **Serial Port**, you must enter a value of at least **000a0000** for the **ACCM**.

Default: 00000000, which means no characters will be escaped

MRU

The Maximum Receive Unit (MRU) parameter specifies the maximum size of PPP packets that the IOLAN's port will accept. If your user is authenticated by the IOLAN, the **MRU** value will be overridden if you have set a **MTU** value for the user. If your user is authenticated by RADIUS *and* the RADIUS parameter **Framed-MTU** is set in the RADIUS file, the IOLAN will use the value in the RADIUS file in preference to the value configured here.

Range: 64-1500 bytes

Default: 1500

Configure Request Timeout
The maximum time, in seconds, that LCP (Link Control Protocol) will wait before it considers a **`configure request`** packet to have been lost.

Range: 1-255

Default: 3 seconds

Configure Request Retries
The maximum number of times a **`configure request`** packet will be re-sent before the link is terminated.

Range: 0-255

Default: 10 seconds

Terminate Request Timeout
The maximum time, in seconds, that LCP (Link Control Protocol) will wait before it considers a **`terminate request`** packet to have been lost.

Range: 1-255

Default: 3 seconds

Terminate Request Retries
The maximum number of times a **`terminate request`** packet will be re-sent before the link is terminated.

Range: 0-255

Default: 2 seconds

Configure NAK Retries
The maximum number of times a **`configure NAK`** packet will be re-sent before the link is terminated.

Range: 0-255

Default: 10 seconds

Enable Address/Control Compression
This determines whether compression of the **PPP Address** and **Control** fields take place on the link. For most applications this should be enabled.

Default: Enabled

Enable Protocol Compression
This determines whether compression of the PPP Protocol field takes place on this link.

Default: Enabled

Enable VJ Compression
When enabled, Van Jacobson Compression is used on this link. If your user is authenticated by the IOLAN, this VJ compression value will be overridden if you have enabled the **User**, **Enable VJ Compression** parameter. If the user is authenticated by RADIUS *and* the RADIUS parameter **Framed-Compression** is set in the RADIUS file, the IOLAN will use the value in the RADIUS file in preference to the value configured here.

Default: Enabled

Enable Magic Negotiation
Determines if a line is looping back. If enabled (**On**), random numbers are sent on the link. The random numbers should be different, unless the link loops back.

Default: Disabled

Idle Timeout
Use this timer to close a connection because of inactivity. When the **Idle Timeout** expires, the IOLAN will end the connection.

Range: 0-4294967 seconds (about 49 days)

Default: 0 (zero), which does not timeout, so the connection is permanently open.

Direct Connect
Specify this option when a modem is not connected to this serial port.

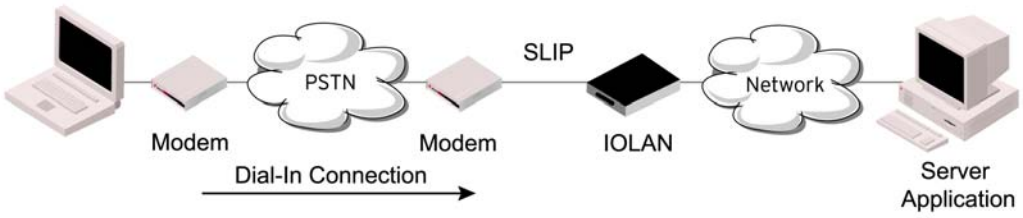
Default: Enabled

Dial In	If the device is remote and will be dialing in via modem or ISDN TA, enable this parameter. **Default:** Disabled
Dial Out	If you want the modem to dial a number when the serial port is started, enable this parameter. **Default:** Disabled
MS Direct Host	Specify this option when the serial port is connected to a Microsoft Guest device. **Default:** Enabled
MS Direct Guest	Enable this option when the serial port is connected to a Microsoft Host device. **Default:** Disabled
Dial Timeout	The number of seconds the IOLAN will wait to establish a connection to a remote modem. **Range:** 1-99 **Default:** 45 seconds
Dial Retry	The number of times the IOLAN will attempt to re-establish a connection with a remote modem. **Range:** 0-99 **Default:** 2
Modem	The name of the predefined modem that is used on this line.
Phone	The phone number to use when **Dial Out** is enabled.

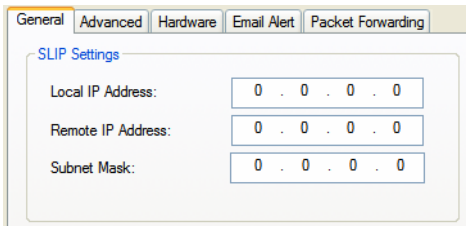
Remote Access (SLIP) Profile

Overview

The **Remote Access (SLIP)** profile configures a serial port to allow a remote user to establish a SLIP connection to the IOLAN's serial port. This is typically used with a modem for dial-in or dial-out access to the network.



General Tab Field Descriptions



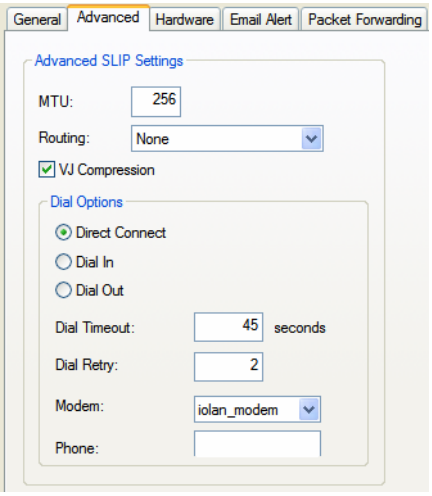
Configure the following parameters:

Local IP Address The IPv4 address of the IOLAN end of the SLIP link. For routing to work you must enter an IP address in this field. Choose an address that is part of the same network or subnetwork as the remote end; for example, if the remote end is address 192.101.34.146, your local IP address can be 192.101.34.145. Do not use the IOLAN's (main) IP address in this field; if you do so, routing will not take place correctly.

Remote IP Address The IPv4 address of the remote end of the SLIP link. Choose an address that is part of the same network or subnetwork as the IOLAN. If your user is authenticated by the IOLAN, this remote IP address will be overridden if you have set a **Framed IP Address** for the user. If your user is authenticated by RADIUS *and* the RADIUS parameter **Framed-Address** is set in the RADIUS file, the IOLAN will use the value in the RADIUS file in preference to the value configured here.

Subnet Mask The network subnet mask. For example, 255.255.0.0. If your user is authenticated by RADIUS *and* the RADIUS parameter **Framed-Netmask** is set in the RADIUS file, the IOLAN will use the value in the RADIUS file in preference to the value configured here.

Advanced Tab Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

MTU

The Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) parameter restricts the size of individual SLIP packets being sent by the IOLAN. Enter a value between 256 and 1006 bytes; for example, 512. The default value is **256**. If your user is authenticated by the IOLAN, this MTU value will be overridden when you have set a **Framed MTU** value for the user. If your user is authenticated by RADIUS *and* the RADIUS parameter **Framed-MTU** is set in the RADIUS file, the IOLAN will use the value in the RADIUS file in preference to the value configured here.

Default: 256

Routing

Determines the routing mode (RIP, Routing Information Protocol) used on the **SLIP** interface as one of the following options:

- **None**—Disables RIP over the SLIP interface.
- **Send**—Sends RIP over the SLIP interface.
- **Listen**—Listens for RIP over the SLIP interface.
- **Send and Listen**—Sends RIP and listens for RIP over the SLIP interface.

This is the same function as the **Framed-Routing** attribute for RADIUS authenticated users.

Default: None

VJ Compression

When enabled, Van Jacobson compression is used on this link. When enabled, C-SLIP, or compressed SLIP, is used. When disabled, plain SLIP is used. C-SLIP greatly improves the performance of interactive traffic, such as Telnet or Rlogin.

If your user is authenticated by the IOLAN, this VJ compression value will be overridden if you have set a **Framed Compression** value for a user. If your user is authenticated by RADIUS *and* the RADIUS parameter **Framed-Compression** is set in the RADIUS file, the IOLAN will use the value in the RADIUS file in preference to the value configured here.

Default: Enabled

Direct Connect

If the device is remote and will be dialing in via modem or ISDN TA, enable this parameter.

Default: Disabled

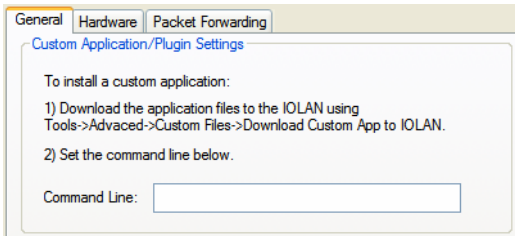
Dial In	If the device is remote and will be dialing in via modem or ISDN TA, enable this parameter. **Default:** Disabled
Dial Out	If you want the modem to dial a number when the serial port is started, enable this parameter. **Default:** Disabled
Dial Timeout	The number of seconds the IOLAN will wait to establish a connection to a remote modem. **Range:** 1-99 **Default:** 45 seconds
Dial Retry	The number of times the IOLAN will attempt to re-establish a connection with a remote modem. **Range:** 0-99 **Default:** 2
Modem	The name of the predefined modem that is used on this line.
Phone	The phone number to use when **Dial Out** is enabled.

Custom Application Profile

Overview

The **Custom App/Plugin** profile is used in conjunction with custom applications created for the IOLAN by using the Perle SDK. See the *SDK Programmer's Guide* (the SDK and guide are found on the Perle website at **`www.perle.com/downloads/index.shtml`**) for information about the functions that are supported. You must download the program and any ancillary files to the IOLAN and set the serial port to the **Custom App/Plugin** profile to actually run a custom application. You must also specify the program executable and any parameters you want to pass to the program in the **Command Line** field.

General Tab Field Description


General
Hardware
Packet Forwarding
Custom Application/Plugin Settings
To install a custom application:
1) Download the application files to the IOLAN using Tools->Advaced->Custom Files->Download Custom App to IOLAN.
2) Set the command line below.
Command Line:

Configure the following parameter:

Command Line	The name of the SDK program executable that has been already been downloaded to the IOLAN, plus any parameters you want to pass to the program.Use the **`shell`** CLI command as described in the *SDK Programmer's Guide* to manage the files that you have downloaded to the IOLAN. For example, using sample outraw program, you would type: **`outraw 192.168.2.1:10001 Acct:10001`** if you were starting the application on a serial port. **Field Format:** Maximum of 80 characters

Port Buffering

Overview

The Port Buffering feature allows data activity on the IOLAN's serial ports to be held in memory for viewing at a later stage without affecting the normal operation of the serial ports.

Note: Port Buffering is only supported on serial port(s) configured for the **Console Management** profile.

Functionality

Port Buffering is required by system administrators to capture important information from devices attached to the IOLAN. If a device (such as a Router) has a problem and sends a warning message out of its console port while no one is connected, the warning can be lost. With **Port Buffering** enabled, the messages will be captured in memory or in a file and can be viewed later to aid administrators in diagnosing and fixing problems.

Local Port Buffering

Port buffer information for the serial port can be viewed after successful connection to a device on a serial port. The user can toggle between communicating to the device on the serial port and viewing the port buffer data for that device by entering a the **View Buffer String** (default **~view**). Local port buffering is limited to 256Kb and will be flushed after the IOLAN reboots.

To view the local port buffer for a particular serial port, you must:

1. Connect to the device on that serial port by Telnet or SSH (the serial port(s) must be set to the **Console Management** profile to support this type of connection).
2. Once you have established a connection to a device, you can enter the **View Buffer String** at any time to switch the display to the content of the port buffer for that particular serial port.
3. To return to communicating to the device, press the **ESC** key and the communication session will continue from where you left off.

To navigate through the port buffer data, the following chart illustrates the keyboard keys or "hot keys" that can be used to view the port buffer data. Press the **ESC** key and to continue to communicate with the device on that particular serial port.

Keyboard	**Buttons Hot Keys**	**Direction**
Page Up	<CTRL>B	Up
Page Down	<CTRL>F	Down
Home	<CTRL>T	Top of the buffer data (oldest data)
End	<CTRL>E	Bottom of the buffer (latest data)
ESC		Exit viewing port buffer data.

Remote Port Buffers

The Remote Port Buffering feature allows data received from serial ports on the IOLAN to be sent to a remote server on the LAN. The remote server, supporting Network File System (NFS), allows administrators to capture and analyze data and messages from the serial device connected to the IOLAN serial port.

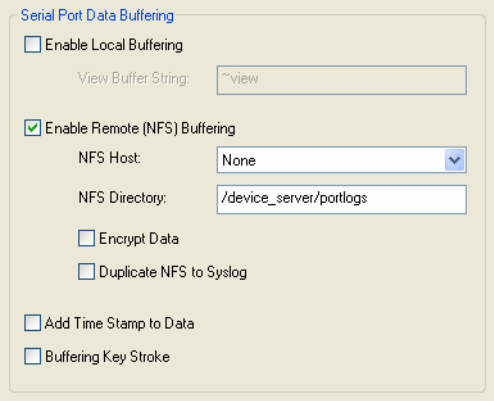
Remote Port Buffering data can be encrypted or raw and/or time stamped. The data is transmitted to an NFS server where a unique remote file is created for each serial port using the configured serial port **Name** for the file name. If the serial port **Name** parameter is left blank, the IOLAN will create unique files using the IOLAN's Ethernet MAC address and serial port number. It is recommended that a unique NFS directory and serial port **Name** be configured if multiple IOLANs use the same NFS host for Remote Port Buffering.

The filenames will be created on the NFS host with a **`.ENC`** extension to indicate data encrypted files or **`.DAT`** for unencrypted files. If the data is encrypted, the Decoder utility application must be run on the NFS server to convert the encrypted data to a readable file for administrators to analyze. The Decoder Utility can be found on your installation CDROM or on the Perle website (www.perle.com).

The data that is sent to the remote buffer file is appended to the end of the file (even through IOLAN reboots), so you will want to create a size limit on the file on your remote NFS host, to keep the buffer file size from becoming too large for your system.

Field Definitions

Port buffering displays or logs data received on the IOLAN serial port.



Configure the following parameters:

Enable Local Buffering	Enables/disables local port buffering on the IOLAN. **Default:** Disabled
View Port Buffering String	The string used by a a session connected to a serial port to display the port buffer for that particular serial port. **Data Options:** Up to an 8 character string. You can specify control (unprintable) codes by putting the decimal value in angle brackets < > (for example, **Escape b** is **<027>b**). **Default:** ~view
Enable Remote (NFS) Buffering	Enables/disables port buffering on a remote system. When you enable this option, you have the ability to save the buffered data to a file(s) (one file is created for each serial port) and/or send it to the Syslog host for viewing on the Syslog host's monitor. **Default:** Disabled

NFS Host	The NFS host that the IOLAN will send data to for its **Remote Port Buffering** feature. The IOLAN will open a file on the NFS host for each serial port configured for **Console Management**, and will send serial port data to be written to that file(s). **Default:** None
NFS Directory	The directory and/or subdirectories where the **Remote Port Buffering** files will be created. For multiple IOLANs using the same NFS host, it is recommended that each IOLAN have its own unique directory to house the remote port log files. **Default:** `/device_server/portlogs`
Encrypt Data	Determines if the data sent to the NFS host is sent encrypted or in the clear across the LAN. **NOTE:** When NFS encryption is enabled, the Decoder utility software is required to be installed on the NFS host for decrypting the data to a readable format. The Decoder utility software can be found on the installation CD-ROM and on the `www.perle.com` website. **Default:** Disabled
Duplicate NFS to Syslog	When enabled, buffered data is sent to the syslog host to be viewed the host's monitor. **Default:** Disabled
Add Time Stamp to Data	Enable/disable time stamping of the serial port buffer data. **Default:** Disabled
Enable Key Stroke Buffering	When enabled, key strokes that are sent from the network host to the serial device on the IOLAN's serial port are buffered. **Default:** Disabled

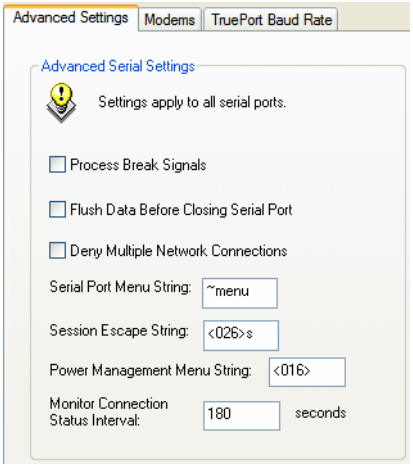
Advanced

Advanced Serial Settings Tab

Overview

Advanced serial port settings apply to all serial ports.

Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

Process Break Signals
Enables/disables proprietary inband SSH break signal processing and the Telnet break signal.
Default: Disabled

Flush Data Before Closing Serial Port
When enabled, deletes any pending data when a port is closed.
Default: Disabled

Deny Multiple Network Connections
Allows only one network connection at a time per a serial port. Application accessing a serial port device across a network with get a connection (socket) refused until:

- All data from previous connections on that serial port has drained
- There are no other connections
- Up to a 1 second interconnection poll timer has expired

This also enables a per-connection TCP keepalive feature. After approximately 3 minutes of network connection idle time, the connection will send a gratuitous ACK to the network peer, thus either ensuring the connection stays active OR causing a dropped connection condition to be recognized by all peer network connections.

Applications using this feature need to be aware that there can be some considerable delay between a network disconnection and the port being available for the next connection attempt, allowing any data sent on prior connections to be transmitted out of the serial port. Application network retry logic needs to accommodate this feature.

Default: Disabled

Serial Port Menu String	When a user connects to the IOLAN through the network, the string used to access the Easy Port Access menu without disconnecting the network connection. **Data Options:** You can specify control (unprintable) codes by putting the decimal value in angle brackets < > (for example, **ESC-b** is **<027>b**). **Default:** ~menu
Session Escape String	When a user connects to the IOLAN through the network, the string is used to access the Reverse Session Menu. **Data Options:** You can specify control (unprintable) codes by putting the decimal value in angle brackets < > (for example, **ESC-b** is **<027>b**). **Default:** <026>s (Ctrl-z s)
Power Management Menu String	Users accessing the IOLAN through the network can enter the string to bring up the Power Bar Management menu. **Data Options:** You can specify control (unprintable) codes by putting the decimal value in angle brackets < > (for example, **ESC-b** is **<027>b**). **Default:** <016> (Ctrl-p)
Monitor Connection Interval Status	Specify how often, in seconds, the IOLAN will send a TCP Keepalive to services that support TCP Keepalive. **Default:** 30 seconds

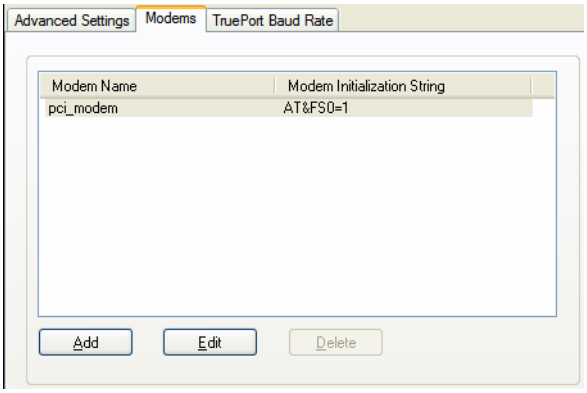
Modems Tab

Overview

You need to configure a modem if there is a modem connected to the IOLAN. If your IOLAN model contains an internal modem or a PCI slot (SCS models) for a modem card, a permanent modem string called **internal_modem** or **IOLAN modem**, respectively, exists permanently in your configuration.

Functionality

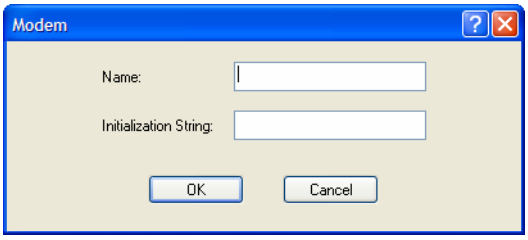
Modems are usually configured for PPP/SLIP dial in/out connections, although some modems do support raw data communication. When you click on the **Modems** tab, you will see the following:



If any modems have been configured, they will be displayed.

Adding/Editing a Modem

You can add new modems or edit existing modems through the following window:



Configure the following parameters:

Name	The name of the modem. **Restrictions:** Do not use spaces.
Initialization String	The initialization string of the modem; see your modem's documentation.

TruePort Baud Rate Tab

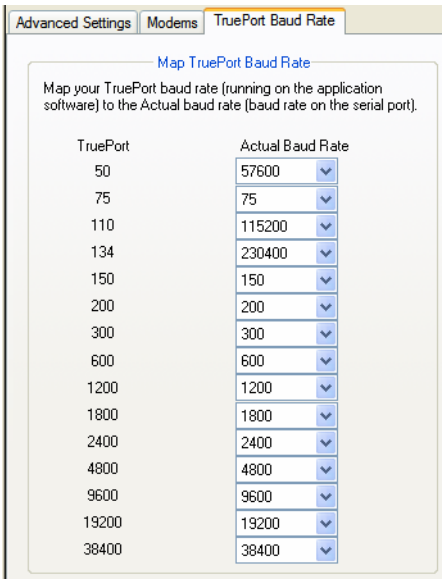
Overview

The TruePort utility acts as a COM port redirector that allows applications to talk to serial devices across a network as though the serial devices were directly attached to the server. For IOLAN I/O models, you can also monitor and control I/O through the TruePort client.

Functionality

Since some older applications may not support the higher baud rates that the IOLAN is capable of achieving, the baud rate can be mapped to a different value on the IOLAN. Through TruePort, you can map the baud rate of the host COM port to a higher baud rate for the serial line that connects the serial device and the IOLAN. See ***TruePort*** on page 355 for more information about the TruePort utility.

Field Definitions

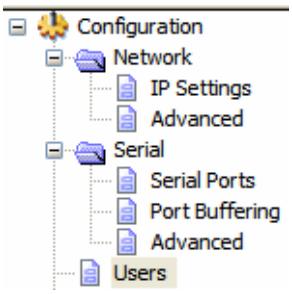


Configure the following parameter:

Actual Baud Rate	The actual baud rate that runs between the IOLAN and the connected serial device. **Range:** 50-230400, you can also specify a custom baud rate

8 Configuring Users

Introduction



You can configure up to four users in the IOLAN's local user database for all DS, SDS, and STS 1-port to 4-port desktop models, in addition to the Admin user. You can configure up to 48 users in the IOLAN's local user database for all STS, SCS, and SDS rack mount models, in addition to the Admin user. A user can even represent a device, like a barcode reader or a card swipe device, that you want to be authenticated.

When users are connecting to the IOLAN via serial ports, the user database can be used to:

- Have the user authenticated prior to establishing a connection to a network host.
- Establish a different connection type to the host specific to each user.
- Create a profile different from the Default user profile.

When users are connecting to the IOLAN from a network connection, the user database can be used to:

- Provide authentication on the IOLAN prior to establishing a serial connection via PPP or SLIP.
- Authenticate users prior to providing access to a serially attached console port (such as a Unix server or router).

Note: You do not need user accounts for users who are externally authenticated.

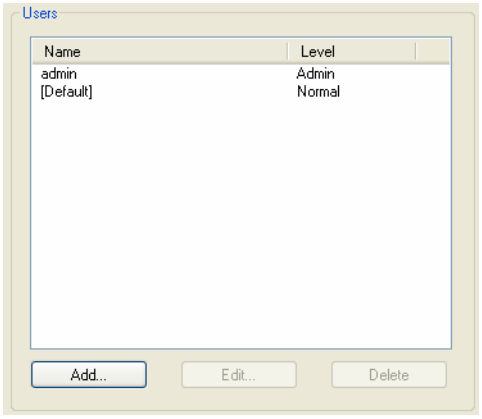
User Settings

Overview

The Users window allows you to add, edit, and delete users from the IOLAN.

Functionality

The Users window displays the users who have been configured. You can add users, edit existing users, or delete users from this window. See ***Adding/Editing Users*** on page 187 for information on the parameters available when adding or editing a user.



Adding/Editing Users

General Tab

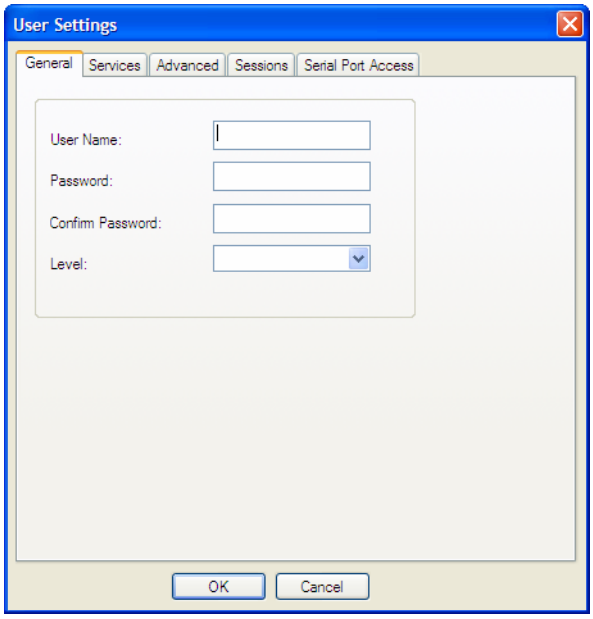
Overview

The General tab configures the basic user information.

Functionality

You must, minimally, provide a **User Name** and **Level** for a user.

Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

User Name	The name of the user. **Restrictions:** Do not use spaces.
Password	The password the user will need to enter to login to the IOLAN.
Confirm Password	Enter the user's password again to verify it is entered correctly.

Level

The access that a user is allowed.

Data Options:

- **Admin**—The admin level user has total access to the IOLAN. You can create more than one admin user account but we recommend that you only have one. They can monitor and configure the IOLAN. Users configured with this level can access the unit either via serial Terminal Profile connection or via a network originated Telnet or SSH connection to the IOLAN.
- **Normal**—The Normal level user has limited access to the IOLAN. Limited CLI commands and Menu access are available with the ability to configure the user's own configuration settings. Users configured with this level can access the unit either via serial Terminal Profile connection or via a network originated Telnet or SSH connection to the IOLAN.
- **Restricted**—The Restricted level user can only access predefined sessions or access the Easy Port Access menu. Users configured with this level will be restricted to pre-defined sessions or limited CLI commands when connecting through the serial port via the Terminal Profile. The CLI commands are limited to those used for initiating a session. If connection to the IOLAN is done with Telnet or SSH from the network, the user will be presented with the Easy Port Access menu.
- **Menu**—The menu level user will only be able to access predefined session when connecting through a serial port with the Terminal profile or will be limited to the Easy Port Access menu when connecting from the network. The Easy Port Access allows the user to connect to the accessible line without disconnecting their initial connection to the IOLAN. Does not have any access to CLI commands.

When the Admin user logs into the IOLAN, the prompt ends with a **#**, whereas all other users' prompts ends with a **$** or **£**, depending on the character set.

Default: Normal

Note: A technique for giving a serially attach user (dial-in or terminal attached), the same menus as one that is network connected is to do the following:

1. Define the serial port with a Terminal Profile using telnet protocol with a direct connection to Host IP address 127.0.0.0 (local loop back).
2. When the user connects to that serial port a Telnet session will be established to the IOLAN and the user will appear to have connected from the network.

Services Tab

Overview

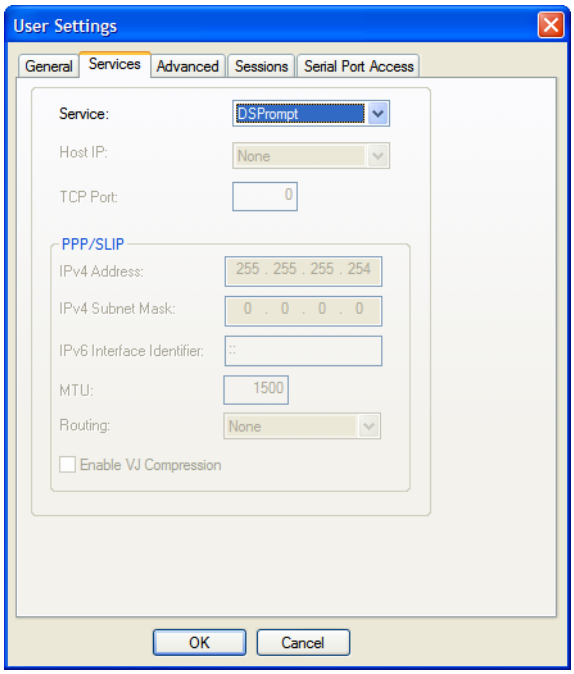
The **Services** tab configures the connection parameters for a user. Any connection parameters configured in this window will override the serial port connection parameters.

Functionality

When a **Terminal** profile is set for the serial port and **Require Login** has been selected, user's accessing the IOLAN through the serial port will be authenticated. Once authentication is successful, the **Service** specified here is started. For example, if the **Service Telnet** is specified, the IOLAN will start a Telnet connection to the specified **Host IP**/**TCP Port** after the user is successfully authenticated (logs in successfully).

Within the **Terminal** profile, there are a number of settings that apply to possible **Services**. Once it is known which user is connected, and which service is to be used, then the settings from both the **Terminal** profile and the user are used. User parameters take precedence over serial port parameters.

Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

Service	Used in conjunction with the **Terminal Profile**. After the user has successfully been authenticated, the specified service is started. **Data Options:** DSPrompt, Telnet, SSH, RLogin, SLIP, PPP, TCP Raw, SSL Raw **Default:** DSPrompt
Host IP	When the **User Service** is set to **Telnet**, **RLogin**, **SSH**, or **TCP Clear**, the target host IP address. If no IP address is specified, the **Host IP** value in the **Default User** configuration will be used. **Default:** 0.0.0.0.

TCP Port

When the **User Service** is **Telnet**, **TCP Clear**, or **SSH**, this is the target port number. The default value will change based on the type of **Service** selected; the most common known port numbers are used as the default values.

IPv4 Address

Used for **User Service PPP** or **SLIP**, sets the IP address of the remote user. Enter the address in dot decimal notation as follows:

- **n.n.n.n**—(where **n** is a number) Enter the IP address of your choice. This IP address will then be used in preference to the **Remote IP Address** set for a line.

The following IP addresses have a special meaning:

- **255.255.255.254**—The IOLAN will use the **Remote IP Address** set in the **PPP** settings for the serial port that this user is connecting to.
- **255.255.255.255**—When the **User Service** is **PPP**, the IOLAN will allow the remote machine to specify its IP address (overriding the IP address negotiation value configured in the **PPP** settings).
- **255.255.255.255**—When the **User Service** is **SLIP**, the IOLAN will use the **Remote IP Address** set for the line (no negotiation).

Default: 255.255.255.254

IPv4 Subnet Mask

If the remote user is on a subnet, enter the network's subnet mask. For example, a subnet mask of 255.255.0.0.

IPv6 Interface Indentifier

Used for **User Service PPP**, sets the IP address of the remote user. Enter the address in IPv6 format. The first 64 bits of the Interface

Field Format: Identifier must be zero, therefore, ::abcd:abcd:abcd:abcd is the expected format.

MTU

Used for **User Service PPP** or **SLIP**, specifies the maximum size of packets, in bytes, being transferred across the link. On noisy links it might be preferable to fragment large packets being transferred over the link, since there will a be quicker recovery from errors.

Data Options:

- **PPP**—**MTU** will be the maximum size of packets that the IOLAN will negotiate for this port. This value is negotiated between the two ends of the link.
- **SLIP**—**MTU** will be the maximum size of packets being sent by the IOLAN.

The **User MTU** value will override the **MTU**/**MRU** values set for a **Serial Port**.

Range: PPP: 64-1500 bytes, SLIP: 256-1006 bytes

Default: PPP is 1500 bytes, SLIP is 256 bytes

Routing

Determines the routing mode used for RIP packets on the **PPP** and **SLIP** interfaces. Values are:

- **None**—RIP packets are neither received nor sent by the IOLAN.
- **Send**—RIP packets can only be sent by the IOLAN.
- **Listen**—RIP packets can only be received by the IOLAN.
- **Send and Listen**—RIP packets are sent and received by the IOLAN.

Default: None

Enable VJ Compression

Used for **User Service PPP** or **SLIP**, determines whether Van Jacobsen Compression is used on the link. VJ compression is a means of reducing the standard TCP/IP header from 40 octets to approximately 5 octets. This gives a significant performance improvement, particularly when interactive applications are being used. For example, when the user is typing, a single character can be transmitted and thus have the overhead of the full TCP/IP header. VJ Compression has minimal effect on other types of links, such as ftp, where the packets are much larger. The **User VJ Compression** option will override the **VJ Compression** value set for a **Serial Port**.

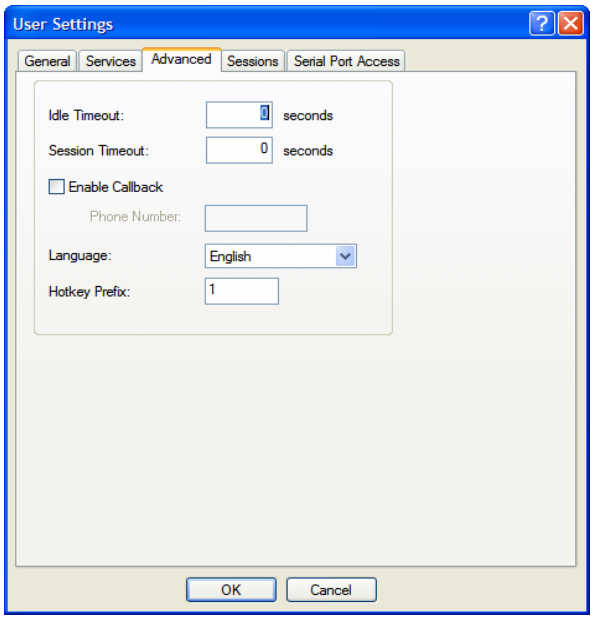
Default: Disabled

Advanced Tab

Overview

The **Advanced** tab is used to configure those parameters that control the user session; this includes session length, language, the hotkey used for switching between sessions, access to clustered ports, etc.

Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

Idle Timeout

The amount of time, in seconds, before the IOLAN closes a connection due to inactivity. The default value is **0** (zero), meaning that the **Idle Timer** will not expire (the connection is open permanently). The **User Idle Timeout** will override all other **Serial Port Idle Timeout** parameters.

Range: 0-4294967

Default: 0

Session Timeout

The amount of time, in seconds, before the IOLAN forcibly closes a user's session (connection). The default value is **0** (zero), meaning that the session timer will not expire (the session is open permanently, or until the user logs out). The **User Session Timeout** will override all other **Serial Port Session Timeout** parameters.

Range: 0-4294967

Default: 0

Enable Callback

When enabled, enter a phone number for the IOLAN to call the user back (the **Enable Callback** parameter is unrelated to the **Serial Port Remote Access (PPP)** profile **Dial** parameter).

Note: the IOLAN will allow callback only when a user is authenticated. If the protocol over the link does not provide authentication, there will be no callback. Therefore, when the **Serial Port** profile is set to **Remote Access (PPP)**, you must use either **PAP** or **CHAP**, because these protocols provide authentication.

The IOLAN supports another type of callback, **Roaming Callback**, which is configurable when the **Serial Port** profile is set to **Remote Access (PPP)**.

Default: Disabled

Phone Number

The phone number the IOLAN will dial to callback the user (you must have set **Enable Callback** enabled).

Restrictions: Enter the number without spaces.

Language

You can specify whether a user will use **English** or **Custom Language** as the language that appears in the Menu, CLI, or WebManager. The IOLAN supports one custom language that must be downloaded to the IOLAN.

Default: English

See ***Language Support*** on page 295 for more information about Custom Languages.

Hotkey Prefix

The prefix that a user types to control the current session.

Data Options:

- **^a *number***—To switch from one session to another, press **^a** (Ctrl-a) and then the required session number. For example, **^a 2** would switch you to session 2. Pressing **^a 0** will return you to the IOLAN Menu.
- **^a n**—Display the next session. The current session will remain active. The lowest numbered active session will be displayed.
- **^a p**—Display the previous session. The current session will remain active. The highest numbered active session will be displayed.
- **^a m**—To exit a session and return to the IOLAN. You will be returned to the menu. The session will be left running.
- **^a l**—(Lowercase L) Locks the serial port until the user unlocks it. The user is prompted for a password (any password, excluding spaces) and the serial port is locked. The user must retype the password to unlock the serial port.
- **^r**—When you switch from a session back to the Menu, the screen may not be redrawn correctly. If this happens, use this command to redraw it properly. This is always **Ctrl R**, regardless of the **Hotkey Prefix**.

The **User Hotkey Prefix** value overrides the **Serial Port Hotkey Prefix** value. You can use the **Hotkey Prefix** keys to lock a serial port only when the serial port's **Allow Port Locking** parameter is enabled.

Default: Hex 01 (Ctrl-a or ^a)

Sessions Tab

Overview

The **Sessions** tab is used to configure specific connections for users who are accessing the network through the IOLAN's serial port.

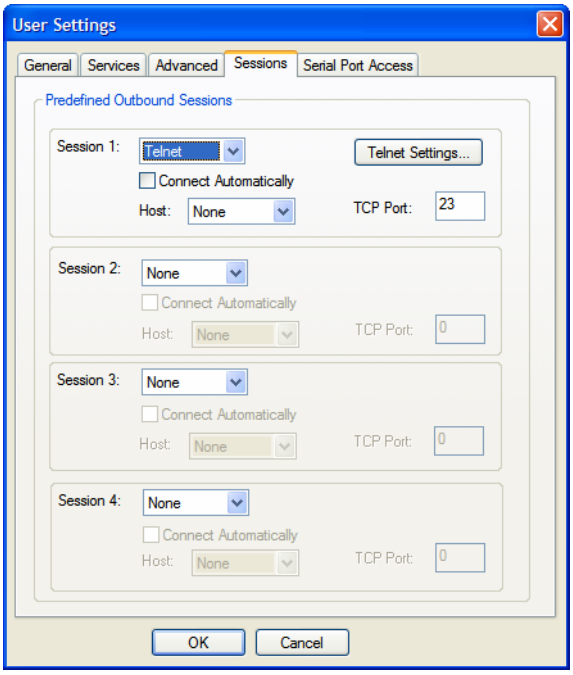
Functionality

Users who have successfully logged into the IOLAN (**User Service** set to **DSprompt**) can start up to four login sessions on network hosts. These users start sessions through the Easy Port Menu option **Sessions**.

Multiple sessions can be run simultaneously to the same host or to different hosts. Users can switch between different sessions and also between sessions and the IOLAN using **Hotkey** commands (see Hotkey Prefix on page 192 for a list of commands).

Users with **Admin** or **Normal** privileges can define new sessions and use them to connect to Network hosts; they can even configure them to start automatically on login to the IOLAN. **Restricted** and **Menu** users can only start sessions predefined for them in their user configuration.

Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

Session 1, 2, 3, 4

You can configure up to four (4) sessions that the user can select from to connect to a specific host after that user has successfully logged into the IOLAN (used only on serial ports configured for the **Terminal** profile).

Data Options:

- **None**—No connection is configured for this session.
- **Telnet**—For information on the Telnet connection window, see ***Telnet Settings*** on page 136.
- **SSH**—For information on the SSH connection window, see ***SSH Settings*** on page 138.
- **RLogin**—For information on the RLogin connection window, see ***Rlogin Settings*** on page 137.

Default: None

Settings Button

Click this button to configure the connection parameters for this session.

Connect Automatically

Specify whether or not the session(s) will start automatically when the user logs into the IOLAN.

Default: Disabled

Host

The host that the user will connect to in this predefined session.

Default: None

TCP Port

The TCP port that the IOLAN will use to connect to the host in this predefined session.

Default: Telnet-23, SSH-22, Rlogin-513

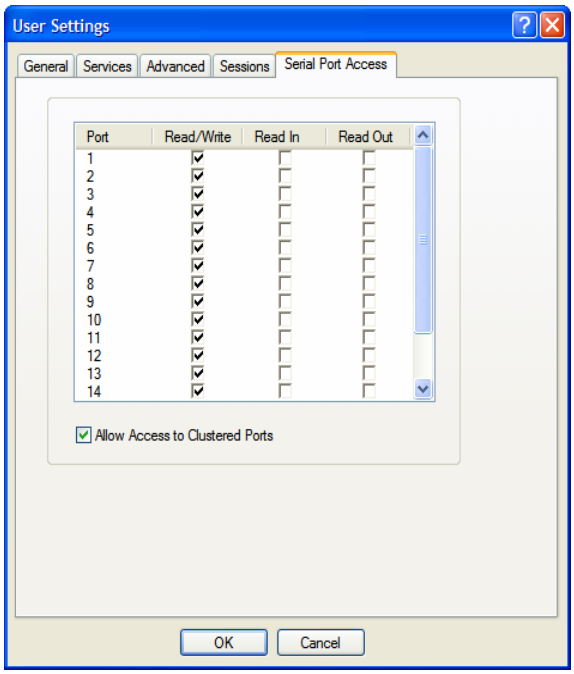
Serial Port Access Tab

Overview

The **Serial Port Access** tab controls the user's read/write access on any given IOLAN serial port. This pertains to users that are connecting from the network to a serial over a Console Management type session.

This can be useful when you have multiple users connecting to the same serial device and you wish to control the viewing and/or the write to and from the device. See the **Multisessions** and **User Authentication** parameters in the ***Console Management Profile*** on page 113 for the serial port settings.

Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

Serial Port Access

Specifies the user access rights to each IOLAN serial port device. There can be multiple users connected to a particular serial device and these settings determine the rights of this user for any of the listed serial ports.

Data Options:

- **Read/Write**—The user has read and write access to the serial port.
- **Read In**—The User will see data going to the serial port, from all network-connected users that have write privileges to this serial port.
- **Read Out**—The user will have access to all data originating from the serial device.

Users can read data going in both directions by selecting both the **Read In** and **Read Out** options.

Default: Read/Write

Allow Access to Clustered Ports

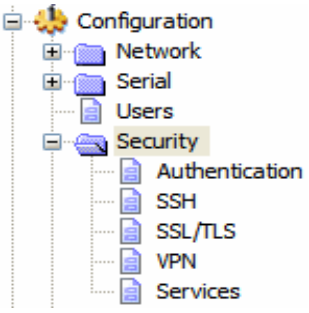
When enabled, allows the user access to IOLANs that have been configured in the clustering group.

Default: Enabled

9 Configuring Security

Introduction

The **Security** group includes the following configuration options:



- **Authentication**—When a serial port is configured for the Console Management or TCP Sockets profile, the user can be authenticated either locally in the IOLAN user profile or externally. This option configures the external authentication server. See ***Authentication*** on page 197 for more information.
- **SSH**—This configuration window sets up the SSH server in the IOLAN. See ***SSH*** on page 205 for more information.
- **SSL/TLS**—This configuration window sets up global SSL/TLS settings, which can be overridden on the serial port level. See ***SSL/TLS*** on page 208 for more information.
- **VPN**—This configuration window sets up the Virtual Personal Network (VPN) IPsec parameters. See ***VPN*** on page 213 for more information.
- **Services**—This configuration window is used to enable/disabled client and daemon services that run in the IOLAN. See ***Services*** on page 219 for more information.

Authentication

Authentication can be handled by the IOLAN or through an external authentication server. Authentication is different from authorization, which can restrict a user's access to the network (although this can be done through the concept of creating sessions for a user, see ***Sessions Tab*** on page 193 for more information). Authentication ensures that the user is defined within the authentication database—with the exception of using the **Guest** authentication option under **Local Authentication**, which can accept any user ID as long as the user knows the configured password.

For external authentication, the IOLAN supports RADIUS, Kerberos, LDAP, TACACS+, SecurID, and NIS. You can specify a primary authentication method and a secondary authentication method. If the primary authentication method fails (cannot connect to the server or authentication fails), the secondary authentication method is tried (unless you enable the **Only Use as backup** option, in which case the secondary authentication method will be tried only when the IOLAN cannot communicate with the primary authentication host). This allows you to specify two different authentication methods. If you do specify two different authentication methods, the user will be prompted for his/her username once, but will be prompted for a password for each authentication method tried. For example, user Alfred's user ID is maintained in the secondary authentication database, therefore, he will be prompted for his password twice, because he is not in the primary authentication database.

Unlike the other external authentication methods, RADIUS and TACACS+ can also send back **Serial Port** and **User** parameters that are used for the duration of the connection. Therefore, any parameters configured by RADIUS or TACACS+ will override the same parameters configured in the IOLAN. See Appendix A, ***RADIUS and TACACS+*** on page 315for more information.

Local

Overview

When **Local** authentication is selected, the user must either be configured in the IOLAN's **User List** or you must enable **Guest** users.

Field Descriptions

Configure the following parameters:

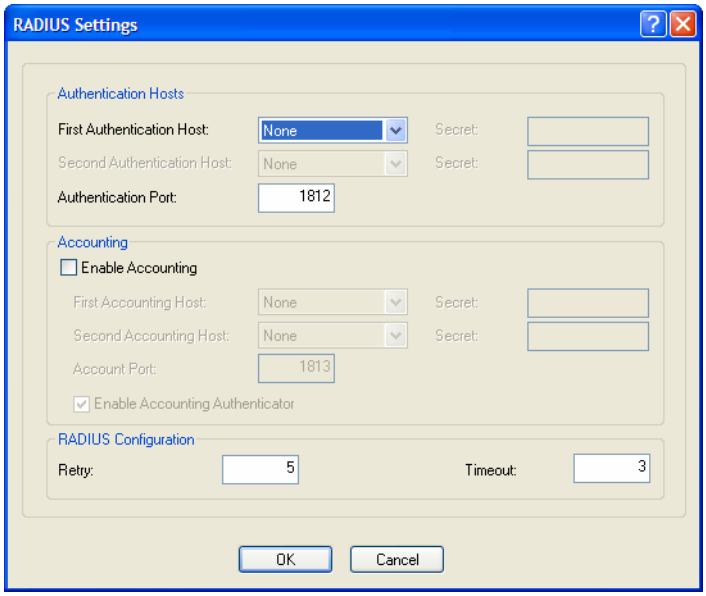
Enable Guest Mode	Allow users who are not defined in the **Users** database to log into the IOLAN with any user ID and the specified password. **Guest** users inherit their settings from the **Default User**'s configuration. **Default:** Disabled
Guest Password	The password that **Guest** users must use to log into the IOLAN.
Confirm Password	Type the **Guest Password** in again to verify that it is correct.

RADIUS

Overview

RADIUS is an authentication method that the IOLAN supports that can send back **User** information; see ***RADIUS*** on page 315 for more information on the **User** parameters that can be sent back by RADIUS.

Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

First Authentication Host Name of the primary RADIUS authentication host.
Default: None

Second Authentication Host Name of the secondary RADIUS authentication host.
Default: None

Secret The secret (password) shared between the IOLAN and the RADIUS authentication host.

Authentication Port The port that the RADIUS host listens to for authentication requests.
Default: 1812

Enable Accounting Enables/disables RADIUS accounting.
Default: Disabled

First Accounting Host Name of the primary RADIUS accounting host.
Default: None

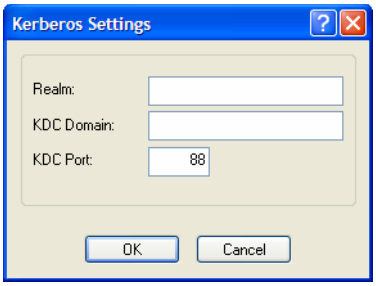
Second Accounting Host Name of the secondary RADIUS accounting host.
Default: None

Secret The secret (password) shared between the IOLAN and the RADIUS accounting host.

Account Port	The port that the RADIUS host listens to for accounting requests. **Default:** 1813
Enable Accounting Authenticator	Enables/disables whether or not the IOLAN validates the RADIUS accounting response. **Default:** Enabled
Retry	The number of times the IOLAN tries to connect to the RADIUS server before erroring out. **Range:** 0-255 **Default:** 5
Timeout	The time, in seconds, that the IOLAN waits to receive a reply after sending out a request to a RADIUS accounting or authentication host. If no reply is received before the timeout period expires, the IOLAN will retry the same host up to and including the number of retry attempts. **Range:** 1-255 **Default:** 3 seconds

Kerberos

Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

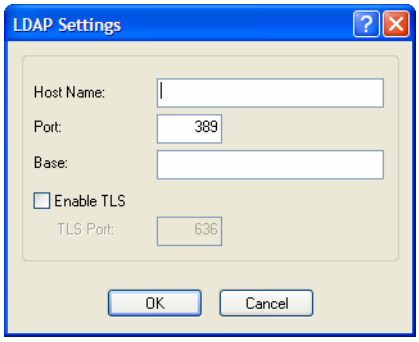
Realm	The Kerberos realm is the Kerberos host domain name, in upper-case letters.
KDC Domain	The name of a host running the KDC (Key Distribution Center) for the specified realm. The host name that you specify must either be defined in the IOLAN's **Host Table** before the last reboot or be resolved by DNS.
KDC Port	The port that the Kerberos server listens to for authentication requests. **Default:** 88

LDAP

Overview

If you are using LDAP with **TLS**, you need to download a CA list to the IOLAN that includes the certificate authority (CA) that signed the LDAP certificate on the LDAP host by selecting **Tools**, **Advanced**, **Keys and Certificates**. See ***Keys and Certificates*** on page 221 for more information on the LDAP certificate.

Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

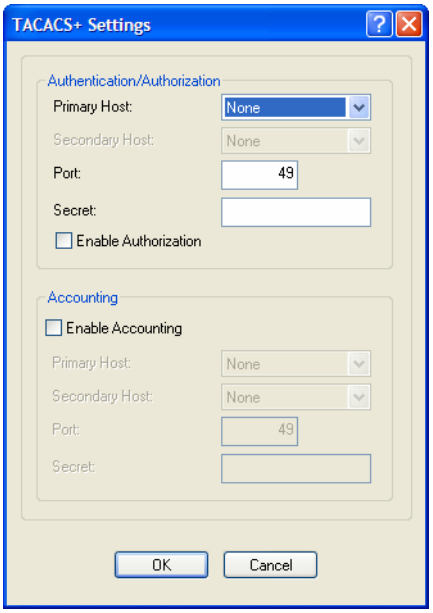
Host Name	The name or IP address of the LDAP host. If you use a host name, that host must either have been defined in the IOLAN's **Host Table** before the last reboot or be resolved by DNS. If you are using **TLS**, you must enter the same string you used to create the LDAP certificate that resides on your LDAP server.
Port	The port that the LDAP host listens to for authentication requests. **Default:** 389
Base	The domain component (dc) that is the starting point for the search for user authentication.
Enable TLS	Enables/disables the Transport Layer Security (TLS) with the LDAP host. **Default:** Disabled
TLS Port	Specify the port number that LDAP will use for **TLS**. **Default:** 636

TACACS+

Overview

TACACS+ is an authentication method that the IOLAN supports that can send back **User** information; see Appendix , *TACACS+* on page 322 for more information on the **User** parameters that can be sent back by TACACS+.

Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

Authentication/ Authorization Primary Host	The primary TACACS+ host that is used for authentication. **Default:** None
Authentication/ Authorization Secondary Host	The secondary TACACS+ host that is used for authentication, should the primary TACACS+ host fail to respond. **Default:** None
Authentication/ Authorization Port	The port number that TACACS+ listens to for authentication requests. **Default:** 49
Authentication/ Authorization Secret	The TACACS+ shared secret is used to encrypt/decrypt TACACS+ packets in communications between two devices. The shared secret may be any alphanumeric string. Each shared secret must be configured on both client and server sides.
Enable Authorization	Enables authorization on the TACACS+ host, meaning that IOLAN-specific parameters set in the TACACS+ configuration file can be passed to the IOLAN after authentication. **Default:** Disabled
Enable Accounting	Enables/disables TACACS+ accounting. **Default:** Disabled

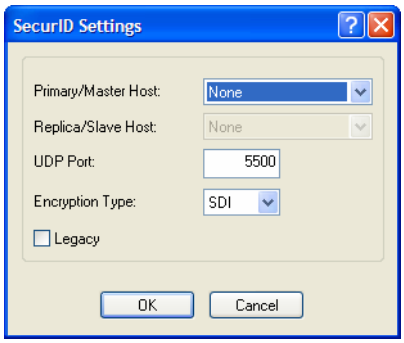
Accounting Primary Host	The primary TACACS+ host that is used for accounting. **Default:** None
Accounting Secondary Host	The secondary TACACS+ host that is used for accounting, should the primary accounting TACACS+ host fail to respond. **Default:** None
Accounting Port	The port number that TACACS+ listens to for accounting requests. **Default:** 49
Accounting Secret	The TACACS+ shared secret is used to encrypt/decrypt TACACS+ packets in communications between two devices. The shared secret may be any alphanumeric string. Each shared secret must be configured on both client and server sides.

SecurID

Overview

If you need to reset the SecurID secret, select **Tools**, **Reset**, **Reset SecurID Node Secret**.

Field Descriptions

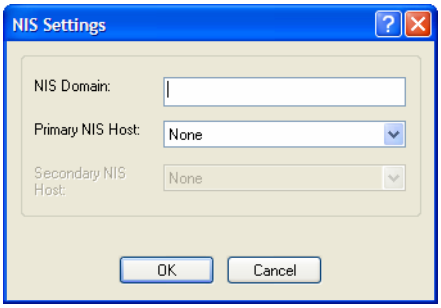


Configure the following parameters:

Primary/Master Host	The first SecurID server that is tried for user authentication. **Default:** None
Replica/Slave Host	If the first SecurID server does not respond to an authentication request, this is the next SecurID server that is tried for user authentication. **Default:** None
UDP Port	The port number that SecurID listens to for authentication requests. **Default:** 5500
Encryption Type	The type of encryption that will be used for SecurID server communication. **Data Options:** DES, SDI **Default:** SDI
Legacy	If you are running SecurID 3.x or 4.x, you need to run in **Legacy Mode**. If you are running SecurID 5.x or above, do not select **Legacy Mode**. **Default:** Disabled

NIS

Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

NIS Domain	The NIS domain name.
Primary NIS Host	The primary NIS host that is used for authentication. **Default:** None
Secondary NIS Host	The secondary NIS host that is used for authentication, should the primary NIS host fail to respond. **Default:** None

SSH

Overview

The IOLAN contains SSH Server software that you need to configure if the IOLAN is going to be accessed via SSH. If you specify more than one **Authentication** method and/or **Cipher**, the IOLAN will negotiate with the client and use the first authentication method and cipher that is compatible with both systems.

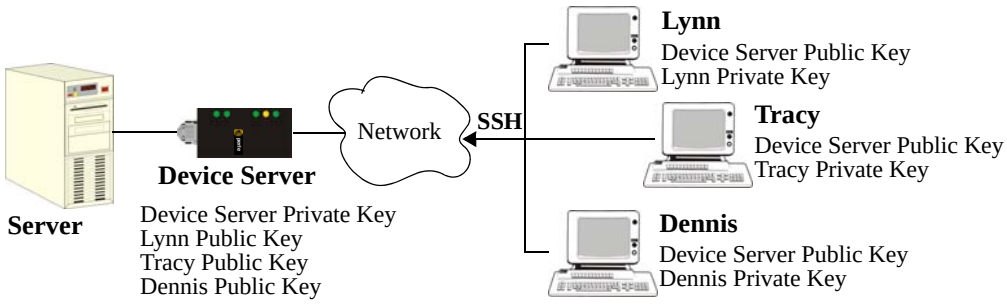
Functionality

When you are using the SSH connection protocol, keys need to be distributed to all users and the IOLAN. Below are a couple of example scenarios for key/certificate distribution.

Users Logging into the IOLAN Using SSH

This scenario applies to serial ports configured for **Console Management** using the SSH protocol. In the following example, users are connecting to the IOLAN via SSH from the LAN. Therefore, the following keys need to be exchanged:

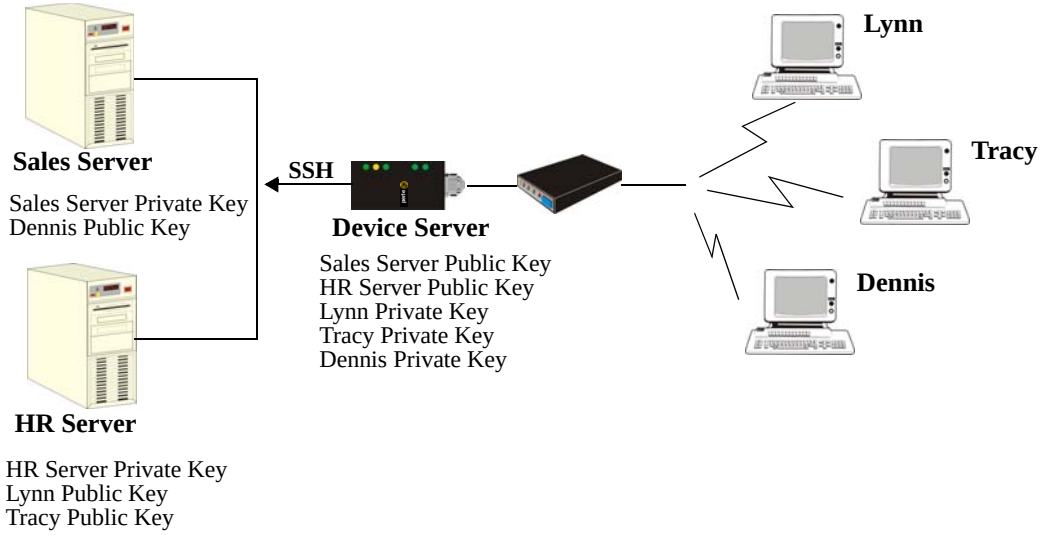
- Upload the IOLAN **SSH Public Key** to each user's host machine who is connecting and logging into the IOLAN using SSH.
- Download the SSH Public Key from each user's host machine who is connecting and logging into the IOLAN using SSH.



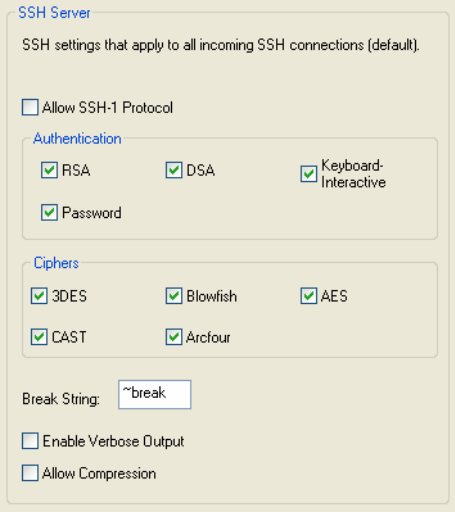
Users Passing Through the IOLAN Using SSH (Dir/Sil)

This scenario applies to serial ports configured for the **Terminal** profile and are required to login to the IOLAN. The user's service is set to the SSH protocol, therefore, users first log into the IOLAN and then are connected to a specified host (configured for the user when **User Service SSH** is selected) through an SSH connection. Lynn and Tracy automatically connect to the HR Server and Dennis automatically connects to the Development Server via SSH through the IOLAN. All the SSH negotiation is being done between the IOLAN and the target servers, therefore, the following keys need to be exchanged:

- Download the **SSH Host Public Key** to the IOLAN for each of the hosts that the IOLAN is connecting to.
- Download the **SSH User Private Key** for each user whose **User Service** is set to **SSH**.
- Copy the SSH User Public Key to the host that the user is connecting to (this is done outside the scope of the IOLAN).



Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

Allow SSH-1 Protocol — Allows the user's client to negotiate an SSH-1 connection, in addition to SSH-2.
Default: Disabled

RSA — When a client SSH session requests RSA authentication, the IOLAN's SSH server will authenticate the user via RSA.
Default: Enabled

DSA — When a client SSH session requests DSA authentication, the IOLAN's SSH server will authenticate the user via DSA.
Default: Enabled

Keyboard-Interactive — The user types in a password for authentication.
Default: Enabled

Password — The user types in a password for authentication.
Default: Enabled

3DES — The IOLAN SSH server's 3DES encryption is enabled/disabled.
Default: Enabled

CAST — The IOLAN SSH server's CAST encryption is enabled/disabled.
Default: Enabled

Blowfish — The IOLAN SSH server's Blowfish encryption is enabled/disabled.
Default: Enabled

Arcfour — The IOLAN SSH server's Arcfour encryption is enabled/disabled.
Default: Enabled

AES — The IOLAN SSH server's AES encryption is enabled/disabled.
Default: Enabled

Break String	The break string used for inband SSH break signal processing. A break signal is generated on a specific serial port only when the server's break option is enabled and the user currently connected using reverse SSH has typed the break string exactly. **Field Format:** maximum 8 characters **Default:** ~break, where ~ is tilde
Enable Verbose Output	Displays debug messages on the terminal. **Default:** Disabled
Allow Compression	Requests compression of all data. Compression is desirable on modem lines and other slow connections, but will only slow down things on fast networks. **Default:** Disabled

SSL/TLS

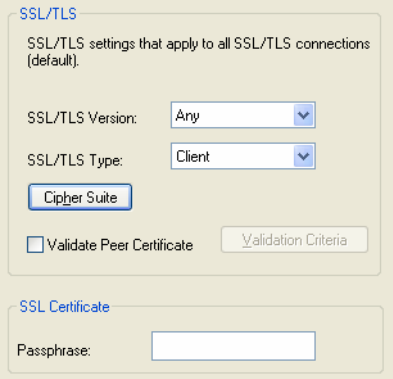
Overview

When you configure the **SSL/TLS** settings in the **System** section, you are actually configuring the default SSL/TLS settings; you are not configuring an SSL/TLS server.

Functionality

You can create an encrypted connection using SSL/TLS for the following profiles: **TruePort**, **TCP Sockets**, **Terminal** (the user's **Service** must be set to **SSL_Raw**), **Serial Tunneling**, **Virtual Modem**, and **Modbus**. You can set up the IOLAN to act as an SSL/TLS client or server. There is an extensive selection of SSL/TLS ciphers that you can configure for your SSL/TLS connection (see Appendix B, ***SSL/TLS Ciphers*** on page 327). You can also enable peer certificate validation, for which you must supply the validation criteria that was used when creating the peer certificate (this is case sensitive, so keep that in mind when enabling this option).

Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

SSL/TLS Version Specify whether you want to use:

- **Any**—The IOLAN will try a TLSv1 connection first. If that fails, it will try an SSLv3 connection. If that fails, it will try an SSLv2 connection.
- **TLSv1**—The connection will use only TLSv1.
- **SSLv3**—The connection will use only SSLv3.

Default: Any

SSL/TLS Type Specify whether the IOLAN serial port will act as an SSL/TLS client or server.

Default: Client

Cipher Suite Button Click this button to specify SSL/TLS connection ciphers.

Validate Peer Certificate Enable this option when you want the Validation Criteria to match the Peer Certificate for authentication to pass. If you enable this option, you need to download an SSL/TLS certificate authority (CA) list file to the IOLAN.

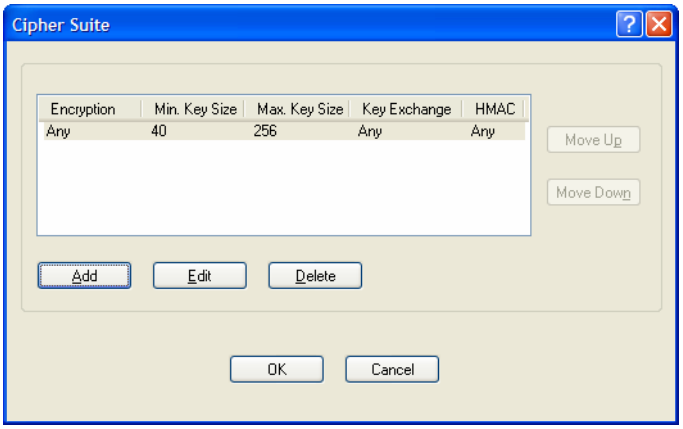
Default: Disabled

Validation Criteria Button Click this button to create peer certificate validation criteria that must be met for a valid SSL/TLS connection.

SSL Certificate Passphrase This is the SSL/TLS passphrase used to generate an encrypted RSA/DSA private key. This private key and passphrase are required for both HTTPS and SSL/TLS connections, unless an unencrpyted private key was generated, then the SSL passphrase is not required. Make sure that you download the SSL private key and certificate if you are using the secure HTTP option (HTTPS) or SSL/TLS. If both RSA and DSA private keys are downloaded to the IOLAN, they need to be generated using the same SSL passphrase for both to work.

Cipher Suite Field Descriptions

The SSL/TLS cipher suite is used to encrypt data between the IOLAN and the client. You can specify up to five cipher groups.

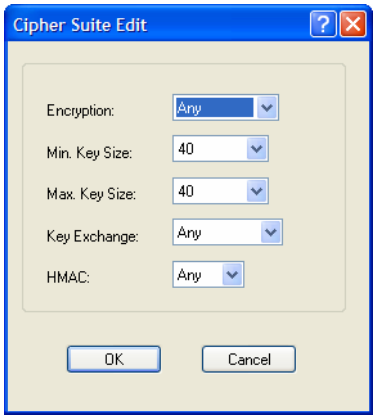


The following buttons are available on the Cipher Suite window:

Add Button	Adds a cipher to the cipher list.
Edit Button	Edits a cipher in the cipher list.
Delete Button	Deletes a cipher to the cipher list.
Move Up Button	Moves a cipher up in preference in the cipher list.
Move Down Button	Moves a cipher down in preference in the cipher list.

Adding/Editing a Cipher

See Appendix B, SSL/TLS Ciphers on page 327 for a list of valid SSL/TLS ciphers.



Configure the following parameters:

Encryption — Select the type of encryption that will be used for the SSL connection.

Data Options:

- Any—Will use the first encryption format that can be negotiated.
- AES
- 3DES
- DES
- ARCFOUR
- ARCTWO

Default: Any

Min Key Size — The minimum key size value that will be used for the specified encryption type.

Data Options: 40, 56, 64, 128, 168, 256

Default: 40

Max Key Size — The maximum key size value that will be used for the specified encryption type.

Data Options: 40, 56, 64, 128, 168, 256

Default: 256

Key Exchange — The type of key to exchange for the encryption format.

Data Options:

- **Any**—Any key exchange that is valid is used (this does not, however, include ADH keys).
- **RSA**—This is an RSA key exchange using an RSA key and certificate.
- **EDH-RSA**—This is an EDH key exchange using an RSA key and certificate.
- **EDH-DSS**—This is an EDH key exchange using a DSA key and certificate.
- **ADH**—This is an anonymous key exchange which does not require a private key or certificate. Choose this key if you do not want to authenticate the peer device, but you want the data encrypted on the SSL/TLS connection.

Default: Any

HMAC

Select the key-hashing for message authentication method for your encryption type.

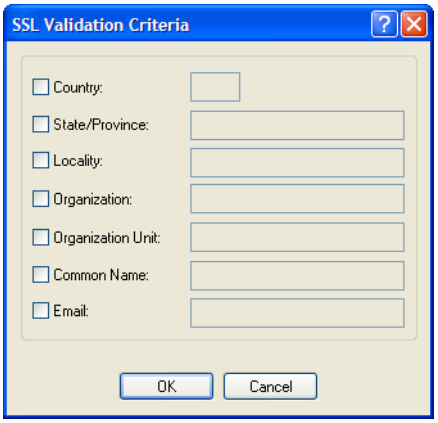
Data Options:

- Any
- MD5
- SHA1

Default: Any

Validation Criteria Field Descriptions

If you choose to configure validation criteria, then the information in the peer SSL/TLS certificate must match exactly the information configured in this window in order to pass peer authentication and create a valid SSL/TLS connection.



Configure the following parameters:

Country

A country code; for example, US. This field is case sensitive in order to successfully match the information in the peer SSL/TLS certificate.

Data Options: Two characters

State/Province

An entry for the state/province; for example, IL. This field is case sensitive in order to successfully match the information in the peer SSL/TLS certificate.

Data Options: Maximum 128 characters

Locality

An entry for the location; for example, Chicago. This field is case sensitive in order to successfully match the information in the peer SSL/TLS certificate.

Data Options: Maximum 128 characters

Organization

An entry for the organization; for example, Accounting. This field is case sensitive in order to successfully match the information in the peer SSL/TLS certificate.

Data Options: Maximum 64 characters

Organization Unit

An entry for the unit in the organization; for example, Payroll. This field is case sensitive in order to successfully match the information in the peer SSL/TLS certificate.

Data Options: Maximum 64 characters

Common Name	An entry for common name; for example, the host name or fully qualified domain name. This field is case sensitive in order to successfully match the information in the peer SSL/TLS certificate. **Data Options:** Maximum 64 characters
Email	An entry for an email address; for example, acct@anycompany.com. This field is case sensitive in order to successfully match the information in the peer SSL/TLS certificate. **Data Options:** Maximum 64 characters

VPN

Overview

You can configure the IOLAN for a host-to-host Virtual Private Network (VPN) connection, a host-to-network VPN connection, or a network-to-network VPN connection, or host/network-to-IOLAN VPN connection (allowing serial devices connected to the IOLAN to communicate data to a host/network). You can configure up to 64 VPN tunnels.

Functionality

The IOLAN can be configured as a VPN gateway using the IPsec protocol. You can configure the VPN connection using two IOLANs as the local and remote VPN gateways or an IOLAN as the local VPN gateway and a host/server running the VPN software as the remote VPN gateway.

If the VPN tunnel is being configured for an IPv6 network that is going through a router(s), the router(s) must have manual IPv6 address entry capability, similar to what Windows Vista provides.

If your VPN server/client supports any of the following parameters, they must be configured as shown to allow a VPN tunnel between the IOLAN and the VPN server/client:

perfect forward secrecy: no
protocol: ESP
mode: tunnel (not transport)
opportunistic encryption: no
aggressive mode: no

IKE Phase 1 Proposals

The following IKE Phase 1 proposals are supported by the IOLAN VPN gateway:

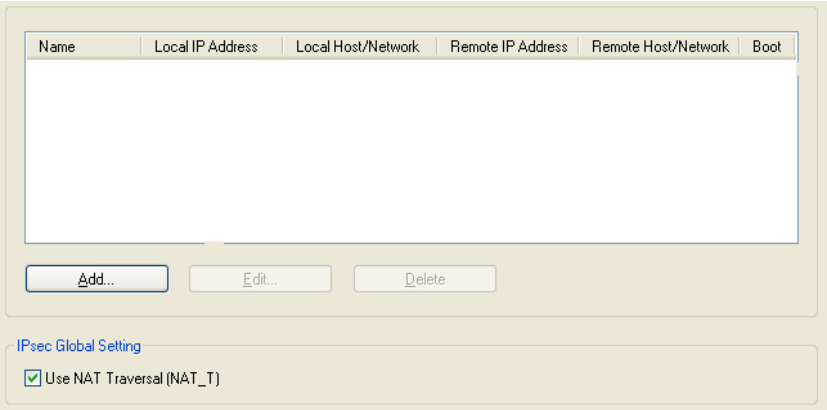
- **Ciphers**—3DES, AES
- **Hashes**—MD5, SHA1
- **Diffie-Hellman Groups**—2 (MODP1024), 5 (MODP1536), 14 (MODP2048), 15 (MODP3072), 16 (MODP4096), 17 (MODP6144), 18 (MODP8192)

ESP Phase 2 Proposals

The following ESP Phase 2 proposals are supported by the IOLAN VPN gateway:

- **Ciphers**—3DES, AES
- **Authentication Algorithms**—MD5, SHA1, SHA2

Field Descriptions

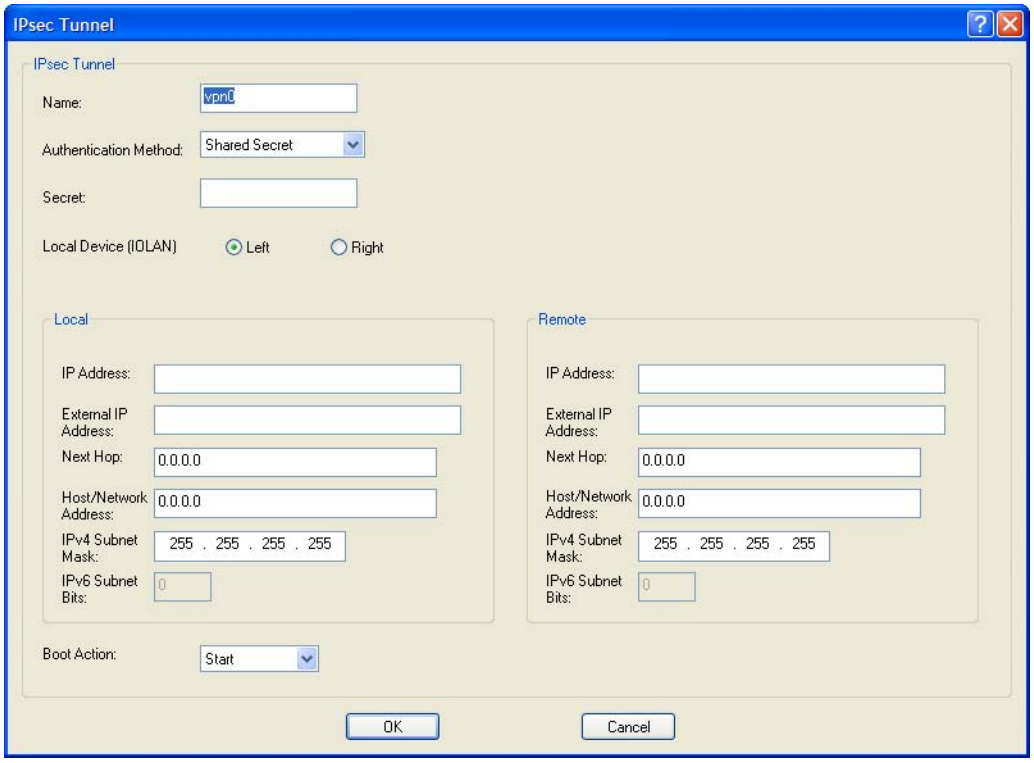


The following buttons and parameter are available:

Add Button	Click this button to add a new IPsec VPN tunnel.
Edit Button	Select an existing IPsec VPN tunnel and click the button to edit the tunnel's parameters.
Delete Button	Select an existing IPsec VPN tunnel and click the button to remove the tunnel.
Use NAT Traversal (NAT_T)	NAT Traversal should be enabled when the IOLAN is communicating through a router/gateway to a remote VPN that also has NAT Traversal enabled. **Default:** Enabled

Adding/Editing the IPsec Tunnel

When you click the **Add** button or select an IPsec tunnel and click the **Edit** button, the following window is displayed:



Configure the following parameters:

Name

Provide a name for the IPsec VPN tunnel to make it easy to identify.

Text Characteristics: Maximum of 16 characters, spaces not allowed

Authentication Method

Specify the authentication method that will be used between VPN peers to authenticate the VPN tunnel.

Data Options:

- **Shared Secret**—A text-based secret that is used to authenticate the IPsec tunnel (case sensitive).
- **RSA Signature**—RSA signatures are used to authenticate the IPsec tunnel. When using this authentication method, you must download the IPsec RSA public key to the IOLAN and upload the IPsec RSA public key from the IOLAN to the VPN gateway.
- **X.509 Certificate**—X.509 certificates are used to authenticate the IPsec tunnel. When using this authentication method, you must include the signing authority's certificate information in the SSL/TLS CA list and download it to the IOLAN.

Default: Shared Secret

Validation Criteria Button Click this button to configure the remote X.509 certificate information that is required to successfully authenticate the VPN connection. Note that all validation criteria must be configured to match the X.509 certificate. An asterisk (*) is valid as a wildcard.

See ***Remote Validation Criteria Field Descriptions*** on page 218 for more information on the X.509 certificate validation criteria.

Secret When the **Authentication Method** is set to **Shared Secret**, enter the case-sensitive secret word.

Text Characteristics: Maximum of 16 characters, spaces not allowed

Local Device When the VPN tunnel is established, one side of the tunnel is designated as Right and the other as Left. You are configuring the IOLAN-side of the VPN tunnel.

Data Options: Left, Right

Default: Left

Local IP Address The IP address of the IOLAN. You can specify **`%defaultroute`** when the IP address of the IOLAN is not always known (for example, when it gets its IP address from DHCP). When **`%defaultroute`** is used, a default gateway must be configured in the route table (**Network**, **Advanced**, **Route List** tab).

Field Format: IPv4, IPv6, FQDN, **`%defaultroute`**

Local External IP Address When **NAT Traversal (NAT_T)** is enabled, this is IOLAN's external IP address or FQDN. When the IOLAN is behind a NAT router, this will be its public IP address.

Field Format: IPv4, IPv6, FQDN

Local Next Hop The IP address of the router/gateway that will forward data packets to the remote VPN (if required). The router/gateway must reside on the same subnet at the IOLAN. Leave this parameter blank if you want to use the **Default Gateway** configured in the IOLAN.

Field Format: IPv4 or IPv6 address

Default: 0.0.0.0

Local Host/Network Address The IP address of a specific host, or the network address that the IOLAN will provide a VPN connection to.

Field Format: IPv4 or IPv6 address

Default: 0.0.0.0

Local IPv4 Subnet Mask The subnet mask of the local IPv4 network. Keep the default value when you are configuring a host-to-host VPN connection.

Default: 255.255.255.255

Local IPv6 Subnet Bits The subnet bits of the local IPv6 network. Keep the default value when you are configuring a host-to-host VPN connection.

Default: 0

Remote IP Address The IP address or FQDN of the remote VPN peer. If you want to accept a VPN connection from any VPN peer, you can enter **`%any`** in this field.

Field Format: IPv4, IPv6, FQDN, **`%any`**

Remote External IP Address When **NAT Traversal (NAT_T)** is enabled, the remote VPN's public external IP address or FQDN.

Field Format: IPv4, IPv6, FQDN

Remote Next Hop

The IP address of the router/gateway that will forward data packets to the IOLAN (if required). The router/gateway must reside on the same subnet at the remote VPN.

Field Format: IPv4 or IPv6 address

Default: 0.0.0.0

Remote Host/Network Address

The IP address of a specific host or the network address that the IOLAN will provide a VPN connection to. If the IPsec tunnel is listening for connections (**Boot Action** set to **Add**), and the field value is left at **0.0.0.0**, any VPN peer with a private remote network/host that conforms to RFC 1918 (10.0.0.0/8, 172.16.0.0./12, 192.168.0.0/16) will be allowed to use this tunnel if it successfully authenticates.

Field Format: IPv4 or IPv6 address

Default: 0.0.0.0

Remote IPv4 Subnet Mask

The subnet mask of the remote IPv4 network. Keep the default value when you are configuring a host-to-host VPN connection.

Default: 255.255.255.255

Remote IPv6 Subnet Bits

The subnet bits of the remote IPv6 network. Keep the default value when you are configuring a host-to-host VPN connection.

Default: 0

Boot Action

Determines the state of the VPN network when the IOLAN is booted.

Data Options:

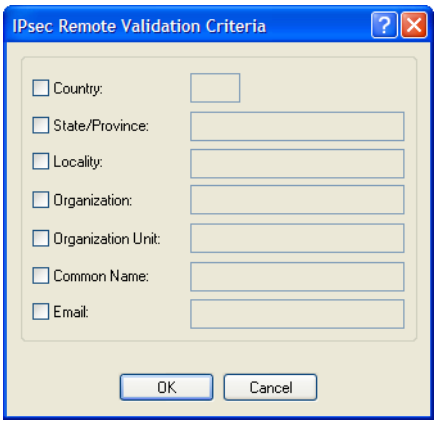
- **Start**—Starts the VPN network, initiating communication to the remote VPN.
- **Add**—Adds the VPN network, but doesn't initiate a connection to the remote VPN.
- **Ignore**—Maintains the VPN network configuration, but the VPN network is not started and cannot be started through the IPsec command option.

When defining peer VPN gateways, one side should be defined as **Start** (initiate) and the other as **Add** (listen). It is invalid to define both gateways as **Add**. VPN connection time can take longer when both gateways are set to **Start**, as both sides will attempt to initiate the same VPN connection.

Default: Start

Remote Validation Criteria Field Descriptions

When the **Authentication Method** is set to **X.509 Certificate**, you can configure the remote validation criteria. The information in the remote X.509 certificate must match exactly the information configured in this window in order to successfully authenticate and create a valid connection.



Configure the following parameters:

Country
A country code; for example, US. This field is case sensitive in order to successfully match the information in the remote X.509 certificate.
Data Options: Two characters, asterisk (*) works as a wildcard

State/Province
An entry for the state/province; for example, IL. This field is case sensitive in order to successfully match the information in the remote X.509 certificate.
Data Options: Maximum 128 characters, asterisk (*) works as a wildcard

Locality
An entry for the location; for example, Chicago. This field is case sensitive in order to successfully match the information in the remote X.509 certificate.
Data Options: Maximum 128 characters, asterisk (*) works as a wildcard

Organization
An entry for the organization; for example, Accounting. This field is case sensitive in order to successfully match the information in the remote X.509 certificate.
Data Options: Maximum 64 characters, asterisk (*) works as a wildcard

Organization Unit
An entry for the unit in the organization; for example, Payroll. This field is case sensitive in order to successfully match the information in the remote X.509 certificate.
Data Options: Maximum 64 characters, asterisk (*) works as a wildcard

Common Name
An entry for common name; for example, the host name or fully qualified domain name. This field is case sensitive in order to successfully match the information in the remote X.509 certificate.
Data Options: Maximum 64 characters, asterisk (*) works as a wildcard

Email
An entry for an email address; for example, acct@anycompany.com. This field is case sensitive in order to successfully match the information in the remote X.509 certificate.
Data Options: Maximum 64 characters, asterisk (*) works as a wildcard

Services

Overview

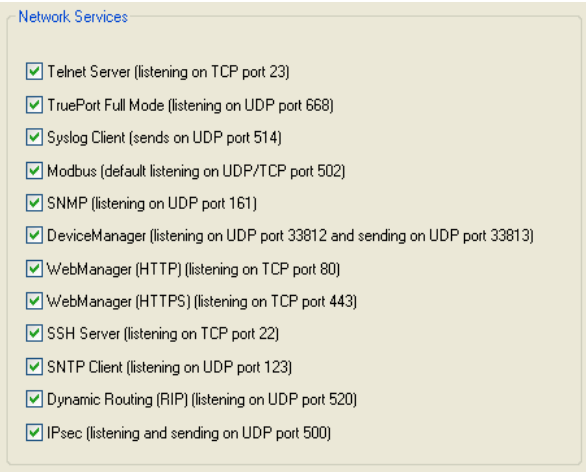
Services are either daemon or client processes that run on the IOLAN. You can disable any of the services for security reasons.

Functionality

If you disable any of the daemons, it can affect how the IOLAN can be used or accessed. For example, if you disable WebManager (HTTPS and HTTP) services, you will not be able to access the IOLAN with the WebManager. If you disable the DeviceManager service, the DeviceManager will not be able to connect to the IOLAN. If you do not want to allow users to Telnet to the IOLAN, you can disable the Telnet Server service; therefore, disabling daemons can also be used as an added security method for accessing the IOLAN.

By default, all daemon and client applications are enabled, except IPsec, and running on the IOLAN.

Field Descriptions


Network Services
Telnet Server (listening on TCP port 23)
TruePort Full Mode (listening on UDP port 668)
Syslog Client (sends on UDP port 514)
Modbus (default listening on UDP/TCP port 502)
SNMP (listening on UDP port 161)
DeviceManager (listening on UDP port 33812 and sending on UDP port 33813)
WebManager (HTTP) (listening on TCP port 80)
WebManager (HTTPS) (listening on TCP port 443)
SSH Server (listening on TCP port 22)
SNTP Client (listening on UDP port 123)
Dynamic Routing (RIP) (listening on UDP port 520)
IPsec (listening and sending on UDP port 500)

Enable/disable the following options:

Telnet Server	Telnet daemon process in the IOLAN listening on TCP port 23. **Default:** Enabled
TruePort Full Mode	The TruePort daemon process in the IOLAN that supports TruePort Full Mode on UDP port 668. You can still communicate with the IOLAN in Light Mode when this service is disabled. **Default:** Enabled
Syslog Client	Syslog client process in the IOLAN. **Default:** Enabled
Modbus	Modbus daemon process in the IOLAN listening on port 502. **Default:** Enabled
SNMP	SNMP daemon process in the IOLAN listening on port 161. **Default:** Enabled

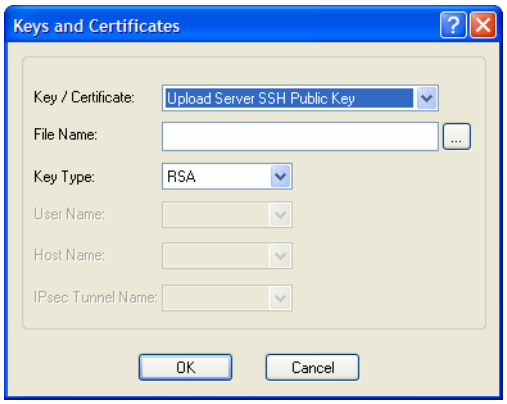
DeviceManager	DeviceManager daemon process in the IOLAN. If you disable this service, you will not be able to connect to the IOLAN with the DeviceManager application. The DeviceManager listens on port 33812 and sends on port 33813. **Default:** Enabled
WebManager (HTTP)	WebManager daemon process in the IOLAN listening on port 80. **Default:** Enabled
WebManager (HTTPS)	Secure WebManager daemon process in the IOLAN listening on port 443. **Default:** Enabled If you are using the WebManager in secure mode (HTTPS), you need to download the SSL/TLS private key and certificate to the IOLAN. You also need to set the **SSL Passphrase** parameter with the same password that was used to generate the key. See ***Keys and Certificates*** on page 221 for more information.
SSH Server	SSH daemon process in the IOLAN listening on TCP port 22. **Default:** Enabled
SNTP Client	SNTP client process in the IOLAN. **Default:** Enabled
Dynamic Routing (RIP)	Dynamic Routing daemon process in the IOLAN listening on port 520. **Default:** Enabled
IPsec	IPsec daemon process in the IOLAN listening and sending on UDP port 500. **Default:** Disabled

Keys and Certificates

When you are using SSH, SSL/TLS, LDAP, or HTTPS, you will need to install keys and/or certificates or get server keys in order to make those options work properly. All certificates need to be created and all keys need to be generated outside of the IOLAN, with the exception of the IOLAN SSH Public keys, which already exist in the IOLAN. SSH keys must be generated using the OpenSSH format.

Certificate Authorities (CAs) such as Verisign, COST, GTE CyberTrust, etc. can issue certificates. Or, you can create a self-signed certificate using a utility such as OpenSSL.

To download or keys, a certificate, or a CA list or to upload the IOLAN public SSH key, select **Tools**, **Advanced**, **Keys and Certificates**.



The following fields are available:

Key / Certificate — Select the key or certificate that you want to download to the IOLAN or upload the IOLAN SSH Public Key.

Data Options:

- **Upload Server SSH Public Key**, used for **Console Management** serial ports set to SSH connections
- **Download SSH User Public Key**, used for **Console Management** serial ports set to SSH connections
- **Download SSH User Private Key**, used for IOLAN Users on serial ports set to the **Terminal** profile using SSH connections
- **Download SSH Host Public Key**, used for IOLAN Users on serial ports set to the **Terminal** profile using SSH connections
- **Download SSL/TLS Private Key**, required if using HTTPS and/or SSL/TLS
- **Download SSL/TLS Certificate**, required if using HTTPS and/or SSL/TLS
- **Download SSL/TLS CA**, required if using LDAP with TLS, SSL/TLS, and/or X.509 certificate authentication for an IPsec tunnel
- **Upload IPsec RSA Public Key**, must be installed on the remote VPN gateway when the **RSA Signature** is the IPsec tunnel authentication method
- **Download IPsec RSA Public Key**, from the remote VPN gateway when **RSA Signature** is the IPsec tunnel authentication method

File Name — The file that you are going to download/upload to/from the IOLAN via TFTP.

Key Type Specify the type of authentication that will be used for the SSH session. The following list details the keys that support each key type.

Data Options:

- ***RSA**—Server SSH Public Key, SSH User Public Key, SSH User Private Key, SSH Host Public Key
- **DSA**—Server SSH Public Key, SSH User Public Key, SSH User Private Key, SSH Host Public Key
- ****RSA1**—SSH User Private Key, SSH Host Public Key

***RSA** is used with SSH-2

****RSA1** is used with SSH-1

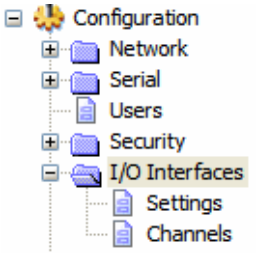
User Name The name of the user for whom you are downloading the **SSH User Public** or **Private Key** to the IOLAN.

Host Name The name of the host for which you are downloading the **SSH Host Public** or **Private Key** to the IOLAN.

IPsec Tunnel Name Select the IPsec tunnel that the RSA public key is being used to authenticate.

10 Configuring I/O Interfaces

Introduction



There is a line of I/O IOLANs that can control/monitor the following types of I/O:

- Analog Input
- Digital Input/Output
- Relay Output
- Temperature Input

Some of the models are I/O combinations and some of the models support one I/O type, although all of the I/O models are extensions of the feature rich, extended temperature SDS IOLAN.

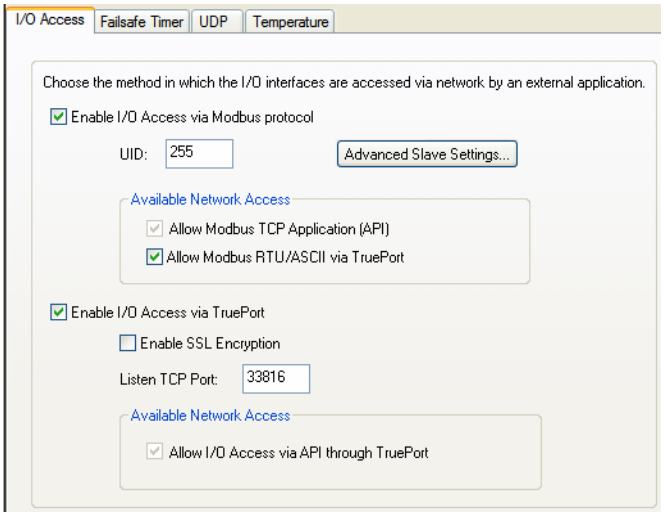
Settings

Overview

The **I/O Interfaces Settings** window configures the parameters that are global to all I/O channels.

I/O Access Functionality

Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

Enable I/O Access to Modbus protocol
Enables/disables Modbus as the communication protocol for all the I/O channels.
Default: Disabled

UID
This is the UID you are assigning to the IOLAN, which is acting as a Modbus slave.
Default: 255

Advanced Modbus Settings Button
Click this button to configure global Modbus Slave settings.
See ***Advanced Slave Modbus Settings*** on page 225 for field descriptions.

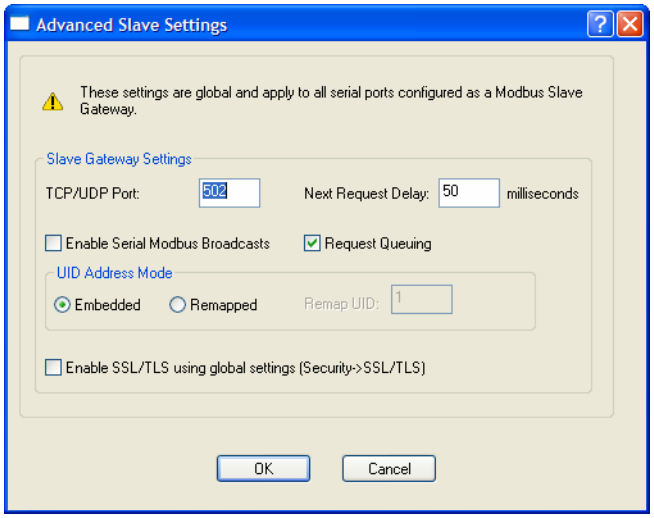
Allow Modbus TCP Application (API)
Allows a host running a Modbus/TCP application to communicate to the I/O channels using the standard Modbus API.
Default: Permanently enabled when **Enable I/O Access via Modbus protocol** is enabled
See ***Modbus I/O Access*** on page 249 for function codes and I/O coil/registration descriptions.

Allow Modbus RTU/ASCII via TruePort
Enables/disables serial Modbus application access to the I/O over the network using the TruePort COM redirector feature.
Default: Disabled
See ***Modbus I/O Access*** on page 249 for function codes and I/O coil/registration descriptions and ***Accessing I/O Data Via TruePort*** on page 256 for the Perle API.

Enable I/O Access via TruePort	Enables/disables serial application access to the I/O over the network using the TruePort COM redirector feature. **Default:** Disabled
Enable SSL Encryption	Enables/disables SSL encryption for the I/O data between the IOLAN and the TruePort host. **Default:** Disabled
Listen TCP Port	The TCP port that the IOLAN will listen to for I/O channel data requests from TruePort. **Default:** 33816
Allow I/O Access via API through TruePort	Allows serial application access to the I/O over the network using the TruePort COM redirector feature via a custom application using the Perle API. **Default:** Permanently enabled when **Enable I/O Access via TruePort** is enabled See ***Modbus I/O Access*** on page 249 for function codes and I/O coil/registration descriptions and ***Accessing I/O Data Via TruePort*** on page 256 for the Perle API.

Advanced Slave Modbus Settings

The parameters in this window configure global Modbus gateway settings that apply to all serial ports configured first as the **Modbus Gateway** profile and then as a **Modbus Slave**.



Configure the following parameters:

TCP/UDP Port	The network port number that the Slave Gateway will listen on for both TCP and UDP messages. **Default:** 502
Next Request Delay	A delay, in milliseconds, to allow serial slave(s) to re-enable receivers before issuing next Modbus Master request. **Range:** 0-1000 **Default:** 50 ms
Enable Serial Modbus Broadcasts	When enabled, a UID of 0 (zero) indicates that the message will be broadcast to all Modbus Slaves. **Default:** Disabled

Request Queuing When enabled, allows multiple, simultaneous messages to be queued and processed in order of reception.

Default: Enabled

Embedded When this option is selected, the address of the slave Modbus device is embedded in the message header.

Default: Enabled

Remapped Used for single device/port operation. Older Modbus devices may not include a UID in their transmission header. When this option is selected, you can specify the UID that will be inserted into the message header for the Modbus slave device. This feature supersedes the Broadcast feature.

Default: Disabled

Remap UID Specify the UID that will be inserted into the message header for the Slave Modbus serial device.

Range: 1-247

Default: 1

Enable SSL/TLS using global settings When enabled, Modbus Slave Gateway messages to remote TCP Modbus Masters are encrypted via SSL/TLS.

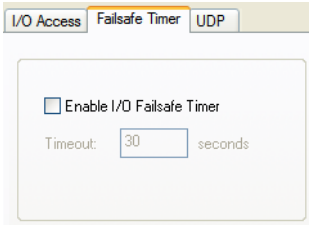
Default: Disabled

Failsafe Timer Functionality

Overview

The **Failsafe Timer** tab configures the I/O failsafe timer. The Failsafe Timer is enabled on a global basis and provides a trigger mechanism that can be configured for each channel when no I/O traffic/management has occurred for the specified amount of time. A Failsafe Action can be configured for each Digital Output channel, each Serial Signal Output channel (DTR and RTS), and each Relay channel to either Activate or Deactivate the output.

Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

Enable I/O Failsafe Timer	Enables/disables the **Failsafe Timer**. This is the global setting that must be enabled to set the **Failsafe Action** on the channel for digital outputs and relays. When this timer expires because of no I/O activity within the specified time interval, the **Failsafe Action** set for the channel determines the action on the output. **Default:** Disabled
Timeout	The number of seconds that must elapse with no I/O activity before the channel **Failsafe Action** is triggered. **Range:** 1-9999 **Default:** 30 seconds

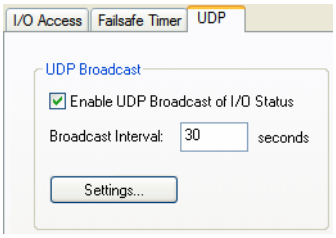
UDP Functionality

Overview

The **UDP** tab configures the I/O UDP broadcast settings. The I/O UDP broadcast feature periodically broadcasts the I/O channel status in a UDP message.

You can configure up to four sets of IP address entries (each entry consisting of a start and end IP address range) to broadcast I/O status data. The data depends on the I/O model (Analog, Digital, Serial Signals) and contains information for all channels.

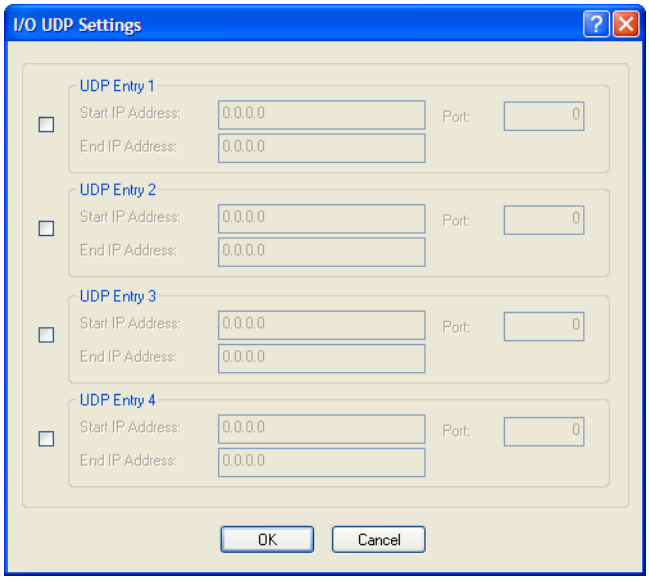
Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

Enable UDP Broadcast of I/O Status	Enables/disables UDP broadcast of I/O channel status (data). **Default:** Disabled
Broadcast Interval	Enter the interval, in seconds, for UDP broadcasts of I/O channel status (data). **Range:** 1-9999 **Default:** 30 seconds
Settings Button	Click this button to configure the UDP IP addresses that will receive the I/O status information. See ***I/O UDP Settings*** on page 229 for field descriptions for the I/O UDP Settings window.

I/O UDP Settings



Configure the following parameters:

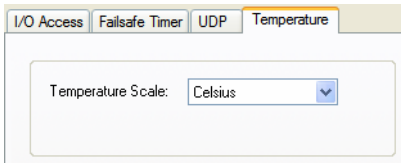
UDP Entry	When enabled, broadcasts I/O status (data) to the specified range of IP addresses. **Default:** Disabled
Start IP Address	The first host IP address in the range of IP addresses (for IPV4 or IPV6) that the IOLAN will listen for messages from and/or send messages to.
End IP Address	The last host IP address in the range of IP addresses (for IPV4, not required for IPV6) that the IOLAN will listen for messages from and/or send messages to.
Port	The UDP port that the IOLAN will use to relay messages to servers/hosts. **Default:** 0 (zero)

Temperature Functionality

Overview

The **Temperature** tab configures the temperature scale settings for T4 models.

Field Descriptions

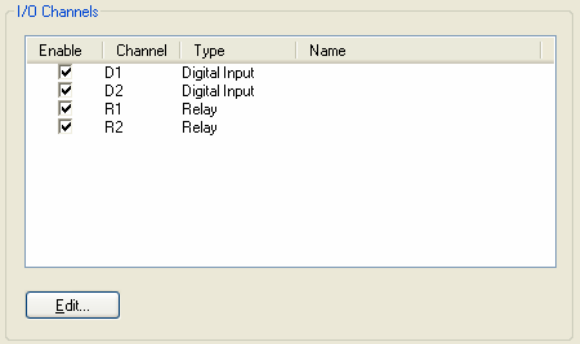


Configure the following parameter:

Temperature Scale	Select the temperature scale that will be used to display temperature data. **Data Options:** Fahrenheit or Celsius **Default:** Celsius

Channels

The **Channels** section displays the I/O Channels window, through which you can enable/disable the I/O channels.



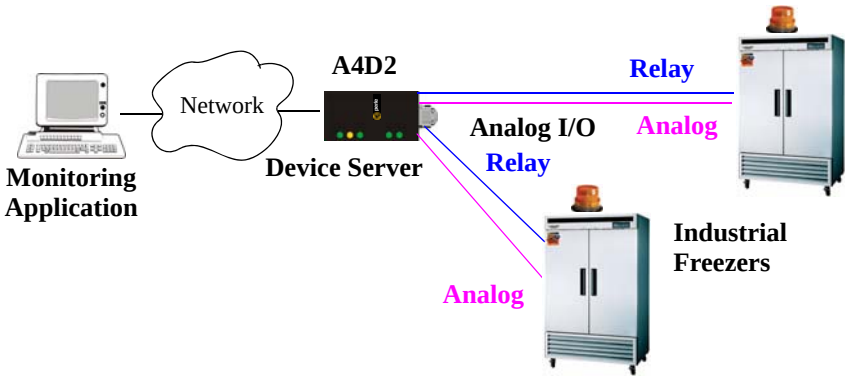
Highlight a channel and then click the **Edit** button to configure the parameters for that channel.

Analog

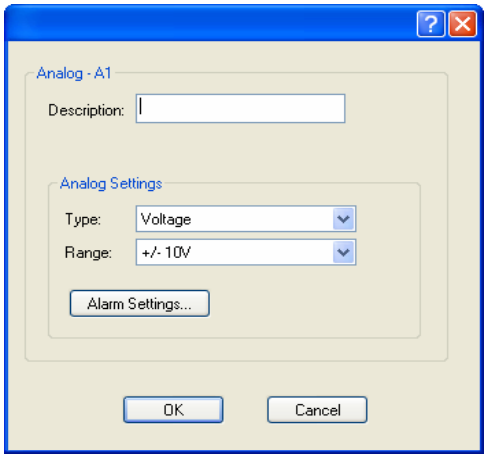
Overview

Analog channels monitor current/voltage input. Note that the internal jumpers must match the software setting (by default, they are set to Current); see Analog Input Module on page 347 to find out how to set the internal jumpers.

For example, in an industrial freezer warehouse, the IOLAN A4R2 is used to monitor humidity transducers, which are in place to help prevent freezer burn. If the humidity reaches a certain percentage (monitored by an Analog channel) a syslog message is sent to the Monitoring Application. The Monitoring Application then sends a command to the IOLAN via the Perle API that causes the Relay channel to activate an internal freezer dehumidifier. The relay is turned off when the Analog channel sends a clear syslog message to the Monitoring Application and the Relay channel is deactivated.



Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

Description
Provide a description of the channel, making it easier to identify.
Data Options: Maximum 20 characters, including spaces

Type
Select the type of input being measured.
Data Options: Current or Voltage
Default: Current

Range
Select the range for the measurement type.
Data Options:
- Current—0-20 mA, 4-20 mA
- Voltage—+/- 10V, +/- 5V, +/- 1V, +/- 500mV, +/- 150mV

Default: Current is 0-20 mA. **Voltage** is +/- 10V.

Alarm Settings Button
Click the **Alarm Settings** button to specify the trigger and clear levels for the alarms. Notice that the **Analog Alarm Settings** window has two alarm configuration views, a basic alarm view and an advanced alarm view.

See ***Alarm Settings*** on page 243 for field descriptions.

Digital Input

Overview

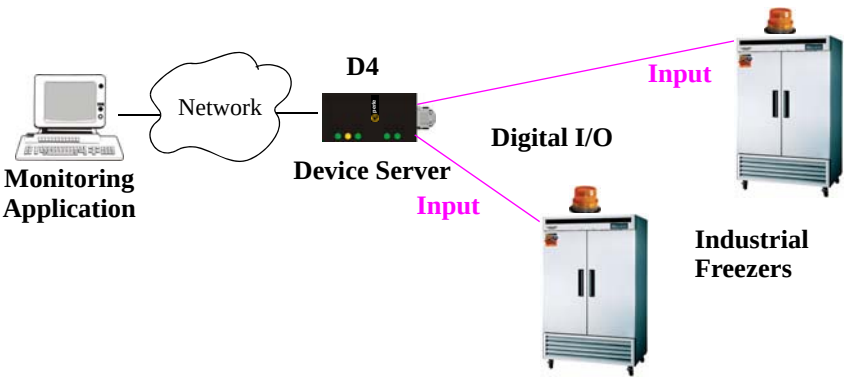
When the channel is set for digital input, it monitors voltage or current. Note that the internal jumpers must match the software setting and must be set to Input, which is the default; see Digital I/O Module on page 346 to find out how to set the internal jumpers.

Functionality

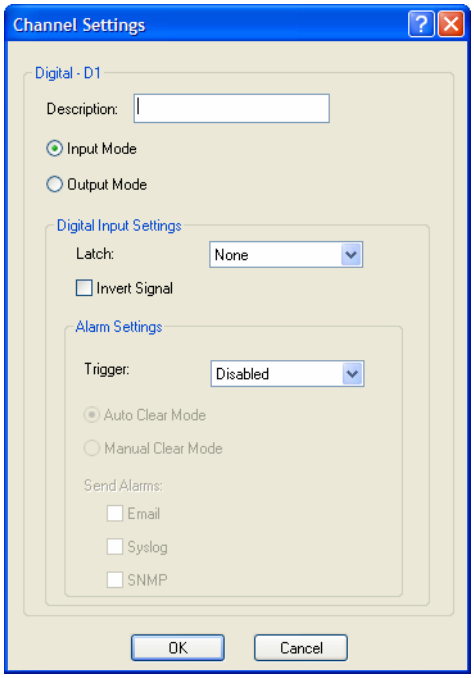
The Digital input channels allow you to configure the following options:

- You can choose to remember the last state change, or latch, that occurred. Your options are to latch (remember) when the state changes from inactive to active or active to inactive.
- You can choose to invert the signal, which is useful if your sensor is wired in such a way that closed is actually inactive, whereas closed is normally considered active.
- You can also configure an alarm trigger and clear mode based on whether the Digital input is active or inactive, sending an email, syslog message, and/or SNMP trap when the alarm is triggered or cleared.

In an industrial freezer warehouse example, a D4 is used to monitor the open door sensor, so that every time a freezer door is opened, an alarm is triggered and a syslog message is sent to syslog, where the monitoring application notes the time.



Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

Description

Provide a description of the channel, making it easier to identify.

Data Options: Maximum 20 characters, including spaces

Input Mode

When selected, the channel will be reading the status of the line (input). The internal jumpers must match the software configuration; the internal jumpers are factory configured for **Input Mode**.

Default: Input Mode

Latch

Latches (remembers) the activity transition (active to inactive or inactive to active).

Data Options: None, Inactive-to-Active, Active-to-Inactive

Default: None

Invert Signal

When enabled, inverts the actual condition of the I/O signal in the status; therefore, an inactive status will be displayed as active.

Default: Disabled

Trigger

When the trigger condition is met, triggers the specified alarm action.

Data Options:

- **Disabled**—No alarm settings. This is the default.
- **Inactive**—When the expected Digital input is active, going inactive will trigger an alarm.
- **Active**—When the expected Digital input is inactive, going active will trigger an alarm.

Default: Disabled

Auto Clear Mode	When enabled, automatically clears the alarm when the trigger condition changes; for example, if the **Trigger** is **Inactive** and the alarm is triggered, once the input becomes active again, the alarm will automatically be cleared **Default:** Enabled
Manual Clear Mode	When enabled, a triggered alarm must be manually cleared. **Default:** Disabled
Email	When enabled, sends an email alert to an email account(s) set up in the **System** settings when an alarm is triggered or cleared. The email alert data includes the severity level and the value that caused the alarm to trigger or clear. The **Email Alert** is associated with **Level Critical**. **Default:** Disabled
Syslog	When enabled, sends a message to syslog when an alarm is triggered or cleared. The syslog entry includes the severity level and the value that caused the alarm to trigger or clear. The syslog message is associated with **Level Critical**. **Default:** Disabled
SNMP	When enabled, sends an SNMP trap when an alarm is triggered or cleared. The trap consists of the severity level and whether the alarm was triggered or cleared. **Default:** Disabled

Digital Output

Overview

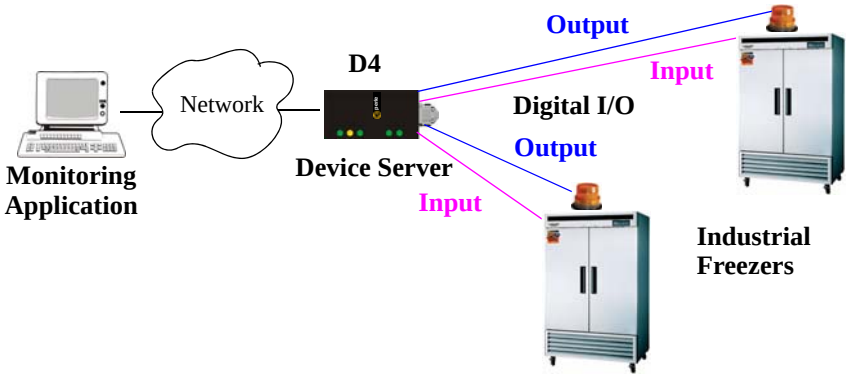
When the channel is set for digital output, either voltage is applied to the channel or the channel is grounded. Note that the internal jumpers must match the software setting and must be set to Output (by default, they are set to Input); see Digital I/O Module on page 346 to find out how to set the internal jumpers.

Functionality

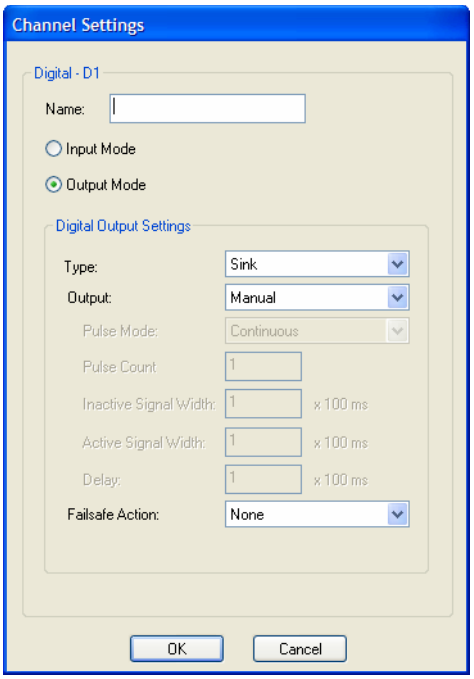
The Digital output channels support three types of Digital output: sink (voltage), source (ground), and sink and source (apply voltage or ground). For the output type, you can configure the following options:

- You can choose to manually activate/deactivate the Digital output.
- You can choose to manually activate/deactivate the Digital output and then specify that the Digital output will either pulse (you get to specify the active and inactive pulse times) continuously or for a specified number of pulse counts.
- You can choose to manually activate/deactivate the Digital output and then specify a delay before the output goes from inactive to active or active to inactive.
- You can also specify a failsafe action that can either activate or inactivate the Digital output when the failsafe timer is triggered (see ***Failsafe Timer Functionality*** on page 227 for more information).

In an industrial freezer warehouse, the IOLAN D4 is used to monitor the freezer doors. When one of the industrial freezer doors are left open for more than five minutes, the Monitoring Application (using the Perle API) starts the Digital output sink, causing the strobe light on top of the offending freezer to activate.



Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

Description

Provide a description of the channel, making it easier to identify.

Data Options: Maximum 20 characters, including spaces

Output Mode

When selected, the channel will drive the line (output). The internal jumpers must match the software configuration, so if you change this setting to **Output Mode**, you will have to also change the internal hardware jumpers.

Default: Disabled

Type

Specify the type of digital output.

Data Options:

- **Sink**—Specifies that the channel will be grounded when active.
- **Source**—Specifies that the channel will provide voltage when active.
- **Sink and Source**—Specifies that channel will be grounded when it is inactive and will provide voltage when it is active.

Default: Sink

Output

Specify how the channel output will be handled.

Data Options:

- **Manual**—You must manually manipulate the channel output.
- **Pulse**—Activates and deactivates the channel output activity in intervals after it is manually activated.
- **Inactive-to-Active Delay**—The channel output will remain inactive for the specified time interval after it is manually started.
- **Active-to-Inactive Delay**—The channel output will go inactive after the specified time interval after it is manually started.

Default: Manual

Pulse Mode

When **Output** is set to **Pulse**, you can specify the manner of the pulse.

Data Options:

- **Continuous**—Continuously pulses active and inactive.
- **Count**—Pulses an active/inactive sequence for the specified number of times.

Default: Continuous

Pulse Count

The channel output will pulse for the specified number of times; each count consists of an active/inactive sequence.

Default: 1

Inactive Signal Width

How long the channel will remain inactive during pulse mode.

Range: 1-9999 x 100 ms

Default: 1 (100 ms)

Active Signal Width

How long the channel will be active during the pulse mode.

Range: 1-9999 x 100 ms

Default: 1 (100 ms)

Delay

How long to delay an active-to-inactive or inactive-to-active setting after it is manually started.

Range: 1-9999 x 100 ms

Default: 1 (100 ms)

Failsafe Action

When there has been no I/O activity within the specified time (set in the **I/O Interfaces**, **Settings** on the **Failsafe Timer** tab) and the **Failsafe Timer** is triggered.

Data Options:

- **None**—The state of the Digital/Relay output remains the same, no change.
- **Activate Output**—Activates the channel.
- **Deactivate Output**—Deactivates the channel.

Default: None

Relay

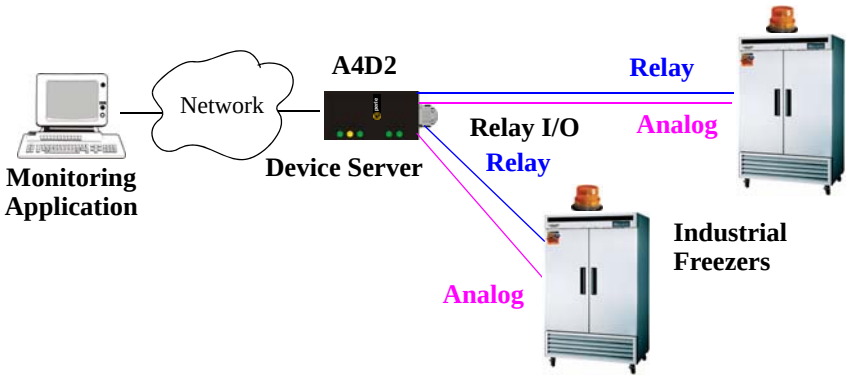
Overview

Relay channels can open or close a contact for a higher voltage circuit using a lower level control voltage. The Relay output channels work as a physical on/off switch, and are used to drive higher voltage devices with a lower controlling voltage.

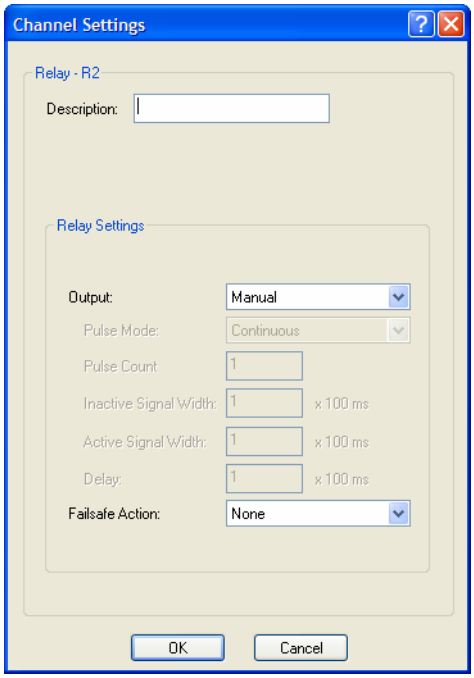
You can configure the following Relay output channel options:

- You can choose to manually activate/deactivate the Relay output.
- You can choose to manually activate/deactivate the Relay output and then specify that the Relay output will either pulse (you get to specify the active and inactive pulse times) continuously or for a specified number of pulse counts.
- You can choose to manually activate/deactivate the Relay output and then specify a delay before the output goes from inactive to active or active to inactive.
- You can also specify a failsafe action that can either active or inactivate the Relay output when the failsafe timer is triggered (see ***Failsafe Timer Functionality*** on page 227 for more information).

In an industrial freezer warehouse, the IOLAN A4R2 is used to monitor humidity transducers, which are used to help prevent freezer burn. If the humidity reaches a certain percentage (monitored by an Analog channel) a syslog message is sent to the Monitoring Application, causing the Relay channel to activate an internal freezer dehumidifier. The Relay channel is deactivated when the Analog channel sends a clear syslog message to the Monitoring Application and the Relay channel is deactivated.



Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

Description

Provide a description of the channel, making it easier to identify.

Data Options: Maximum 20 characters, including spaces

Output

Specify how the channel output will be handled.

Data Options:

- **Manual**—You must manually manipulate the channel output.
- **Pulse**—Activates and deactivates the channel output activity in intervals after it is manually activated.
- **Inactive-to-Active Delay**—The channel output will remain inactive for the specified time interval after it is manually started.
- **Active-to-Inactive Delay**—The channel output will go inactive after the specified time interval after it is manually started.

Default: Manual

Pulse Mode

When **Output** is set to **Pulse**, you can specify the manner of the pulse.

Data Options:

- **Continuous**—Continuously pulses active and inactive.
- **Count**—Pulses an active/inactive sequence for the specified number of times.

Default: Continuous

Pulse Count

The channel output will pulse for the specified number of times; each count consists of an active/inactive sequence.

Default: 1

Inactive Signal Width

How long the channel will remain inactive during pulse mode.

Range: 1-9999 x 100 ms

Default: 1 (100 ms)

Active Signal Width

How long the channel will be active during the pulse mode.

Range: 1-9999 x 100 ms

Default: 1 (100 ms)

Delay

How long to delay an active-to-inactive or inactive-to-active setting after it is manually started.

Range: 1-9999 x 100 ms

Default: 1 (100 ms)

Failsafe Action

When there has been no I/O activity within the specified time (set in the **I/O Interfaces**, **Settings** on the **Failsafe Timer** tab) and the **Failsafe Timer** is triggered.

Data Options:

- **None**—The state of the Digital/Relay output remains the same, no change.
- **Activate Output**—Activates the channel.
- **Deactivate Output**—Deactivates the channel.

Default: None

Temperature

Temperature input channels monitor RTD or thermocouple temperature sensors inputs for the most common ranges. You can also configure severity alarms that can send an email, a syslog message, and/or an SNMP when an alarm is triggered or cleared; See ***Alarm Settings*** on page 243 for more information about the alarms.

RTD ranges are:

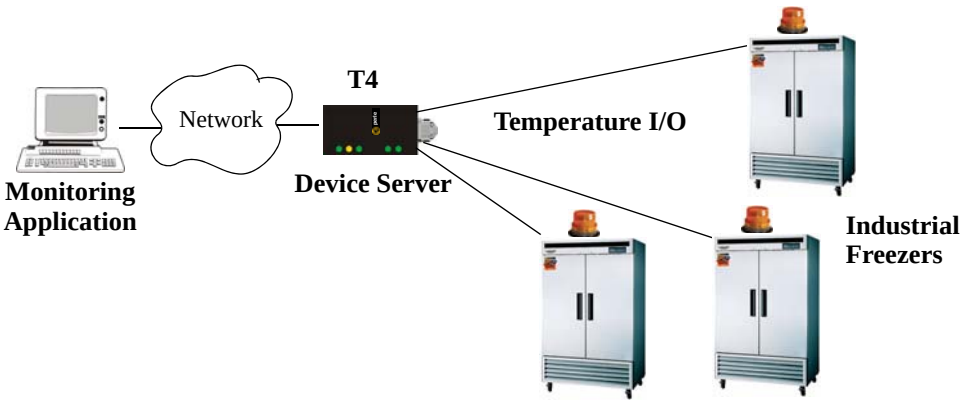
• Pt100 a=385 -50 to 150C	• Pt100 a=392 -50 to 150C	• Pt1000 a=385 -40 to 160C
• Pt100 a=385 0 to 100C	• Pt100 a=392 0 to 100C	• NiFe604 a=518 -80 to 100C
• Pt100 a=385 0 to 200C	• Pt100 a=392 0 to 200C	• NiFe604 a=518 0 to 100C
• Pt100 a=385 0 to 400C	• Pt100 a=392 0 to 400C	
• Pt100 a=385 -200 to 200C	• Pt100 a=392 -200 to 200C	

Note: IEC RTD 100 ohms.=0.00385
JIS RTD 100 ohms.=0.00392

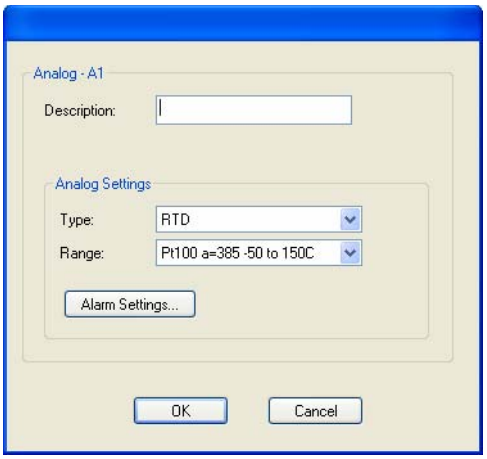
Thermocouple ranges are:

• B 500 to 1800C	• K 0 to 1370C	• T -100 to 400C
• E 0 to 1000C	• R 500 to 1750C	
• J 0 to 760C	• S 500 to 1750C	

The the following example, a Temperature I/O IOLAN is used to monitor industrial freezer as a temperature sensor, with an alarm set to send a syslog message if the temperature rises above 31° C.



Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

Description

Provide a description of the channel, making it easier to identify.

Data Options: Maximum 20 characters, including spaces

Type

Specify the type of sensor you are using to measure temperature.

Data Options: RTD, Thermocouple

Default: RTD

Range

Specify the temperature range that you want to measure.

Data Options:

- **RTD**—Pt100 a=385 -50 to 150C, Pt100 a=385 0 to 100C, Pt100 a=385 0 to 200C, Pt100 a=385 0 to 400C, Pt100 a=385 -200 to 200C, Pt100 a=392 -50 to 150C, Pt100 a=392 0 to 100C, Pt100 a=392 0 to 200C, Pt100 a=392 0 to 400C, Pt100 a=392 -200 to 200C, Pt1000 a=385 -40 to 160C, NiFe604 a=518 -80 to 100C, NiFe604 a=518 0 to 100C
- **Thermocouple**—B 500 to 1800C, E 0 to 1000C, J 0 to 760C, K 0 to 1370C, R 500 to 1750C, S 500 to 1750C, T -100 to 400C

Default: RTD is Pt100 a=385 -50 to 150C. Thermocouple is J 0 to 760C.

Alarm Settings Button

Click the **Alarm Settings** button to specify the trigger and clear levels for the alarms. Notice that the **Analog Alarm Settings** window has two alarm configuration views, a basic alarm view and an advanced alarm view.

See ***Alarm Settings*** on page 243 for field descriptions.

Alarm Settings

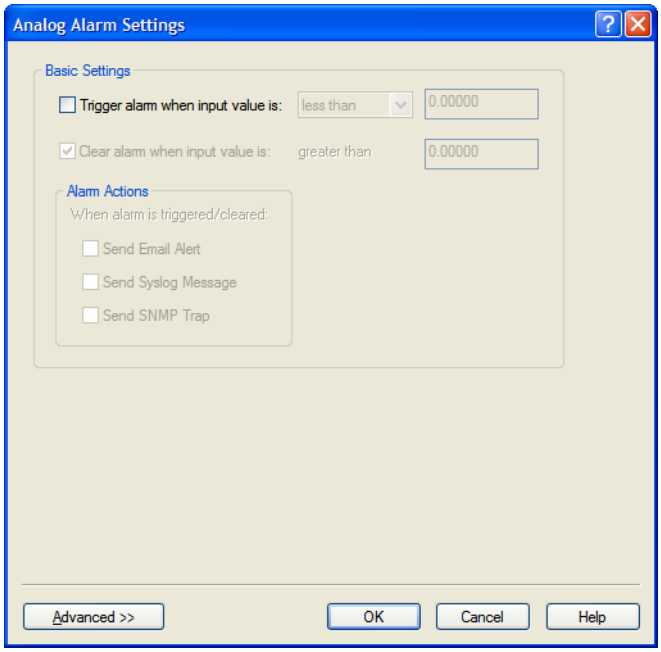
Analog and Temperature input models support an Alarm mechanism in which you can specify up to five severity levels of alarm triggers and clear levels; the alarm triggers/clear levels can activate in either increasing or decreasing severity levels.

Each time an alarm is triggered or cleared, you can specify any combination of the following to be initiated:

- An SNMP trap
- An email message
- A message to syslog

Basic Analog Alarm Settings

The basic Analog Alarm Settings window allows you to configure one severity alarm, whereas the advanced window allows you to configure up to five severity alarm levels.



Configure the following parameters:

Trigger alarm when input value is	Specify the value that will trigger an alarm, the measurement is based on the **Type** and **Range** that you specify. This value must not fall within the scope of the value used to clear an alarm.
Clear alarm when input value is	Specify that value that will clear an alarm, the measurement is based on the **Type** and **Range** that you specify. This value must not fall within the scope of the value used to trigger an alarm.
Send Email Alert	When enabled, sends an email alert to an email account(s) set up in the System settings when an alarm is triggered or cleared. The email alert data includes the severity level and the value that caused the alarm to trigger or clear. The Email Alert is associated with **Level Critical**. **Default:** Disabled

Send Syslog Alert When enabled, sends a message to syslog when an alarm is triggered or cleared. The syslog entry includes the severity level and the value that caused the alarm to trigger or clear. The syslog message is associated with **Level Critical**.

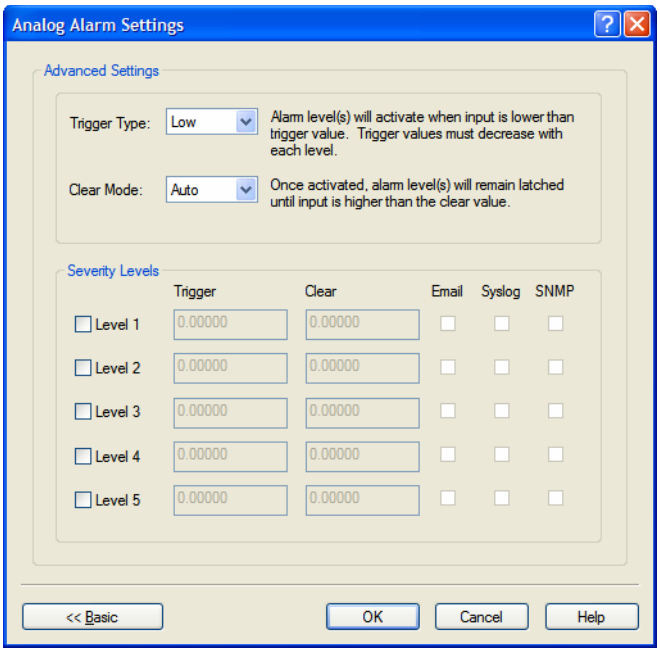
Default: Disabled

Send SNMP Alert When enabled, sends an SNMP trap when an alarm is triggered or cleared. The trap consists of the severity level and whether the alarm was triggered or cleared.

Default: Disabled

Advanced Analog Alarm Settings

The advanced Analog Alarm Settings window expands the basic alarm settings options to up to five severity levels.



Configure the following parameters:

Trigger Type If the **Trigger Type** is **Low**, an alarm is triggered when the input drops below the specified **Trigger** value; other severity level trigger values must decrease in value with each subsequent level. If the **Trigger Type** is **High**, an alarm is triggered when the input is higher than the specified **Trigger** value; other severity level trigger values must increase in value with each subsequent level.

Clear Mode To clear an alarm, the input must drop below the specified value when **Trigger Type** is **High** or go above the specified value when **Trigger Type** is **Low**.

Level 1-5 Defines the Level severity settings for up to five levels. If the **Trigger Type** is **Low**, an alarm is triggered when the input drops below the specified **Trigger** value; other severity level trigger values must decrease in value with each subsequent level. If the **Trigger Type** is **High**, an alarm is triggered when the input is higher than the specified **Trigger** value; other severity level trigger values must increase in value with each subsequent level.

Trigger If the **Trigger Type** is **Low**, an alarm is triggered when the input drops below the specified **Trigger** value; other severity level trigger values must decrease in value with each subsequent level. If the **Trigger Type** is **High**, an alarm is triggered when the input is higher than the specified **Trigger** value; other severity level trigger values must increase in value with each subsequent level.

Clear To clear an alarm, the input must drop below the specified value when **Trigger Type** is **High** or go above the specified value when **Trigger Type** is **Low**.

Email When enabled, sends an email alert to an email account(s) set up in the System settings when an alarm is triggered or cleared. The email alert data includes the severity level and the value that caused the alarm to trigger or clear. The Email Alert is associated with **Level Critical**.

Default: Disabled

Syslog When enabled, sends a message to syslog when an alarm is triggered or cleared. The syslog entry includes the severity level and the value that caused the alarm to trigger or clear. The syslog message is associated with **Level Critical**.

Default: Disabled

SNMP When enabled, sends an SNMP trap when an alarm is triggered or cleared. The trap consists of the severity level and whether the alarm was triggered or cleared.

Default: Disabled

I/O UDP

The I/O UDP broadcast feature periodically broadcasts the I/O channel status in a UDP message.

You can configure up to four sets of IP address entries (each entry consisting of a start and end IP address range) to broadcast I/O status data. The data depends on the I/O model (Analog, Digital, Serial Pin Signals) and contains information for all channels.

UDP Unicast Format

In order to interpret the UDP unicast data, you must use the following tables to decipher the appropriate data. If your model does not support a data format (for example, digital data) or you do not have any channels configured for a data format, it will be included in UDP broadcast package, with a Total Length of 0 (zero) and no data following.

Version	Total Length	Analog Data	Digital Data	Serial Signal Data

Each section, with the exceptions of the Version and Total Length sections, is comprised of its own subset of bytes.

Analog Data

Each Analog channel is comprised of the following data fields (big Endian format):

Total Length	***Data Exists**	**Data**					
2 Bytes	1 Byte (in bits)	curRawValue 2 Bytes	minRawValue 2 Bytes	maxRawValue 2 Bytes	curEngValue 4 Bytes	minEngValue 4 Bytes	maxEngValue 4 Bytes

The following section describes the values in the Analog Data field:

- **curRawValue**—The current raw value received from the Analog to Digital converter.
- **minRawValue**—The minimum value received from the Analog to Digital converter until it is cleared.
- **maxRawValue**—The maximum value received from the Analog to Digital converter until it is cleared.
- **curEngValue**—The current converted value (voltage/current for Analog or Celsius/Fahrenheit for Temperature).
- **minEngValue**—The minimum converted value (voltage/current for Analog or Celsius/Fahrenheit for Temperature) until it is cleared.
- **maxEngValue**—The maximum converted value (voltage/current for Analog or Celsius/Fahrenheit for Temperature) until it is cleared.

Digital/Relay Data

The digital data is in bit format, 1 meaning On and 0 (zero) meaning Off. Each channel has its own bit, in least significant bit order.

Length	***Data Exists**	**Data** (1 Byte, one bit for each channel)							
2 Bytes	1 Byte (in bits)					Channel4	Channel3	Channel 2	Channel 1

Serial Pin Signal Data

The serial data is in bit format, 1 meaning On and 0 (zero) meaning Off. Each channel has its own bit, in the following order.

Length	***Data Exists**	**Data** (1 Byte for each port, one bit for each signal)							
2 Bytes	1 Byte (in bits)				RTS	DTR	CTS	DCD	DSR

***Data Exits Field**

The Data Exists field is 1 byte in least significant bit order, for each channel. If data exists for a channel, the bit will be 1, if no data exists for a channel (it is not configured), the bit will be 0 (zero).

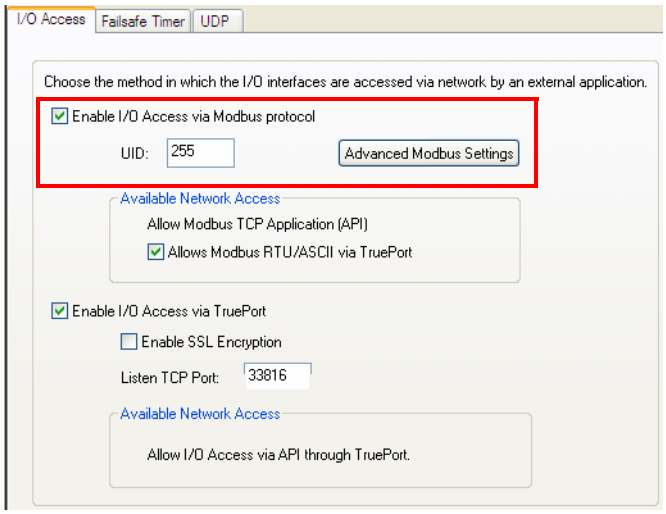
Data Exists(1 Byte, one bit for each channel)							
				Channel4	Channel3	Channel 2	Channel 1

UDP Unicast Example

For an example of the I/O UDP unicast, see the sample program, **`ioudpbcast.c`**, found on your CD-ROM.

I/O Modbus Slave

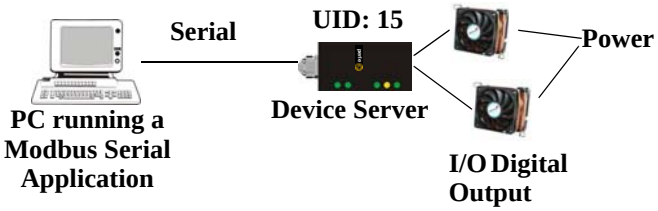
If you have a Modbus serial or TCP application, it can access I/O connected to the IOLAN when the I/O Global Modbus Slave is enabled. You must supply a unique UID for the IOLAN, as it will act as a Modbus Slave.



There are three ways your Modbus Application can connect to the IOLAN to access I/O.

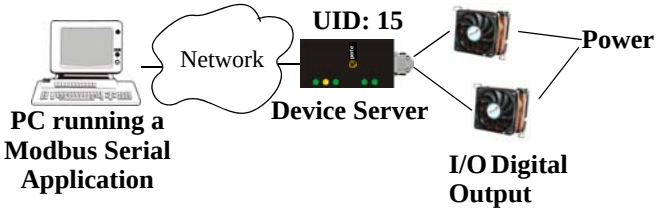
Modbus Serial Application Connected to the Serial Port

Your Modbus serial application can be connected right to the IOLAN serial port to access I/O.



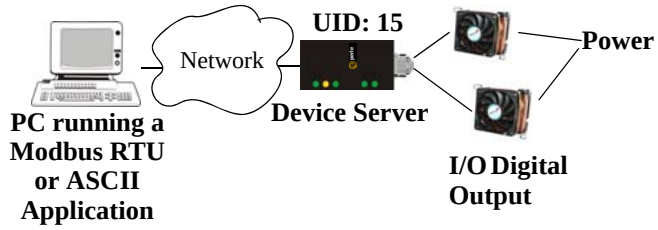
Modbus Serial Application Connected to the Network

If you want to access the I/O from a LAN connection, you can install TruePort on the PC running the Modbus serial application as described in ***TruePort I/O*** on page 254 and connect to the IOLAN over the network.



Modbus TCP Application

If you have a Modbus RTU or Modbus ASCII program, you can access the I/O by connecting to the IOLAN over the network.



Modbus I/O Access

The section defines the function codes and registers you will need to access the I/O through Modbus TCP, Modbus serial, or Modbus serial/TruePort.

Function Codes

The following function codes are supported by the IOLAN:

- 01 read coils
- 03 read multiple holding registers
- 04 read input registers
- 05 write coil
- 06 write single register
- 08 diagnostics (echo the request)
- 15 force multiple coils
- 16 write multiple registers

There are four Modbus data models:

Discrete Input	Not used
Coils	Digital Input (DI), Alarm state for DI, Digital Output (DO). All coils are Boolean values and are 1 byte.
Input Registers (IR)	Analog Input (AI), Alarm state for AI. All Input Registers are 2 bytes long.
Holding Registers	Status (R), Control value (R/W or W). Holding Registers with _ENG registers are 4 bytes long, all other Holding Registers are 2 bytes long.

All coil/register values are in decimal.

I/O Coil/Register Descriptions

This section contains descriptions of I/O coils:

- **MB_REG_DI_SENSOR**—Status of Digital input. 1 is Active, 0 is Inactive. If **Invert Signal** is configured **on**, 0 is Active, 1 is Inactive. If input is **Latched**, returns latched status.
- **MB_REG_DI_SENSOR_ALARM_STATE**—Indication if input is in alarm state. 1 is In Alarm state, 0 is Not in Alarm state. A write of any value clears the alarm state.
- **MB_REG_DO_SENSOR**—Status of Digital output. 1 is Active, 0 is Inactive. If **Invert Signal** is configured **on**, 0 is Active, 1 is Inactive.

This section contains descriptions of I/O holding registers:

- **MB_REG_HR_DI_SENSOR_LATCH**—The latch status of the Digital input. 1 is Latched, 0 is Not latched. A write of any value will clear the latch.
- **MB_REG_HR_DO_SENSOR_PULSE_ISW**—Inactive Signal Width. This is how long the channel will remain inactive during pulse mode in increments of 100ms. Valid values are 1-9999. The default is 1 (100 ms).
- **MB_REG_HR_DO_SENSOR_PULSE_ASW**—Active Signal Width. This is how long the channel will be active during the pulse mode in increments of 100ms. Valid values are 1-9999. The default is 1 (100 ms).
- **MB_REG_HR_DO_SENSOR_PULSE_COUNT**—The number of times the channel output will pulse. Each count consists of an active/inactive sequence. The default is 1 cycle.

- **MB_REG_HR_AI_CLEAR_ALARM_LATCH**—Used to reset a latched alarm state. A write of any value will clear the alarm latch for the specific Analog input.
- **MB_REG_HR_AI_CLEAR_MAX**—Used to reset the Analog input maximum value reached. A write of any value will reset the maximum.
- **MB_REG_HR_AI_CLEAR_MIN**—Used to reset the Analog input minimum value reached. A write of any value will reset the minimum.

This section contains descriptions of I/O input registers:

- **MB_REG_IR_CURR_ENG**—The current value of an Analog or Temperature input converted to appropriate units. For Analog, this will be in voltage or current, depending on the configuration. For the Temperature, this value will be in Celsius or Fahrenheit, depending on configuration.
- **MB_REG_IR_MIN_ENG**—The minimum converted value ever reached on this input since the IOLAN was re-started or a manual clear was issued.
- **MB_REG_IR_MAX_ENG**—The maximum converted value ever reached on this input since the IOLAN was re-started or a manual clear was issued.
- **MB_REG_IR_CURR_RAW**—The current raw value received from the Analog to Digital converter. This is a hexadecimal value in the range of 0 -0xFFFF.
- **MB_REG_IR_MIN_RAW**—The minimum raw value ever reached on this input since the IOLAN was re-started or a manual clear was issued.
- **MB_REG_IR_MAX_RAW**—The maximum converted value ever reached on this input since the IOLAN was re-started or a manual clear was issued.
- **MB_REG_IR_ALARM_LEVEL**—This gives the current alarm severity level for the corresponding Analog input. Severity levels range from 0 (not in alarm) to 5 (highest alarm severity).

Serial Port Coil/Register Descriptions

This section contains descriptions of serial port coils:

- **MB_REG_DI_DSR**—The status of the DSR input signal. 1 is Active, 0 is Inactive. If **Invert Signal** is configured **on**, 0 is Active, 1 is Inactive. If input is **Latched**, returns latched status.
- **MB_REG_DI_DSR_ALARM_STATE**—The alarm state of DSR input signal. 1 is In Alarm state, 0 is Not in Alarm state. A write of any value clears the alarm state.
- **MB_REG_DI_DCD**—The status of DCD line. 1 is Active, 0 is Inactive. If **Invert Signal** is configured **on**, 0 is Active, 1 is Inactive.
- **MB_REG_DI_DCD_ALARM_STATE**—The alarm state of DCD input signal. 1 is in Alarm state, 0 is Not in Alarm state. A write of any value clears the alarm state.
- **MB_REG_DI_CTS**—The status of CTS input signal. 1 is Active, 0 is Inactive. If **Invert Signal** is configured **on**, 0 is Active, 1 is Inactive.
- **MB_REG_DI_CTS_ALARM_STATE**—The alarm state of CTS input signal. 1 is Alarm, 0 is Not in Alarm. A write of any value clears the alarm state.
- **MB_REG_DO_DTR**—The status of DTR output signal. 1 is Active, 0 is Inactive.
- **MB_REG_DO_RTS**—The status of RTS output signal. 1 is Active, 0 is Inactive.

This section contains descriptions of serial port holding registers:

- **MB_REG_HR_DI_DSR_LATCH**—The latched status for the DSR signal. 1 is Latched, 0 is Not Latched. A write any value will clear the latch.
- **MB_REG_HR_DI_DCD_LATCH**—The latched status for the DCD signal. 1 is Latched, 0 is Not Latched. A write any value will clear the latch.
- **MB_REG_HR_DI_CTS_LATCH**—The latched status for the CTS signal. 1 is Latched, 0 is Not Latched. A write any value will clear the latch.

A4/T4 Registers

The following registers are supported by the IOLAN A4 and T4 Input models:

	Data Model	A1/T1	A2/T2	A3/T3	A4/T4	R/W
Holding Registers:						
	MB_REG_HR_AI_CLEAR_ALARM_LATCH	2049	2050	2051	2052	W
	MB_REG_HR_AI_CLEAR_MAX	2113	2114	2115	2116	W
	MB_REG_HR_AI_CLEAR_MIN	2177	2178	2179	2180	W
Input Registers:						
	MB_REG_IR_CURR_ENG	2080	2112	2144	2176	R
	MB_REG_IR_MIN_ENG	2082	2114	2146	2178	R
	MB_REG_IR_MAX_ENG	2084	2116	2148	2180	R
	MB_REG_IR_CURR_RAW	2086	2118	2150	2182	R
	MB_REG_IR_MIN_RAW	2087	2119	2151	2183	R
	MB_REG_IR_MAX_RAW	2088	2120	2152	2184	R
	MB_REG_IR_ALARM_LEVEL	2089	2121	2153	2185	R

A4D2/A4R2 Registers

The following coils and registers are supported by the IOLAN A4D2 and A4R2 I/O models:

	Data Model	A1	A2	A3	A4	D1/R1	D2/R2	R/W
Coils:								
	MB_REG_DI_SENSOR	-----	-----	-----	-----	6149	6150	R
*	MB_REG_DI_SENSOR_ALARM_STATE	-----	-----	-----	-----	6213	6214	R/W
	MB_REG_DO_SENSOR	-----	-----	-----	-----	6661	6662	R/W
Holding Registers:								
	MB_REG_HR_DI_SENSOR_LATCH	-----	-----	-----	-----	6149	6150	R/W
	MB_REG_HR_DO_SENSOR_PULSE_ISW	-----	-----	-----	-----	6213	6214	R/W
	MB_REG_HR_DO_SENSOR_PULSE_ASW	-----	-----	-----	-----	6277	6278	R/W
	MB_REG_HR_DO_SENSOR_PULSE_COUNT	-----	-----	-----	-----	6341	6342	R/W
	MB_REG_HR_AI_CLEAR_ALARM_LATCH	2049	2050	2051	2052	-----	-----	W
	MB_REG_HR_AI_CLEAR_MAX	2113	2114	2115	2116	-----	-----	W
	MB_REG_HR_AI_CLEAR_MIN	2177	2178	2179	2180	-----	-----	W
Input Registers:								
	MB_REG_IR_CURR_ENG	2080	2112	2144	2176	-----	-----	R
	MB_REG_IR_MIN_ENG	2082	2114	2146	2178	-----	-----	R
	MB_REG_IR_MAX_ENG	2084	2116	2148	2180	-----	-----	R
	MB_REG_IR_CURR_RAW	2086	2118	2150	2182	-----	-----	R
	MB_REG_IR_MIN_RAW	2087	2119	2151	2183	-----	-----	R
	MB_REG_IR_MAX_RAW	2088	2120	2152	2184	-----	-----	R
	MB_REG_IR_ALARM_LEVEL	2089	2121	2153	2185	-----	-----	R

*For DI alarm state, read will get state, write will clear alarm.

D4/D2R2 Registers

The following coils and registers are supported by the IOLAN D4 and D2R2 I/O models:

	Data Model	D1	D2	D3/R1	D4/R2	R/W
Coils:						
	MB_REG_DI_SENSOR	6145	6146	6147	6148	R
*	MB_REG_DI_SENSOR_ALARM_STATE	6209	6210	6211	6212	R/W
	MB_REG_DO_SENSOR	6657	6658	6659	6660	R/W
Holding Registers:						
	MB_REG_HR_DI_SENSOR_LATCH	6145	6146	6147	6148	R/W
	MB_REG_HR_DO_SENSOR_PULSE_ISW	6209	6210	6211	6212	R/W
	MB_REG_HR_DO_SENSOR_PULSE_ASW	6273	6274	6275	6276	R/W
	MB_REG_HR_DO_SENSOR_PULSE_COUNT	6337	6338	6339	6340	R/W

*For DI alarm state, read will get state, write will clear alarm.

Serial Pin Signals

The following coils and registers are supported by the IOLAN I/O models:

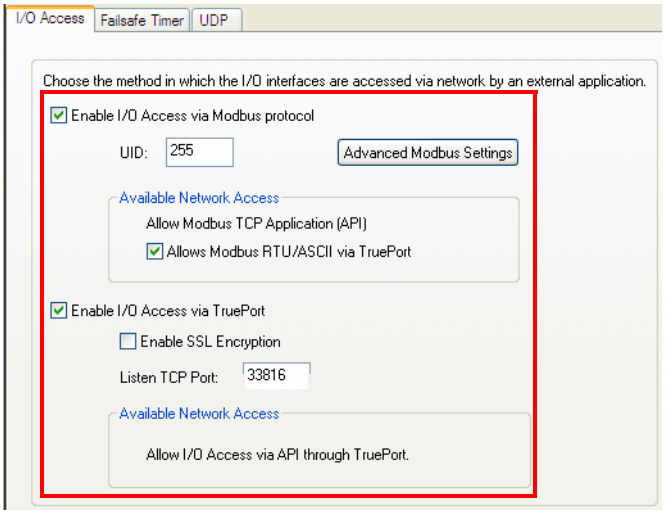
	Data Model	Pin	R/W
Coils:			
	MB_REG_DI_DSR	4225	R
	MB_REG_DI_DSR_ALARM_STATE	4289	R/W
	MB_REG_DI_DCD	4353	R
	MB_REG_DI_DCD_ALARM_STATE	4417	R/W
	MB_REG_DI_CTS	4481	R
	MB_REG_DI_CTS_ALARM_STATE	4545	R/W
	MB_REG_DO_DTR	4673	R/W
	MB_REG_DO_RTS	4737	R/W
Holding Registers:			
	MB_REG_HR_DI_DSR_LATCH	4097	R/W
	MB_REG_HR_DI_DCD_LATCH	4609	R/W
	MB_REG_HR_DI_CTS_LATCH	5121	R/W

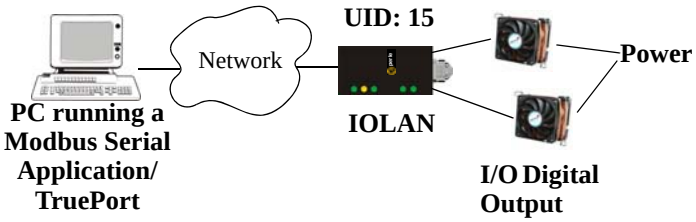
TruePort I/O

You can see a sample API I/O over TruePort program called **`ioapiotp`**.c on the CD-ROM.

TruePort/Modbus Combination

If you have a Modbus serial application running on a PC that is connected to a network, you can use TruePort as a virtual serial connection to communicate with the IOLAN over the network to access I/O data. You also have the option of enabling SSL as a security option to encrypt the data that is communicated between the IOLAN and the host machine (SSL/TLS must be configured in the Server settings and on the TruePort host).

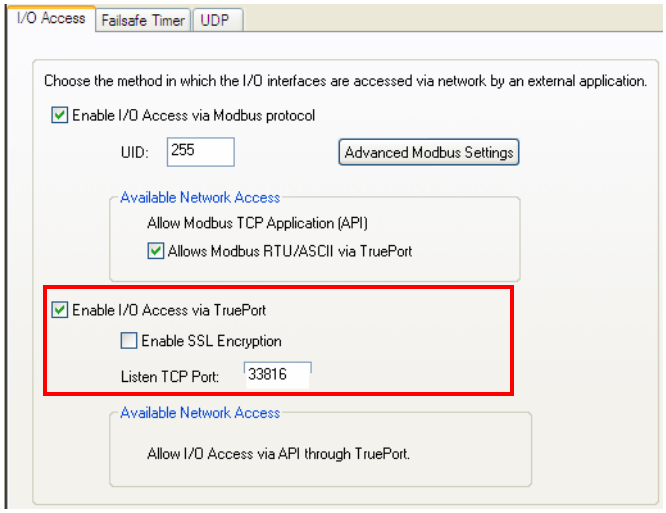


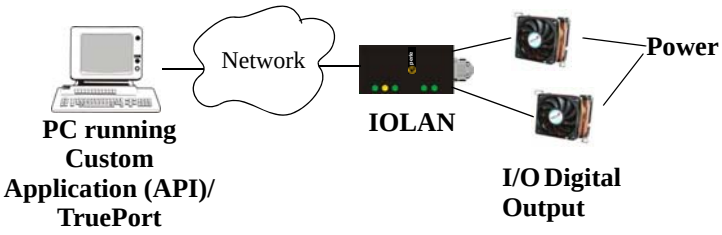


The host running TruePort must be in Modbus/ASCII or Modbus/RTU mode.

API Over TruePort Only

If you have a custom application that talks to a serial port, you can use TruePort as a virtual serial port to communicate with the IOLAN over the network to access I/O data using the Perle API. You also have the option of enabling SSL as a security option to encrypt the data that is communicated between the IOLAN and the host machine (SSL/TLS must be configured in the Server settings and on the TruePort host). See ***Accessing I/O Data Via TruePort*** on page 256 for more information on the API.)





The host running TruePort must be in I/O API mode.

Accessing I/O Data Via TruePort

Introduction

Analog and Digital I/O data, as well as output control, can be accessed in several ways. To have access from an application running on a workstation or server, the I/O Applications Program Interface (API) provided within Trueport can be used. This API uses a command/response format to get or set data on each individual I/O channel register. A sample program (**`ioapiotp.c`**) demonstrating typical usage can be found on the IOLAN product CD-ROM.

Setup

After TruePort has been properly installed and configured on the workstation or server and initiated from the application, it will setup a connection to the appropriate IOLAN. It will then be available to relay commands to the IOLAN and communicate responses back the application. TruePort will create a COM port to which the application can write commands to and read responses from. Since all communications are done via this COM port, the application need only use standard serial communication interface calls.

The following steps should be taken:

1. Install the Trueport software on the server or workstation on which the application will be running.
2. Configure the virtual communication port (COM) (see *Trueport User Guide* for details).
3. Run the application. Typically the application will:
    1. Open the COM port.
    2. Send Commands to the COM port using standard write commands.
    3. Read Responses from the COM port using standard read commands.

    Note: All commands are forwarded to the IOLAN over the network where the specific I/O channel registers are modified or read, and then responses are sent back to TruePort where they will be made available to be read from the COM port.

    4. Once the desired operations are completed, the COM port can be closed.

Format of API Commands

There are two groups of commands:

- **Get Commands**—Retrieve values of the I/O channel registers
- **Set Commands**—Set values on the I/O channel registers.

Note: All commands need to be written to the COM port as a single write.

I/O Channel registers are all assigned unique addresses, which need to be referenced in all of the commands. Please refer to the documentation specific you the applicable mode, for the list and addresses of all the registers.

Model	Go to...
A4	***A4/T4 Registers* on page 251**
T4	***A4/T4 Registers* on page 251**
A4D2	***A4D2/A4R2 Registers* on page 252**
A4R2	***A4D2/A4R2 Registers* on page 252**
D4	***D4/D2R2 Registers* on page 253**
D2/R2	***D4/D2R2 Registers* on page 253**

Get Commands

The following tables show the general structure to be used for Get commands.

Note: Numeric values provided in the API documentation are in Hexadecimal (Hex) format.

Command Format

Byte(s)	# of Bytes	Value
1	1	Command Code: • 0x01 – Get “coils” (Boolean register) • 0x03 – Get “holding registers” (R/W registers) • 0x04 – Get “input registers” (R only register)
2-3	2	Starting register number (see ***A4/T4 Registers* on page 251**, ***A4D2/A4R2 Registers* on page 252**, or ***D4/D2R2 Registers* on page 253** for this value).
4-5	2	Number of registers to read. If this value is greater than 1, the response will contain the values of multiple consecutive registers.

Response Format

Byte(s)	# of Bytes	Value
1	1	Command that this is a response to. If an error has been detected, the command value will have the high bit set (OR with 0x80). For example: The command is 0x04, so the command field in the response would be 0x84.
2	1	Length of data (in bytes) starting in next byte.
3-n	n	Requested register values.

Example 1: Read the status of the first digital input (DI1) on a D2R2 unit.

DI1 sensor is a coil register with the decimal value of 6145 (hex 0x1801).

Request: 0x01 0x18 0x01 0x00 0x01

Response: 0x01 0x01 0x**01** (Digital input 1 is active)

Example 2: Read the values for the Inactive Signal Width, Active Signal Width, and Pulse count for the second digital output (DO2) on a D4 unit.

DO2, Inactive Signal Width is a holding register with the decimal value of 6210 (hex 0x1842).

Request: 0x03 0x18 0x42 0x00 0x03

Response: 0x03 0x06 0x00 0x0A 0x00 0x11 0x00 0x0F
(Inactive =10*100ms, Active= 17*100ms, and Pulse count = 15)

Example 3: Read the raw current, minimum and maximum values of the third Analog input (A3) on an A4D2 unit.

A3 current raw value is an input register with the decimal value of 2150 (hex 0x0866).

Request: 0x04 0x08 0x86 0x00 0x03

Response: 0x04 0x06 0x10 0x03 0x0F 0x30 0x10 0x20
(Current = 0x1003, Minimum = 0x0F30, and Maximum = 0x1020)

Set Commands

The following tables show the general structure to be used for set commands.

Note: Numeric values provided in the API documentation are in Hexadecimal (Hex) format.

Command Format

Byte(s)	# of Bytes	Value
1	1	Command Code (in hex): • 0x0F – Set “Boolean registers” (R/W coils) • 0x10 – Set “holding registers” (read/write registers)
2-3	2	Starting register number (see ***A4/T4 Registers*** on page 251, ***A4D2/A4R2 Registers*** on page 252, or ***D4/D2R2 Registers*** on page 253 for this value).
4-5	2	Number of registers to set. If this value is greater than 1, the response will contain the values of multiple consecutive registers.
6	1	The length of the data (in bytes) to be written to the registers.
7-n	n	Data to be written to the registers. If accessing registers which are 2 or 4 bytes, the data is in Network order (Big endian) format (that is, MSB, LSB). For Boolean registers, the value field will be a bit field with the LSBit corresponding to the IO channel referenced by the starting register.

Successful Response Format

Byte(s)	# of Bytes	Value
1	1	Command code (from request).
2	2	Starting register number (see ***A4/T4 Registers*** on page 251, ***A4D2/A4R2 Registers*** on page 252, or ***D4/D2R2 Registers*** on page 253 for this value) from request.
4	2	Number of registers written.

Unsuccessful Response Format

Byte(s)	# of Bytes	Value
1	1	Command that this is a response to. If an error has been detected, the command value will have the high bit set (OR with 0x80). For example: The Command is 0x10, so the command field in the response would be 0x90.
1	1	Error code, see ***Error Codes*** on page 260.

Example 1: Turn on the first relay on a D2R2 unit.

The first relay (R1) is a digital out coil register with a decimal value of 6659 (hex 0x1A03).

Request: 0x0F 0x1A 0x03 0x00 0x01 0x01 0x01

Response: 0x0F 0x1A 0x03 0x00 0x01

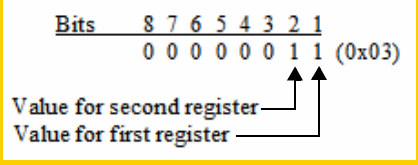
Example 2: Turn on the first and second relay on a D2R2 unit.

The first relay (R1) is a digital out coil register with a decimal value of 6659 (hex 0x1A03).

Request: 0x0F 0x1A 0x03 0x00 0x02 0x01 0x03 (03 = “00000011” which sets R1 and R2 to 1)

Response: 0x0F 0x1A 0x03 0x00 0x02

Note: When reading or writing consecutive “Boolean” (coils) registers, the values of the registers are combined into a single byte as shown by the example above. Two registers (coils) are being written but the length of the data is 1 byte. The one byte contains the value for both registers as follows:



Error Codes

Code	Name	Description
01	Illegal Function	The function code received in the query is not an allowable action for the server (or slave).
02	Illegal Data Address	The data address received in the query is not an allowable address for the server (or slave).
03	Illegal Data Value	A value contained in the query data field is not an allowable value for server (or slave).
04	Slave Device Failure	An unrecoverable error occurred while the server (or slave) was attempting to perform the requested action.

I/O SNMP Traps

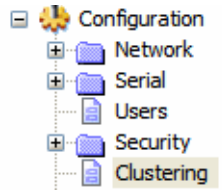
When you enable SNMP traps for Digital and Analog inputs, a value is returned when an alarm triggers or clears. This section decodes the SNMP specific trap numbers. The value returned from the trap will be the I/O channel number that is generating the trap.

Specific Trap #	Alarm	Description
0	IO_DI_ALARM_SENSOR	Trap for the Digital input Trigger.
1	IO_DI_ALARM_SERIAL_DSR	Trap for the Digital input DSR serial pin Trigger.
2	IO_DI_ALARM_SERIAL_DCD	Trap for the Digital input DCD serial pin Trigger.
3	IO_DI_ALARM_SERIAL_CTS	Trap for the Digital input CTS serial pin Trigger.
4	IO_AI_ALARM_LEVEL1	Trap for Analog input Alarm Level 1.
5	IO_AI_ALARM_LEVEL2	Trap for Analog input Alarm Level 2.
6	IO_AI_ALARM_LEVEL3	Trap for Analog input Alarm Level 3.
7	IO_AI_ALARM_LEVEL4	Trap for Analog input Alarm Level 4.
8	IO_AI_ALARM_LEVEL5	Trap for Analog input Alarm Level 5.
9	IO_DI_ALARM_SENSOR_CLEAR	Trap for Digital input trigger Clear Mode.
10	IO_DI_ALARM_SERIAL_DSR_CLEAR	Trap for Digital input DSR serial pin trigger Clear Mode.
11	IO_DI_ALARM_SERIAL_DCD_CLEAR	Trap for Digital input DCD serial pin trigger Clear Mode.
12	IO_DI_ALARM_SERIAL_CTS_CLEAR	Trap for Digital input CTS serial pin trigger Clear Mode.
13	IO_AI_ALARM_LEVEL1_CLEAR	Trap for the Analog input Alarm Level 1 Clear.
14	IO_AI_ALARM_LEVEL2_CLEAR	Trap for the Analog input Alarm Level 2 Clear.
15	IO_AI_ALARM_LEVEL3_CLEAR	Trap for the Analog input Alarm Level 3 Clear.
16	IO_AI_ALARM_LEVEL4_CLEAR	Trap for the Analog input Alarm Level 4 Clear.
17	IO_AI_ALARM_LEVEL5_CLEAR	Trap for the Analog input Alarm Level 5 Clear.

11 Configuring Clustering

Introduction

Clustering is a way to provide access to the serial ports of many IOLANs through a single IP address.



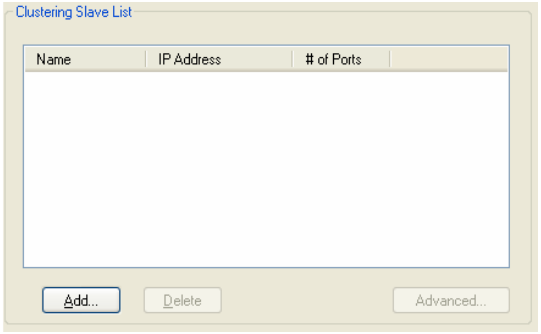
Clustering Slave List

Overview

The IP address that will be used to access all clustered serial ports will be that of the Master IOLAN in the cluster. All other IOLANs in the cluster will be referred to as Slave IOLANs. Users can also access slave serial ports using EasyPort Web; EasyPort Web is automatically launched when a user types in the IP address of the Master IOLAN in a web browser. If the user has admin privileges, the WebManager will first be displayed with an option to proceed to EasyPort Web.

The **Clustering Slave List** window displays the slave IOLAN entries and the number of ports on those slave IOLANs.

Note: No special configuration is required on the Slave IOLANs to enable this functionality.



The following buttons are available:

Add Button — Click this button to display a window to configure and add a new Slave IOLAN's configuration to the clustering group.

See ***Adding Clustering Slaves*** on page 262 for more information.

Delete Button — Select a Slave IOLAN and click this button to delete it from the clustering group.

Advanced Button — Select a Slave IOLAN and click this button to configure the individual Slave IOLAN's serial ports.

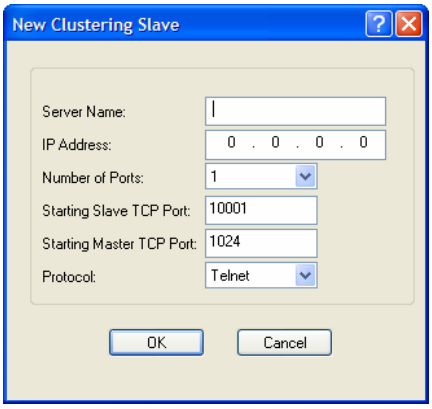
See ***Advanced Clustering Slave Options*** on page 263 for more information.

Adding Clustering Slaves

Overview

When you add a clustering slave IOLAN entry, you are adding the IOLAN that users will access through this master IOLAN.

Field Descriptions



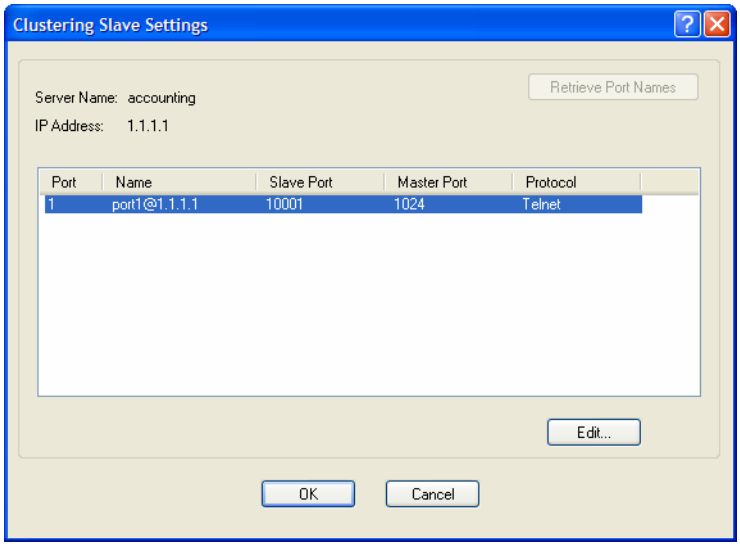
Configure the following parameters:

Server Name	Specify a name for the slave IOLAN in the clustering group. This name does not have to correspond to the proper host name, as it is just used within the IOLAN. **Field Format:** Maximum 15 alphanumeric characters, including spaces
IP Address	Specify the IP address of the slave IOLAN in the clustering group. **Field Format:** IPv4
Number of Ports	Specify the number of ports in the Slave IOLAN that you are adding to the clustering group. **Data Options:** 1, 2, 4, 8, 18, 24, 36, 48 **Default:** 1
Starting Slave TCP Port	Specify the first TCP Port number (as specified in the slave IOLAN's serial port configuration) on the slave host. **Default:** 10001, and increments by one for each serial port
Starting Master TCP Port	Specify the TCP port number you want to map the first slave IOLAN DS Port number to. This number should not be a port number that is already in use by the master IOLAN. **Default:** 1024, and then increments by one for each new slave entry
Protocol	Specify the protocol that will be used to access the slave IOLAN port. **Data Options:** SSH, Telnet **Field Format:** Telnet

Advanced Clustering Slave Options

Overview

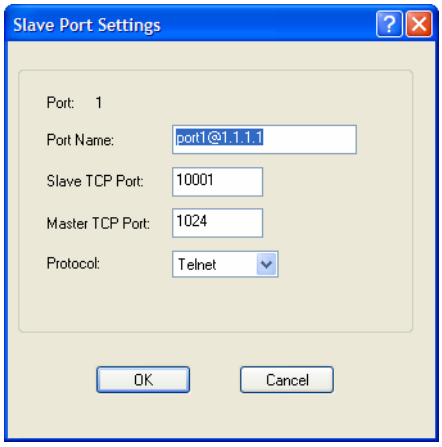
The **Advanced** button provides a means of configuring each individual serial port's name, connection protocol, and port association in the clustered IOLAN slave. The **Clustering Slave Settings** window displays each clustered serial port slave entry, you need to click the **Edit** button to configure the individual serial port settings.



If you click the **Retrieve Port Names** button, the DeviceManager will connect to the clustering slave IOLAN and download all the serial port names--you can change the names and other settings when you click the **Edit** button.

Editing Clustering Slave Settings

Change the individual serial port settings Slave Port Settings window.



Configure the following parameters:

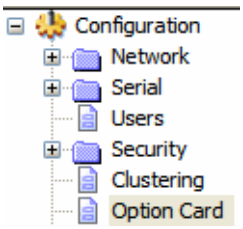
Port Name	Specify a name for the port. **Default:** A combination of the port number, the @ symbol, and the IP address; for example, **`port1@172.22.23.101`**.

Slave TCP Port	Specify the TCP Port number configured on the Slave IOLAN that is associated to the port number you are configuring. **Range:** 1-99999
Master TCP Port	Specify the TCP port number you want to map to the Slave IOLAN TCP Port. User's will use this TCP port number to access the Slave IOLAN's port. **Default:** 1024, and then increments by one for each new slave entry
Protocol	Specify the protocol that will be used to access the port. **Data Options:** SSH, Telnet **Default:** Telnet

12 Configuring the Option Card

Introduction

SCS models have a built-in option card slot that supports either a Perle IOLAN modem card (purchased separately) or Perle PCI Adapter card (purchased separately) for use with a user supplied wireless WAN card.



Option Card Settings

Overview

The **Option Card** settings allow you to configure the option card slot for either a Perle IOLAN modem card or a Perle PCI Adapter/wireless WAN card.

Functionality

The Perle IOLAN modem card or Perle PCI Adapter/wireless WAN card slide into the PCI slot as described in ***Installing a Perle PCI Card*** on page 359.

Configuring the IOLAN Modem Card

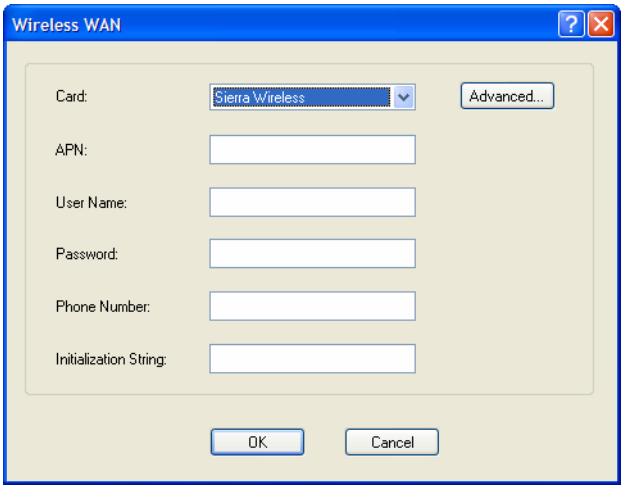
The **IOLAN Modem** card **Configure** button automatically takes you to the **PPP** serial port profile, although you can set and configure any serial port profile appropriate for modem use. See the Chapter 7, ***Configuring Serial Ports*** on page 99 for information on the configuration options for the serial port profile that fits your modem usage.

Configuring a Wireless WAN Card

Overview

SCS IOLAN models support a wireless WAN card that can be installed to permit access to the IOLAN via the internet or other WAN network. When the PCI card type has been configured to be a **Wireless WAN** card, the serial port associated with the wireless WAN card is automatically set to **PPP**. No other PPP configuration is typically required. The wireless WAN card will establish a GPRS data connection over the service provider's GSM network. The service provider will assign an IP address to your wireless connection. This address may be public or private and it may be dynamically or statically assigned, depending on the type of account established with the service provider. If a static, public IP address has been assigned, the IOLAN will be directly accessible via that IP address. If a dynamic, public IP address has been assigned, you may access your IOLAN with the assistance of a dynamic DNS service provider. These service providers provide a method of accessing your device server using a standard URL (for example, yourcompany.dyndns.org), when the IP address assigned by the Wireless provider is dynamic. The IOLAN SCS supports dynamic DNS updates to DynDNS.com (see www.DynDNS.com for more information).

Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

Card

Specify the wireless WAN card you are using.

Data Options:

- **Sierra Wireless**—You are using a Sierra wireless WAN card.
- **Sony Ericsson**—You are using a Sony Ericsson wireless WAN card.
- **Use Standard Driver**—If the wireless WAN card you are using is not listed, try the standard driver.
- **Use Custom Driver**—A custom driver downloaded from the Perle website.

Default: Sierra Wireless

APN

Specify the APN required by your internet provider to access their network. See the internet provider documentation for more information.

User Name

Specify the name required by your internet provider to access their network.

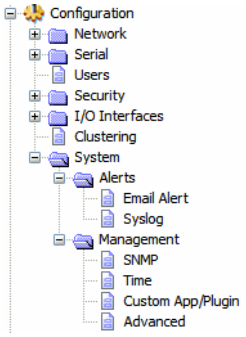
Password	Specify the password required by your internet provider to access their network.
Phone Number	Specify the phone number provided by your service provider to access their wireless network. **Field Format:** Probably similar to **`*99***1#`**
Initialization String	Specify the initialization string required by your internet service provider for your wireless WAN card.

When you click the **Advanced** button, the **Remote Access (PPP)** profile is displayed. The wireless WAN card uses PPP to communicate with its wireless provider. See ***Remote Access (PPP) Profile*** on page 165 for information on how to configure PPP.

13 Configuring the System

Introduction

This chapter describes the alerts (email and syslog) that can be configured for the IOLAN and the advanced options (SNMP, time, custom applications/plugins, and other miscellaneous configuration options) that you will want to look at to see if they are required for your implementation.



Alerts

Email Alerts

Overview

Email notification can be set at the Server and/or Line levels. You can set email notification at these levels because it is possible that the person who administers the IOLAN might not be the same person who administers the serial device(s) attached to the IOLAN port. Therefore, email notification can be sent to the proper person(s) responsible for the hardware.

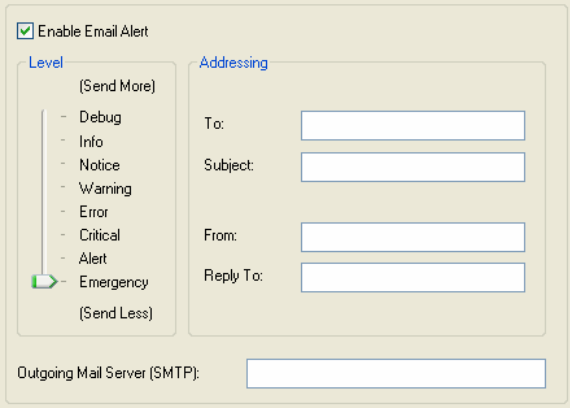
Functionality

Email notification requires an SMTP host that is accessible by the IOLAN to process the email messages sent by the IOLAN. When you enable email notification at the Server level, you can also use those settings at the serial port level, or you can configure email notification specifically for each serial port. When you choose an event **Level**, you are selecting the lowest notification level; for example, if you select **Level Error**, you will get notifications for all events that trigger **Error**, **Critical**, **Alert**, and **Emergency** messages. The level order, from most inclusive to least inclusive, is as follows: Debug, Info, Notice, Warning, Error, Critical, Alert, Emergency.

The following events trigger an email notification on the **System** for the specified **Level**:

- Reboot, Alert Level
- IOLAN System Failure, Error Level
- Authentication Failure, Notice Level
- Successful Login, Downloads (all), Configuration Save Commands, Info Level

Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

Enable Email Alert	Enables/disables a global email alerts setting. Even if this option is disabled, you can still configure individual serial port email alerts. When this option is enabled, individual serial ports can inherit these email alerts settings. **Default:** Disabled
Level	Choose the event level that triggers an email notification. **Data Options:** Emergency, Alert, Critical, Error, Warning, Notice, Info, Debug **Default:** Emergency
To	An email address or list of email addresses that will receive the email notification.
Subject	A text string, which can contain spaces, that will display in the **Subject** field of the email notification.
From	This field can contain an email address that might identify the IOLAN name or some other value.
Reply To	The email address to whom all replies to the email notification should go.
Outgoing Mail Server	The SMTP host (email server) that will process the email notification request. This can be either a host name defined in the IOLAN host table or the SMTP host IP address.

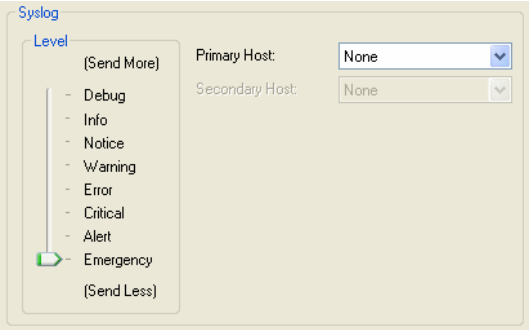
Syslog

Overview

The IOLAN can be configured to send system log messages to a syslog daemon running on a remote host if the **Syslog** service is activated. You can configure a primary and secondary host for the syslog information and specify the level for which you want syslog information sent.

Note: You must ensure that the **Syslog Client** service in the **Security**, **Services** window is enabled (by default it is enabled) for these settings to work.

Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

Primary Host	The first preconfigured host that the IOLAN will attempt to send system log messages to; messages will be displayed on the host's monitor. **Default:** None
Secondary Host	If the IOLAN cannot communicate with the primary host, then the IOLAN will attempt to send system log messages to this preconfigured host; messages will be displayed on the host's monitor. **Default:** None
Level	Choose the event level that triggers a syslog entry. **Data Options:** Emergency, Alert, Critical, Error, Warning, Notice, Info, Debug **Default:** Emergency

Management

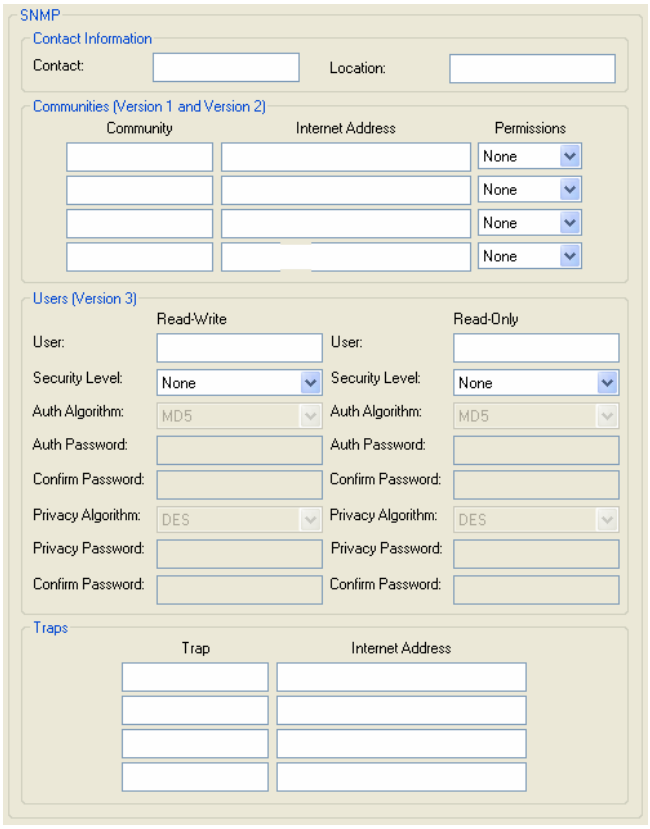
SNMP

Overview

If you are using SNMP to manage/configure the IOLAN, or to view statistics or traps, you must set up a User in SNMP version 3 or a Community in SNMP version 1,2 to allow your SNMP manager to connect to the IOLAN; this can be done in the DeviceManager, WebManager, CLI, or Menu. You must then load the perle-sds.MIB (found on the CD-ROM packaged with the IOLAN) file into your SNMP manager before you connect to the IOLAN.

Note: Ensure that the **SNMP** service found in the **Security**, **Services** page is enabled (by default it is enabled).

Field Descriptions



Configure the following parameters:

Contact	The name and contract information of the person who manages this SMNP node.
Location	The physical location of the SNMP node.
Community	The name of the group that devices and management stations running SNMP belong to.

Internet Address The IP address of the SNMP manager that will send requests to the IOLAN. If the address is **0.0.0.0**, any SNMP manager with the **Community Name** can access the IOLAN.

Permissions Permits the IOLAN to respond to SNMP requests.

Data Options:

- **None**—There is no response to requests from SNMP.
- **Readonly**—Responds only to Read requests from SNMP.
- **Readwrite**—Responds to both Read and Write requests from SNMP.

Default: None

V3 Read-Write User Specified user can view and edit SNMP variables.

V3 Read-Write Security Level Select the security level for the Read-Writer user. This must match the configuration set up in the SNMP manager.

Data Options:

- **None**—No security is used.
- **Auth**—User authentication is used.
- **Auth/Priv**—User authentication and privacy (encryption) settings are used.

Default: None

V3 Read-Write Auth Algorithm Specify the authentication algorithm that will be used for the read-write user.

Data Options: MD5, SHA

Default: MD5

V3 Read-Write Auth Password Type in the read-write user's authentication password.

V3 Read-Write Confirm Password Retype the user's authentication password.

V3 Read-Write Privacy Algorithm Specify the read-write user's privacy algorithm (encryption).

Data Options: DES, AES

Default: DES

V3 Read-Write Privacy Password Type in the read-write user's privacy password.

V3 Read-Write Confirm Password Retype the privacy password.

V3 Read-Only User Specified user can only view SNMP variables.

V3 Read-Only Security Level Select the security level for the Read-Only user. This must match the configuration set up in the SNMP manager.

Data Options:

- **None**—No security is used.
- **Auth**—User authentication is used.
- **Auth/Priv**—User authentication and privacy (encryption) settings are used.

Default: None

V3 Read-Only Auth Algorithm	Specify the authentication algorithm that will be used for the read-only user. **Data Options:** MD5, SHA **Default:** MD5
V3 Read-Only Auth Password	Type in the read-only user's authentication password.
V3 Read-Only Confirm Password	Retype the user's authentication password.
V3 Read-Only Privacy Algorithm	Specify the read-only user's privacy algorithm (encryption). **Data Options:** DES, AES **Default:** DES
V3 Read-Only Privacy Password	Type in the read-only user's privacy password.
V3 Read-Only Confirm Password	Retype the privacy password.
Trap	The trap receiver is the network management system (NMS) that should receive the SNMP traps. This NMS must have the same SNMP community string as the trap sender.
Internet Address	Defines the hosts (by IP address) that will receive trap messages generated by the IOLAN. Up to four trap hosts can be defined.

Time

Overview

You can set standard and summer time (daylight savings time) in the IOLAN. You can specify the summer time settings as absolute, on a fixed date and time, or relative, on something like the third day of the third week at this time in June.

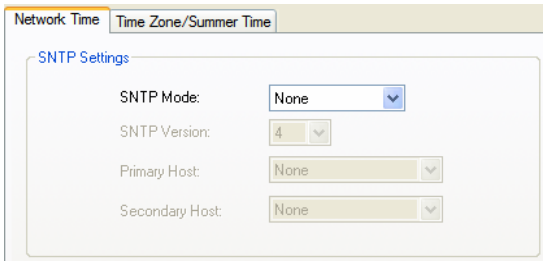
Functionality

The IOLAN has a real-time internal clock, allowing the date and time to be set and viewed. It will maintain the time over a short power outage and after reboots of the IOLAN. If you do not set the time, it will start the clock at the factory set time.

When you set the IOLAN's time, the connection method and time zone settings can affect the actual internal clock time that is being set. For example, if you are connecting to the IOLAN through the DeviceManager and your PC's time zone is set to Pacific Standard Time (GMT -8:00) and the IOLAN's time zone is set to Eastern Standard Time (GMT -5:00), the IOLAN's time is actually three hours ahead of your PC's time. Therefore, if you set the IOLAN's time to 2:30 pm in the DeviceManager, the IOLAN's actual internal clock time is 5:30 pm. This is the only configuration method that interprets the time and converts it between time zones, as necessary.

Network Time Tab Field Descriptions

You can configure your SNTP client in the IOLAN to automatically synchronize the IOLAN's time.



Configure the following parameters:

SNTP Mode

The SNTP mode.

Data Options:

- **None**—SNTP is turned off.
- **Unicast**—Sends a request packet periodically to the Primary host. If communication with the Primary host fails, the request will be sent to the Secondary host.
- **Multicast**—Listen for any broadcasts from an SNTP server and then synchronizes its internal clock to the message.
- **Anycast**—Sends a request packet as a broadcast on the LAN to get a response from any SNTP server. The first response that is received is used to synchronize its internal clock and then operates in **Unicast** mode with that SNTP server.

Default: None

SNTP Version

Version of SNTP.

Range: 1-4

Default: 4

Primary Host

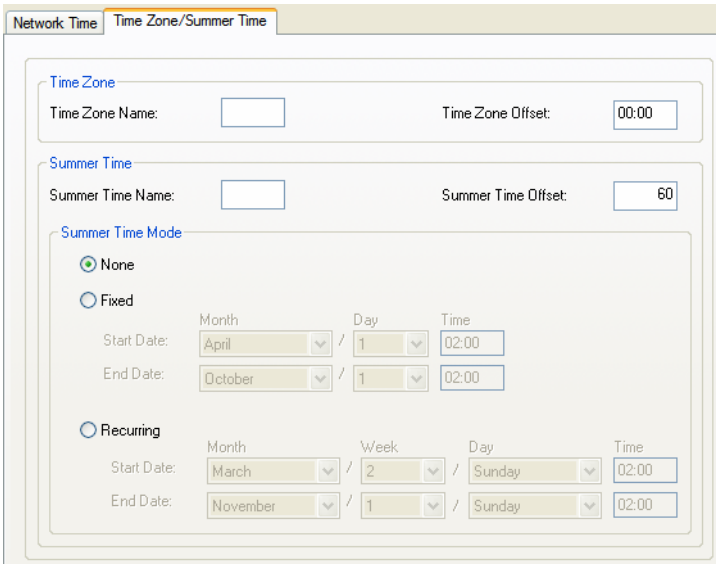
The name of the primary SNTP server from the IOLAN host table. Valid with **Unicast** and **Multicast** modes, although in **Multicast** mode, the IOLAN will only accept broadcasts from the specified host SNTP server.

Secondary Host

The name of the secondary SNTP server from the IOLAN host table. Valid with **Unicast** and **Multicast** modes, although in **Multicast** mode, the IOLAN will only accept broadcasts from the specified host SNTP server.

Time Zone/Summer Time Tab Field Descriptions

You can configure an automatic summer time (daylight savings time) time change.



Configure the following parameters:

Time Zone Name
The name of the time zone to be displayed during standard time.

Field Format: Maximum 4 characters and minimum 3 characters (do not use angled brackets < >)

Time Zone Offset
The offset from UTC for your local time zone.

Field Format: Hours *hh* (valid -12 to +14) and minutes *mm* (valid 0 to 59 minutes)

Summer Time Name
The name of the configured summer time zone; this will be displayed during the summer time setting. If this parameter is not set, then the summertime feature will not work.

Field Format: Maximum 4 characters and minimum 3 characters (do not use angled brackets < >)

Summer Time Offset
The offset from standard time in minutes. Valid values are 0 to 180.

Range: 0-180

Default: 60

Summer Time Mode
You can configure the summer time to take effect:

- **None**—No summer time change.
- **Fixed**—The summer time change goes into effect at the specified time every year. For example, April 15 at 1:00 pm.
- **Recurring**—The summer time changes goes into effect every year at same relative time. For example, on the third week in April on a Tuesday at 1:00 pm.

Default: None

Fixed Start Date
Sets the exact date and time in which the IOLAN's clock will change to summer time (daylight saving time) hours.

Fixed End Date
Sets the exact date and time in which the IOLAN's clock will end summer time hours and change to standard time.

Recurring Start Date	Sets the relative date and time in which the IOLAN's clock will change to summer time (daylight saving time) hours. Sunday is considered the first day of the week.
Recurring End Date	Sets the relative date and time in which the IOLAN's clock will end summer time hours and change to standard time. Sunday is considered the first day of the week.

Custom App/Plugin

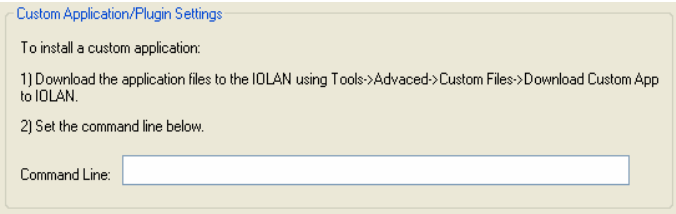
Overview

You can create custom applications for the IOLAN by using the Perle SDK. See the *SDK Programmer's Guide* (the SDK and guide are found on the Perle website at **`www.perle.com/downloads/index.shtml`**) for information about the functions that are supported. You must download the program and any ancillary files to the IOLAN and set the **Serial Port Profile** to **Custom App/Plugin** to run a custom application. You must also specify the program executable in the **Command Line** parameter.

A custom application or plugin can be run on the serial port. In this situation, the application will start once the serial port is activated and operate solely on the context of that serial port and any network communications related to that serial port. You could run a different custom application on each serial port. The serial port custom application or plugin is configured by specifying the **Custom App/Plugin** profile for the serial port.

The system level custom application or plugin will begin execution immediately following the system startup. It runs on the context of the whole system and can access network communications as well as any or all serial ports.

Field Description


Custom Application/Plugin Settings
To install a custom application:
1) Download the application files to the IOLAN using Tools->Advaced->Custom Files->Download Custom App to IOLAN.
2) Set the command line below.
Command Line:

Configure the following parameter:

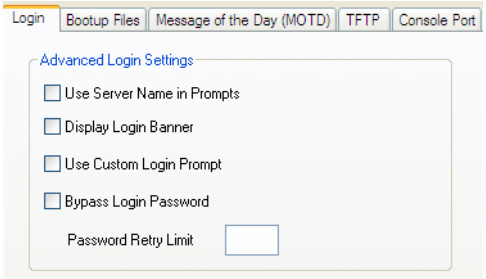
Command Line	The name of the application that has been already been downloaded to the IOLAN, plus any parameters you want to pass to the program. For example, using sample **`outraw`** program (this is sample program supplied with the SDK), you would type: **`outraw -s 0 192.168.2.1:10001 Acct:10001`** if you were starting the application on the Server (notice the **`-s 0`** parameter specifies serial port 1 to this particular application). **Field Format:** Maximum of 80 characters

Advanced

Overview

Review the configuration options in the Advanced page to determine if any of them apply to your implementation.

Login Tab Field Descriptions

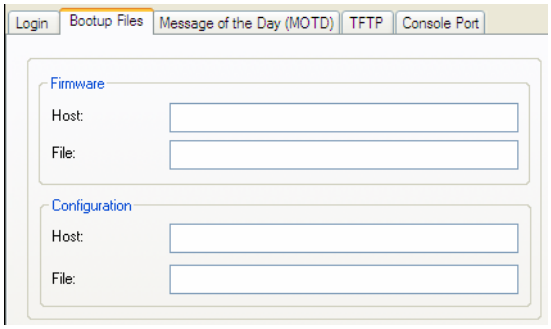


Configure the following parameters:

Use System Name in Prompts	Displays the **System Name** field value instead of default product name. When enabled, the **Server Name** is displayed in the IOLAN login prompt, CLI prompt, WebManager login screen, and the heading of the Menu. **Default:** Disabled
Display Login Banner	This parameter concerns the banner information (product name/software version). This banner information is presented to a user with a login prompt. For security reasons, you can turn off the display of this information. **Default:** Disabled
Use Custom Login Prompt	When set, and a custom language file is in use, the login prompt will use the string defined in the language file as the login prompt instead of the default prompt, **`login:`**. **Default:** Disabled
Bypass Login Password	When set, authorized users who do not have a password set, with the exception of the Admin user, WILL NOT be prompted for a password at login with **Local Authentication**. **Default:** Disabled
Password Retry Limit	The number of attempts a user is allowed to enter a password for a serial port connection from the network. If this limit is exceeded, the serial port is disabled for 5 minutes. A user with Admin level rights can restart the serial port, bypassing the timeout, by issuing a kill on the disabled serial port. **Default:** 3

Bootup Files Tab Field Descriptions

You must have a TFTP server running on any host that you are uploading or downloading files to/from. When you specify the file path, the path must be relative to the default path set in your TFTP server software.



Configure the following parameters:

Firmware Host The host name or IP address of the server that contains the firmware file. If you use a host name, it must exist in the IOLAN's host table or be resolved by DNS.

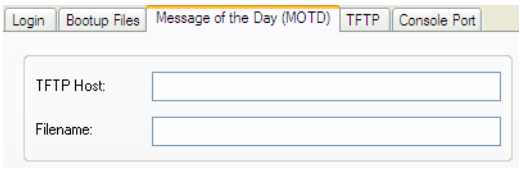
Firmware File The path and file name, relative to the default path of your TFTP server software, of the update software for the IOLAN that will be loaded when the IOLAN is rebooted.

Configuration Host The host name or IP address of the server that contains the configuration file. If you use a host name, it must exist in the IOLAN's host table or be resolved by DNS.

Configuration File The path and file name, relative to the default path of your TFTP server software, of the configuration file for the IOLAN that will be loaded when the IOLAN is rebooted.

Message of the Day (MOTD) Tab Field Descriptions

You must have a TFTP server running on any host that you are uploading or downloading files to/from when using TFTP. When you specify the file path, the path must be relative to the default path set in your TFTP server software. You can download a MOTD file to the IOLAN in the DeviceManager by selecting **Tools**, **Advanced**, **Custom Files** and then selecting the **Download Other File** option and browse to the MOTD file. In WebManager, select **Administration**, **Custom Files** and select the **Other File** option and browse to the MOTD file. After the MOTD is downloaded to the IOLAN, you must specify the MOTD file name in the **Filename** field to access it as the message of the day (no **TFTP Host** parameter is required when the file is internal).



Configure the following parameters:

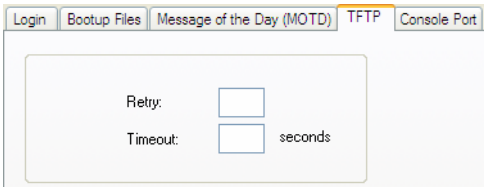
TFTP Host — The host that the IOLAN will be getting the Message of the Day file from.

Filename — The path and file name, relative to the default path of your TFTP server software, of the file that contains a string that is displayed when a user connects to the IOLAN. The IOLAN will look for the file internally (it must already be downloaded), if only the file is specified (no host) or the file cannot be found on the specified host.

TFTP Tab Field Descriptions

You must have a TFTP server running on any host that you are uploading or downloading files to/from.

Note: TFTP file transfers send via UDP packets. When the packet delivery is interrupted for any reason and a timeout occurs, that packet is resent if the retry count allows it. Therefore, if a very large file is being transferred and is interrupted, the entire file is not resent, just the part of the file that was not received.



Configure the following parameters:

Retry — The number of times the IOLAN will retry to transmit a TPFT packet to/from a host when no response is received. A value of **0** (zero) means that the IOLAN will not attempt a retry should TFTP fail.

Range: 0-5

Default: 5

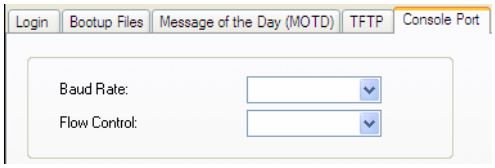
Timeout — The time, in seconds, that the IOLAN will wait for a successful transmit or receipt of TFTP packets before retrying a TFTP transfer.

Range: 3-10

Default: 3 seconds

Console Port Tab Field Descriptions

This tab is found on rack mount models and is used to configure the Admin/Console port.



Configure the following parameters:

Baud Rate

Specifies the baud rate of the line connected to the dedicated console port.

Data Options: 9600, 19200, 38400, 57600, 115200

Default: 9600

Flow Control

For IOLAN models that have a dedicated console port, defines how the data flow is handled.

Data Options:

- **Soft**—Data flow control is handled by the software.
- **Hard**—Data flow control is handled by the hardware.
- **None**—There is no data flow control.

Default: None

14 Controlling the RPS, I/O Channels, and IPsec Tunnels

Introduction

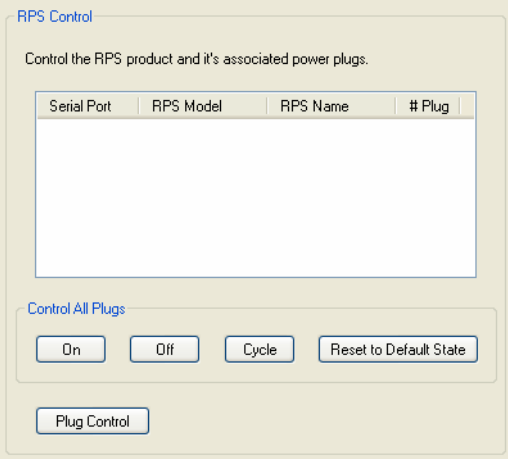
The Control section appears when the IOLAN is connected to a Remote Power Switch and/or an I/O model or you want to control the IPsec tunnel.

RPS Control

Overview

When a Remote Power Switch's (RPS) console port is attached to the IOLAN's serial port and the serial port is configured for the Power Management profile, you will be able to control the RPS's power plugs either universally or individually (power on/off the whole RPS or individual plugs).

Field Descriptions



The following buttons are available:

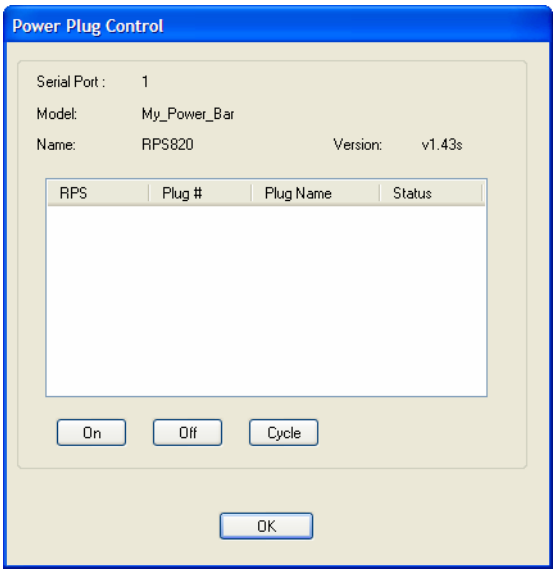
On Button	Turns all the RPS plugs on.
Off Button	Turns all the RPS plugs off.
Cycle Button	Turns all the RPS plugs off and then on.
Reset to Default State Button	Resets all the RPS plugs to the default state as configured in the **Power Management** profile settings.
Plug Control Button	Displays a window that allows you to manage the individual plugs on the RPS.

Plug Control

Overview

When you click the **Plug Control** button, you can power on/off individual plugs.

Field Descriptions



The following buttons are available:

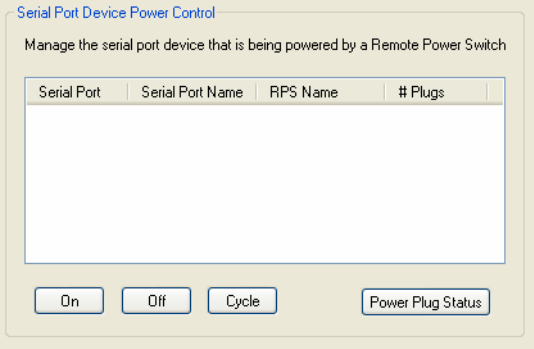
On Button	Turns the selected plug on.
Off Button	Turns the selected plug off.
Cycle Button	Turns the selected plug off and then on.
OK Button	Closes the window.

Serial Port Power Control

Overview

The **Serial Port Power Control** window allows you to manage the power plugs that have been associated with the serial devices connected to the IOLAN.

Field Descriptions

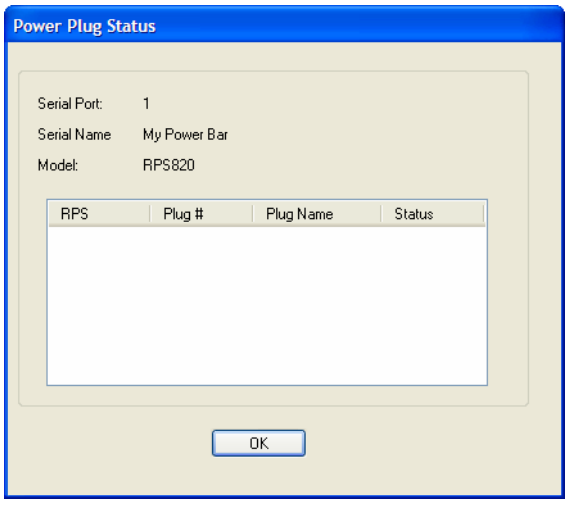


The following buttons are available:

On Button	Turns the selected plug on.
Off Button	Turns the selected plug off.
Cycle Button	Turns the selected plug off and then on.
Power Plug Status Button	Displays a window that provides the plug status for every plug associated with the serial port.

Power Plug Status

This **Power Plug Status** window displays the status of all the plugs associated with a serial port.

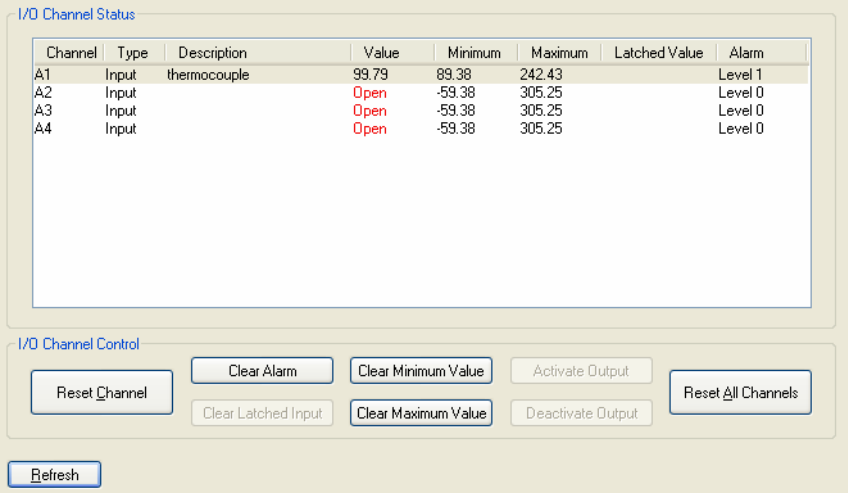


Click **OK** to close this window.

I/O Channels

Overview

When the DeviceManager is connected to an I/O model IOLAN, the I/O Status/Control option is available. You can view the I/O status and manually control such options as clearing alarms, clearing minimum/maximum values, resetting the channel(s), and activating/deactivating output.

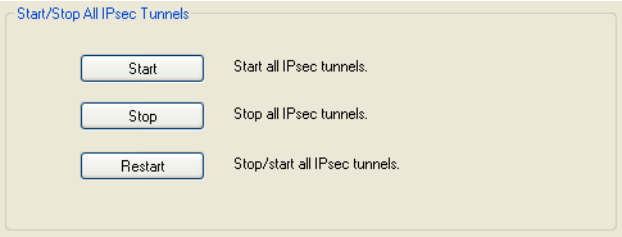


The following buttons are available:

Reset Channel Button	Resets the highlighted channel (click on a channel to highlight it).
Clear Alarm Button	Clears the alarm. Note that if the condition that tripped the alarm still exists, the alarm will not look like it's cleared, but will reflect the appropriate alarm level severity. Alarm Level 0 means that the alarm has not been triggered.
Clear Latched Input Button	Clears the latched value.
Clear Minimum Value Button	Clears the minimum value.
Clear Maximum Value Button	Clears the maximum value.
Activate Output Button	Manually activates the channel output.
Deactivate Output Button	Manually deactivates the channel output.
Reset All Channels Button	Resets all the channels.
Refresh Button	Resets the highlighted channel (click on a channel to highlight it).

IPsec Tunnel Control

You can start, stop, and restart all the IPsec tunnels. When you start the IPsec tunnels, the **Boot Action** configured for each IPsec tunnel is what determines its state.



The following buttons are available:

Start Button	Starts all IPsec VPN tunnels.
Stop Button	Stops all IPsec VPN tunnels.
Restart Button	Stops and then starts all IPsec VPN tunnels.

System Administration

Introduction

This chapter addresses the functions that the Admin user or a user with Admin Level privileges might do. This chapter uses the DeviceManager as the configuration method described in most administrative functions. As a general rule, administrative functions are accessed from the menu bar in the DeviceManager and under the **Administration** option in the WebManager's navigation tree.

Managing Configuration Files

Saving Configuration Files

When you connect to the IOLAN using either DeviceManager or WebManager, the IOLAN's active configuration file is loaded into the configurator. To save a backup of the configuration file locally, do the following:

- In DeviceManager, select **File**, **Save As** from the menu bar. Notice that you can save the file as either a **`.dme`** or a **`.txt`** file. Either file format can be imported into the DeviceManager and downloaded to the IOLAN in the future. The **`.dme`** is a binary file and the **`.txt`** file is a text file that can be viewed in any text editor.
- In WebManager, select under the **Administration** option, select **Backup/Restore**. Click the **Backup** button.

Downloading Configuration Files

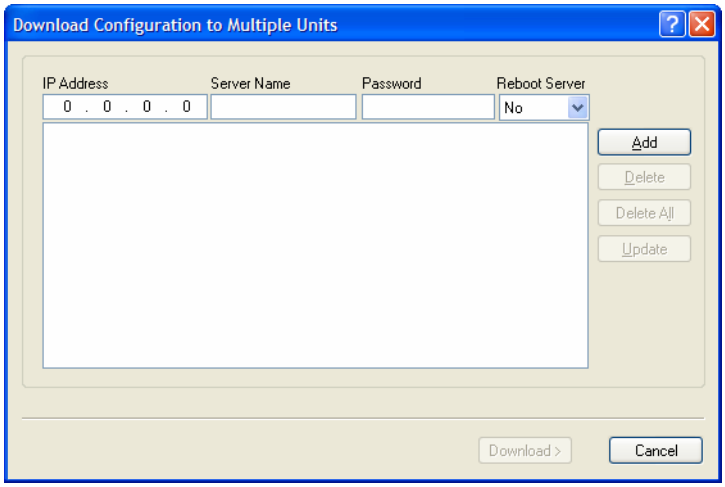
You can download a configuration file to the IOLAN by doing the following:

- In DeviceManager:
  1. Connect to the IOLAN to retrieve the current configuration file.
  2. Open the configuration file you want to download to the IOLAN by selecting **File**, **Import Configuration from a File** and then browsing to the configuration file. This will replace the retrieved configuration file.
  3. Select **Tools**, **Download Configuration to** IOLAN or click the **Download All Changes** button.
  4. Reboot the IOLAN.
- In WebManager:
  1. Under the **Administration** option, select **Backup/Restore**.
  2. Browse to the configuration file that you want to download to the IOLAN.
  3. Click the **Restore** button.
  4. Reboot the IOLAN.

Downloading Configuration Files to Multiple IOLANs

You can download a configuration file to multiple IOLANs at the same time by doing the following in DeviceManager (DeviceManager is the only configurator that does this function):

1. Select **Tools**, **Download Configuration to Multiple** IOLAN**s**.
2. Specify the IOLANs that you want to download the configuration to:

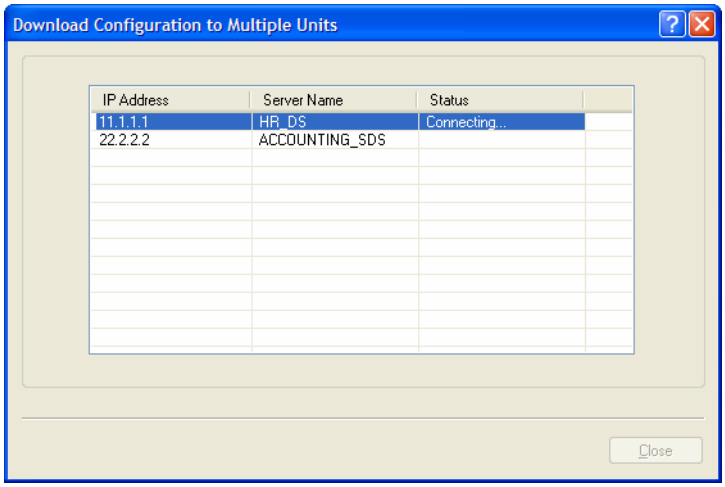


Enter the following information for each IOLAN that you want to configure with the same configuration file:

IP Address	Enter the IP address of the IOLAN that you want to download the configuration to.
Server Name	The name of the IOLAN. The IOLAN name that you put in this field is passed into the configuration before it is downloaded to the IOLAN and cannot be left blank.
Password	Enter the Admin user password for the IOLAN.
Reboot Server	Determines whether or not the IOLAN is rebooted after it has received the new configuration. The new configuration definitions will not go into effect until the IOLAN is rebooted.

3. Click **Add** to add the IOLAN to the download list. You can also click on the IOLAN entry and edit any information and then click **Update** to make the edits permanent.

4. Click the **Download>** button to start the download process. A status window will display with the configuration download status.



Uploading Configuration Files

When you upload a configuration to the DeviceManager, you are uploading the IOLAN's working configuration file. In most other configurators (the exception being SNMP), you are always seeing the working configuration file.

In DeviceManager, select **Tools**, **Upload Configuration from** IOLAN. The working configuration file will automatically be loaded into the DeviceManager.

Downloading IOLAN Firmware

To upgrade the IOLAN firmware (software):

- In DeviceManager, select **Tools**, **Advanced**, **Download Firmware to** IOLAN. You can browse to the firmware location. Once the firmware download is complete, you will be prompted to reboot the IOLAN. You can choose to reboot the IOLAN at another time by selecting **Tools**, **Reset**, **Reboot** IOLAN.
- In WebManager, under the **Administration** option, select **Update Firmware**. Either browse to the firmware file and then click the **Upload** button or configure the TFTP server and click the **Upload** button. Note: If you use the TFTP option, the specified TFTP server must be on the same subnet as the IOLAN.

Upgrading the firmware does not affect the IOLAN's configuration file or downloaded custom files.

Calibrating I/O

All I/O channels are factory calibrated and should not need recalibration during initial use. However should calibration be required, you can recalibrate in DeviceManager or WebManager. In DeviceManager, you calibrate the I/O channel(s) by selecting **Tools**, **I/O Channels**, **Calibrate**. In WebManager, you calibrate the I/O channel(s) by selecting **I/O Channels**, **Calibrate**.

Calibrating Analog Input

To calibrate an Analog input channel, read the section that applies to the type of input you are calibrating. Note that calibration will be done for the active channel configuration; for example, if Channel A1 is set to voltage, you cannot calibrate it for current. The voltage range configured for this channel will also dictate what is being calibrated. For example, if this channel is configured for a range of +/-10V, calibrating this channel will calibrate all channels which are configured for +/-10V. During the calibration process, you will be asked to apply the minimum and maximum configured range value to the channel; for example, to calibrate for voltage +/- 10V, you will be prompted to first apply -10V and then +10V to the channel.

Also, you cannot actively calibrate disabled channels (although, for Voltage, if you enable the channel and then set it for a range that has already been calibrated for another channel, it will also be calibrated).

Calibrating Voltage

When calibrating the IOLAN Analog input for voltage, you will need a calibration meter that is better than .1% volts precision. When you calibrate one channel, all voltage channels are automatically calibrated for that range; if another channel is set for a different range, you will need to calibrate that channel separately, but all channels that use that range are also automatically calibrated.

Calibrating Current

When calibrating the IOLAN Analog input for current, you will need a calibration meter that is better than .1% current precision. Each channel needs to be calibrated individually.

Calibrating Temperature Input

To calibrate an Analog (Temperature) input channel, read the section that applies to the type of input you are calibrating. Note that calibration will be done for the active channel configuration; for example, if Channel A1 is set to thermocouple, you cannot calibrate it for RTD. During the calibration process, you will be asked to apply the minimum and maximum range value to the channel in either mV or Ohms; for example, to calibrate for thermocouple J 0 to 760C, you will be prompted to first apply -80mV and then +80mV to the channel.

Also, you cannot actively calibrate disabled channels (although if you enable the channel and then set it for the type of thermocouple or RTD that has already been calibrated on another channel, it will also be calibrated).

Calibrating Thermocouple

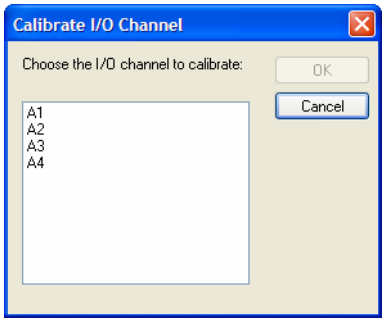
When calibrating the IOLAN Analog input for thermocouple, you will need a calibration meter that is better than .15% accuracy. When you calibrate one channel, all thermocouple channels are automatically calibrated for that range; if another channel is set for a different range, you will need to calibrate that channel separately, but all channels that use that range are automatically calibrated.

Calibrating RTD

When calibrating the IOLAN Analog input for RTD, you will need a resistor that is better than .05% Ohms accuracy. When you calibrate one channel, all RTD channels are automatically calibrated for that range; if another channel is set for a different range, you will need to calibrate that channel separately, but all channels that use that range are automatically calibrated.

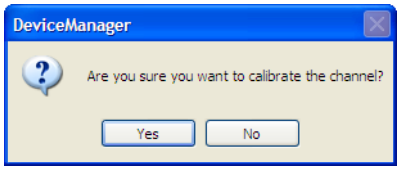
Calibrating Analog Channels

Analog Input can be calibrated for Analog and Temperature IOLAN models.

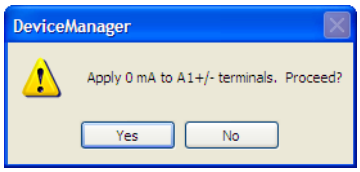


Select the channel you want to calibrate. This example uses an A4 model that has channel A1 set to Current with a Range of 0 to 20mA.

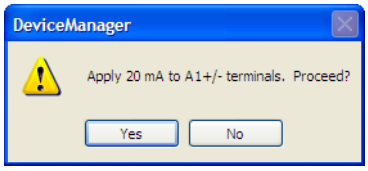
If you have not disabled confirmation messages (**Tools**, **Options** in DeviceManager only), you will get prompted to verify channel calibration.



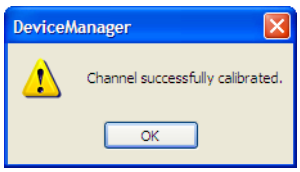
Click **Yes** to proceed with calibration. You are now prompted to apply 0 mA to the positive (+) and negative (-) terminals. Once that is done, click **Yes** to proceed.



You are now prompted to apply 20 mA to the positive (+) and negative (-) terminals. Once that is done, click **Yes** to proceed.



Once calibration is successfully completed, click **OK** to finish the process.



Resetting Calibration Data

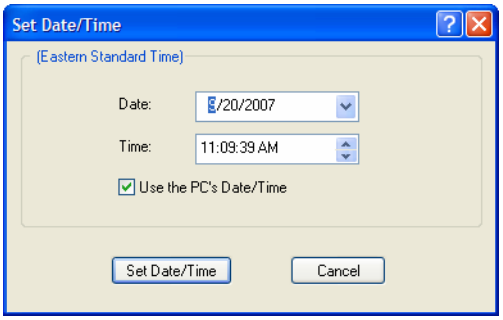
You can reset the I/O channels calibrations to the factory calibrations in DeviceManager by selecting **Tools**, **I/O Channels**, **Reset Calibrate Data** or in WebManager by selecting **Administration**, **Reset**, **I/O Calibration**.

Setting the IOLAN's Date and Time

When you set the IOLAN's time, the connection method and time zone settings can affect the actual internal clock time that is being set. For example, if you are connecting to the IOLAN through the DeviceManager and your PC's time zone is set to Pacific Standard Time (GMT -8:00) and the IOLAN's time zone is set to Eastern Standard Time (GMT -5:00), the IOLAN's time is actually three hours ahead of your PC's time. Therefore, if you set the IOLAN's time to 2:30 pm in the DeviceManager, the IOLAN's actual internal clock time is 5:30 pm. This is the only configuration method that interprets the time and converts it between time zones, as necessary.

All other configuration methods set the IOLAN's internal clock time to the time specified, with no interpretation.

To set the IOLAN's system clock in DeviceManager, select **Tools**, **Advanced, Set Unit Time/Date**. The Set Date/Time window is displayed.



Configure the following parameters:

Date	The IOLAN's date. The format of the IOLAN's date is dependent on the Windows operating system and regional settings.
Time	The IOLAN's internal clock time, based on your PC's time zone. For example, if your PC's time zone is set to Pacific Standard Time (GMT -8:00) and the IOLAN's time zone is set to Eastern Standard Time (GMT -5:00), the IOLAN's time is three hours ahead of your PC's time. If you set the IOLAN's time to 2:30 pm, the IOLAN's actual internal clock time is 5:30 pm.
Use the PCs Date/Time	When enabled, sets the IOLAN's time to the PCs time. **Default:** Enabled This option is unique to the DeviceManager.

Rebooting the IOLAN

When you download any file (configuration, keys, certificates, firmware, etc.) to the IOLAN, you must reboot the IOLAN for it to take effect by selecting **Tools**, **Reset**, **Reboot Server** in DeviceManager and **Administration**, **Reboot Unit** in WebManager.

Resetting the IOLAN to Factory Defaults

You can reset the IOLAN to its factory default configuration by selecting **Tools**, **Reset**, **Reset to Factory Default** in DeviceManager and **Administration**, **Reset**, **Factory Defaults** in WebManager. The IOLAN will automatically reboot itself with the factory default configuration.

Resetting the SecurID Node Secret

If you are using SecurID external authentication, you can select **Tools**, **Reset**, **Reset SecurID Node Secret** in DeviceManager and **Administration**, **Reset**, **SecurID Secret** in WebManager to reset the node secret. You do not need to reboot the IOLAN for this to take effect, it works instantly.

Language Support

Two language files, in addition to English, are supplied on the supplemental CD, French and German. You can use any of these language files to create a translation into a language of your choice. You can download the language file (whether the language is supplied or translated) into the IOLAN and select the **Language** option of **Custom Language** or **Customlang** (custom language), making the Menu and CLI field labels display in the desired language.

You can view Menu or CLI in one other language only (as well as English). If you download another language file, this new language will replace the first language you downloaded.

You can revert to English at any time; the English language is stored permanently in the IOLAN and is not overwritten by your new language. Each user logged into the IOLAN can operate in either English or the downloaded language.

Loading a Supplied Language

This section describes how to download a language file using the CLI, since it is the least intuitive method. French and German language files are provided on the supplemental CD.

To load one of the supplied languages into the IOLAN, so the Menu or CLI fields appear in another language, do the following:

1. Open the supplemental CD and identify the language file, either **`Iolan_ds_French.txt`** or **`Iolan_ds_German.txt`**, or supply one of your own translated files.
2. Copy the language file to a host machine on the network; place it in the main file system or on the main hard drive.
3. Either use the TFTP defaults in the IOLAN or, configure as necessary, TFTP in the IOLAN.
4. In the CLI of the IOLAN, enter the host IP address and file name; for example,

   ```
   netload customlang 172.16.4.1 /temp/Iolan_ds_French.txt
   ```

   The IOLAN will download the language file via TFTP.

   In DeviceManager select **Tools**, **Advanced**, **Custom Files** and then select **Download Custom Language File** and browse to the language file. In WebManager select **Administration**, **Custom Files** and then specify the **Custom Language File** option and browse to the language file.
5. To set an individual user to the new language, go to the **Users** menu and, in the **Language** field select **Customlang**. In the CLI (only) you can set individual users or all users to the new language; see the **`set user *`** command.

6. The user will see the change of language when he/she logs out (**Main Menu**, **Sessions Menu**, **Logout**) and logs back into the IOLAN. If, as Admin user, you change your language setting to **Customlang**, you will see the text menus display in the new language when you save and exit the **Change User** form. Users with **Level Normal** can also change their display language.

Note: If you download a new software version, you can continue to use your language unchanged; however, we recommend translating the new strings, which will be added to the end of the language file. A **Reset to Factory Defaults** will reload the **Customlang** as English.

On successful download, the **Customlang** in the IOLAN will be overwritten by the new language.

Translation Guidance

To help you with your translation, of supplied ASCII text language files we offer the following guidance:

- The IOLAN will support languages other than English (and the supplied German and French languages). The English language file, **`english.txt`**, displays the character length of each line at the beginning of the line. If a translated line goes over that character length, it will be displayed truncated in the Menu or CLI.
- Translate line for line, do not omit lines if you do not know the translation; leave the original untranslated text in place. Also, you must maintain the same sequential order of lines. It is a good practice to translate the file using a text editor that displays line numbers, so you can periodically verify that the line sequence has not changed from the original file (by comparing it to the original file).
- Keep all translations in quotes, otherwise the line will not display properly.
- Each line must end with a carriage return.
- If a line contains only numbers, for example 38400, leave that line in place, unchanged (unless you are using a different alphabet).

Software Upgrades and Language Files

If you receive a software upgrade for the IOLAN, the language files supplied on the supplemental diskette/CD might also have been updated. We will endeavour to provide a list of those changes in another text file on the same supplemental CD.

Note: The upgrade of your software (firmware) will not change the display of the language in the Menu or CLI.

If you are already using one of the supplied languages, French or German, you probably want to update the language file in the IOLAN. Until you update the IOLAN with the new language file, new text strings will appear in English.

If you are already using a language translated from an earlier version, you probably want to amend your translation. When a language file is updated, we will try to maintain the following convention:

1. New text strings will be added to the bottom of the file (not inserted into the body of the existing file).
2. Existing text strings, if altered, will be altered in sequence; that is, in their current position in the file.
3. The existing sequence of lines will be unchanged.
4. Until you have the changes translated, new text strings will appear in the Menu or CLI in English.

Downloading Terminal Definitions

All terminal types can be used on the IOLAN. Some terminal types which are not already defined in the IOLAN, however, are unable to use Full Screen mode (menus) and may not be able to page through sessions properly. When installed, the IOLAN has several defined terminal types—Dumb, WYSE60, VT100, ANSI, TVI925, IBM3151, VT320, and HP700.

If you are not using, or cannot emulate, any of these terminal types, you can add up to three additional terminal definitions to the IOLAN. The terminal definitions can be downloaded from a TCP/IP host.

To download terminal definitions, follow these steps:

1. Decide which TCP/IP host you are going to use. It must be a machine with enabled.
2. Configure TFTP in the IOLAN as necessary.
3. Select **Tools**, **Advanced**, **Custom Files** from the menu bar.
4. From the **File Type** drop-down, select **Download Terminal Definition**. Select the terminal definition option **1**, **2**, or **3** and then browse to the terminal definition file that is being downloaded to the IOLAN.
5. In the **Terminal** profile, select the **Terminal Type Term*x*** that you custom defined.

Creating Terminal Definition Files

To create new terminal definition files, you need to copy and edit the information from the terminfo database.

1. On a UNIX host, change directory to **`/usr/lib/terminfo/`***`x`* (where ***x*** is the first letter of the required terminal type). For a Wyse60, for example, you would enter the command **`cd /usr/lib/terminfo/w`**.
2. The termcap files are compiled, so use the command **`infocmp`** *`termfile`* to read the required file (for example: **`infocmp wy60`**).
3. Check the file for the attribute **`xmc#`***`n`* (where ***n*** is greater than or equal to 1). This attribute will corrupt menu and form displays making the terminal type unsuitable for using Menu mode.
4. If the terminal definition is suitable, change to a directory of your choice.
5. Rename and copy the file to the directory specified at step 4. using the command **`infocmp termfile > term`***`n`* where ***n*** is greater than or equal to 1; (for example, **`infocmp wy50 > term1`**). Make sure the file has global read and execute permission for its entire path.
6. Edit the file to include the following capabilities in this format:

```
term=
acsc=
bold=
civis=
clear=
cnorm=
cup=
rev=
rmacs=
rmso=
smacs=
smso=
page=
circ=
```

For example:

```
term=AT386 | at386| 386AT |386at |at/386 console
acsc=jYk?lZm@qDtCu4x3
bold=\E[1m
civis=
clear=\E[2J\E[H
cnorm=
cup=\E[%i%p1%02d;%p2%02dH
rev=\E4A
rmacs=\E[10m
rmso=\E[m
smacs=\E[12m
smso=\E[7m
page=
circ=n
```

Note: As you can see from the example, capabilities which are not defined in the terminfo file must still be included (albeit with no value). Each entry has an 80 character limit.

On some versions of UNIX, some of the capabilities are appended with a millisecond delay (of the form $<*n*>). These are ignored by the IOLAN and can be left out.

The ‘acsc’ capability, if defined, contains a list of character pairs. These pairs map the characters used by the terminal for graphics characters to those of the standard (VT100) character set.

Include only the following character pairs:

jx, kx, lx, mx, qx, tx, ux and *xx*

(where *x* must be substituted by the character used by the terminal). These are the box-drawing characters used to display the forms and menus of Menu mode. They must be entered in this order.

The last two capabilities will not be found in the terminfo file. In the **page** field you must enter the escape sequence used by the terminal to change screens. The **circ** field defines whether the terminal can use **previous page** and **next page** control sequences. It must be set to **y** or **n**. These capabilities can be found in the documentation supplied with the terminal.

Resetting Configuration Parameters

You can reset the IOLAN to its factory settings through any of the following methods:

- You can push in the recessed button at the back of the IOLAN hardware for more than three seconds (pushing it in and then quickly releasing will just reboot the IOLAN)
- DeviceManager, select **Tools**, **Reset**, **Reset to Factory Defaults**
- CLI, at the command line type, **`reset factory`**
- WebManager, select **Administration**, **Reboot Unit**, and then click the **Reboot** button
- Menu, select **Network Configuration**, **Reset to Factory Defaults**
- SNMP, in the **adminInfo** folder, **`Set`** the **adminFunction** variable to **2**

Lost Admin Password

If the Admin user password is lost, there are only two possible ways to recover it:

- reset the IOLAN to the factory defaults
- have another user that has **admin** level rights, if one is already configured, reset the Admin password

16 Applications

Introduction

This chapter provides examples of how to integrate the IOLAN within different network environments or applications. Each scenario provides an example of a typical setup and describes the configuration steps to achieve the IOLAN functionality feature.

Configuring Modbus

This sections provides a brief overview of the steps required to configure the IOLAN for your Modbus environment. You can read the ***Modbus Gateway Settings*** on page 302 and ***Modbus Serial Port Settings*** on page 303 sections for more specific information about the Modbus settings.

Overview

This section describes the high-level steps required to configure the IOLAN as a Modbus Master or Slave Gateway.

Configuring a Master Gateway

To configure a Master Gateway (Modbus Master connected to the serial side of the IOLAN), do the following:

1. Set the serial port that is connected to the serial Modbus Master to the **Modbus Gateway** profile.
2. In the **Modbus Gateway** profile on the **General** tab, set the **Mode** to **Modbus Master**.
3. Still on the **General** tab, click the **Destination Slave IP Mappings** button to map the Modbus Slave's IP addresses and their UIDs that the serial Modbus Master will attempt to communicate with.
4. For specialized configuration options, select the **Advanced** tab and configure as required.

Configuring a Slave Gateway

To configure a Slave Gateway (Modbus Master resides on the TCP/Ethernet network), do the following:

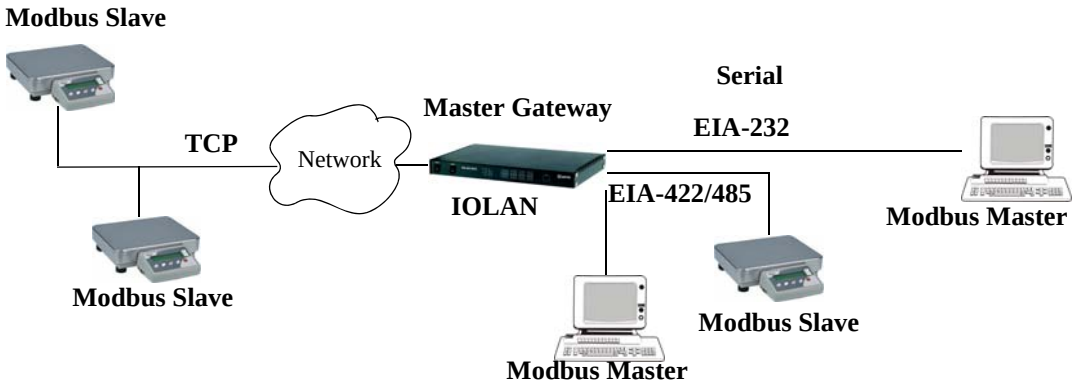
1. Set the serial port that is connected to the serial Modbus Slave(s) to the **Modbus Gateway** profile.
2. In the **Modbus Gateway** profile on the **General** tab, set the **Mode** to **Modbus Slave**.
3. Still on the **General** tab, specify the Modbus Slave UIDs that the TCP Modbus Master will attempt to communicate with.
4. Still on the **General** tab, click the **Advanced Slave Settings** button to configure global Slave Gateway settings.
5. For specialized configuration options, select the **Advanced** tab and configure as required.

Modbus Gateway Settings

The scenarios in this section are used to illustrate how the IOLAN's Modbus Gateway settings are incorporated into a Modbus device environment. Depending on how your Modbus Master or Slave devices are distributed, the IOLAN can act as both a Slave and Master Gateway(s) on a multiport IOLAN or as either a Slave or Master Gateway on a single port IOLAN.

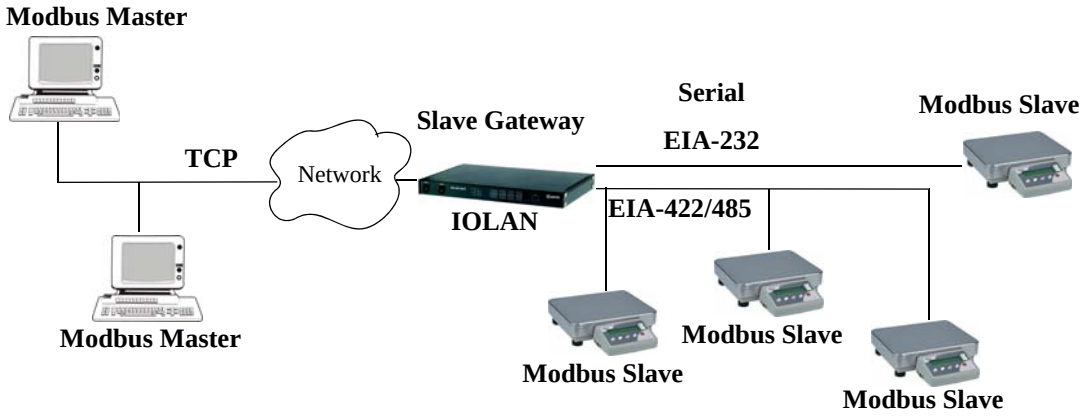
Modbus Master Gateway

The IOLAN acts as a Master Gateway when the Modbus Master is connected to a serial port on the IOLAN. Each Modbus Master can communicate to UIDs 1-247.



Modbus Slave Gateway

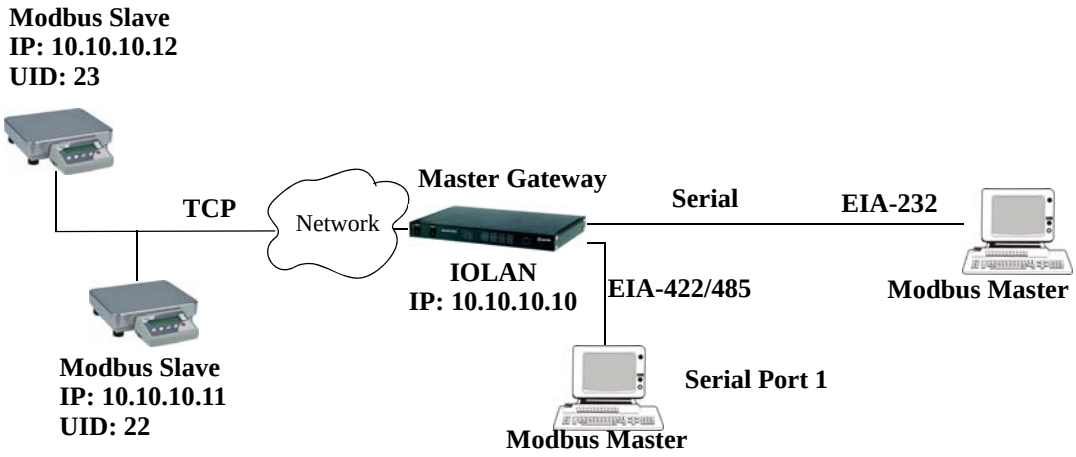
The IOLAN acts as a Slave Gateway when the Modbus Master resides on the TCP/Ethernet network and the Modbus Slaves are connected to the serial ports on the IOLAN. Note: The IOLAN provides a single gateway to the network-attached Modbus Masters. This means that all Modbus Slaves attached to the IOLAN's serial ports must have a unique UID. Multiple Masters on the network can communicate with these Modbus Slaves. Note: If a transaction is in progress to a Modbus Slave, other requests to that same device will be queued until that transaction is complete.



Modbus Serial Port Settings

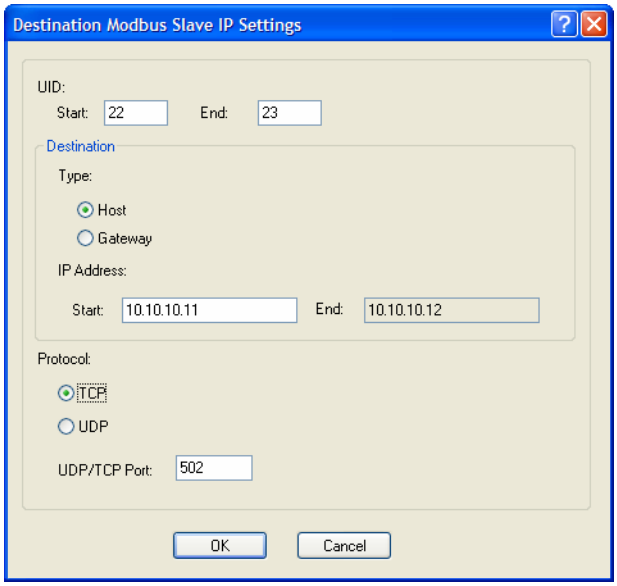
Modbus Master Settings

When the Modbus Masters is attached to the IOLAN's serial port, configure that serial port to the **Modbus Gateway** profile acting as a Modbus Master. You must configure the Modbus TCP Slaves on the TCP/Ethernet side so the IOLAN can properly route messages, using the Modbus Slave's UIDs, to the appropriate TCP-attached devices.



To configure the Modbus Master on serial port 1, do the following:

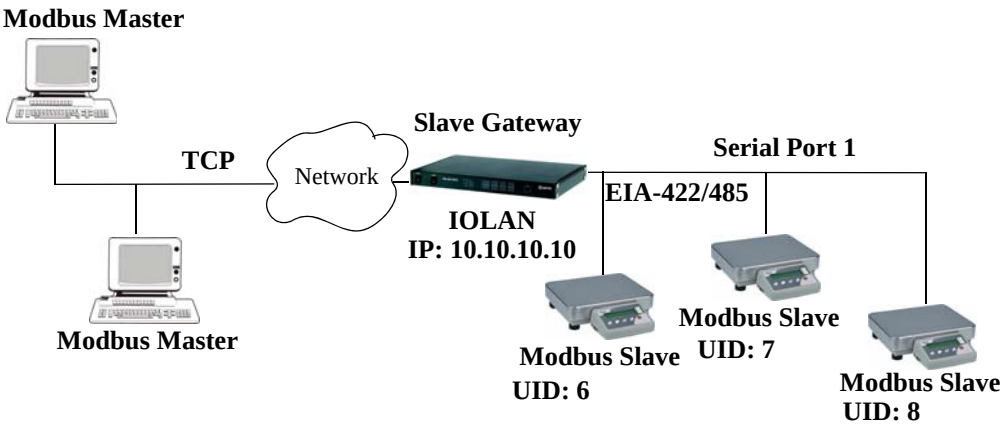
1. Select the **Modbus Gateway** profile for serial port 1.
2. On the **General** tab, enable the **Modbus Master** parameter.
3. Click the **Destination Slave IP Mappings** button and click the **Add** button in the **Destination Slave IP Mappings** window.
4. Configure the **Destination Slave IP Mappings** window as follows:



The IOLAN will send a request and expect a response from the Modbus Slave with an IP Address of 10.10.10.11 on Port 502 with UID 22 and from the Modbus Slave with and IP Address of 10.10.10.12 on Port 502 with UID 23 (remember when **Type** is set to **Host**, the IOLAN increments the last octet of the IP address for each UID specified in the range).

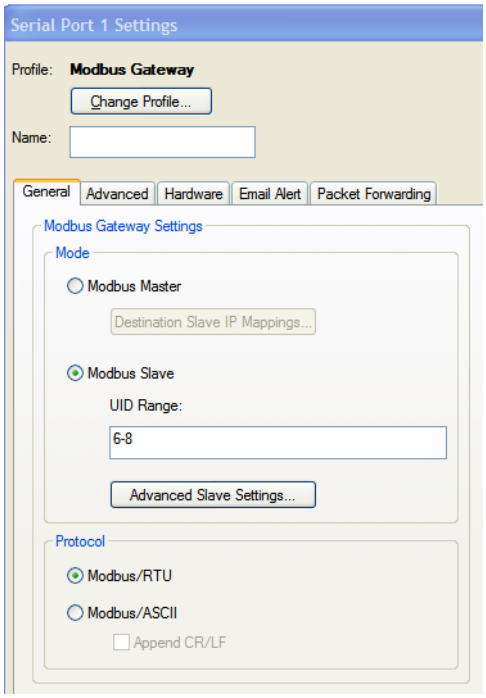
Modbus Slave Settings

When you have Modbus Slaves on the serial side of the IOLAN, configure the serial port to the **Modbus Gateway** profile acting as a Modbus Slave. There is only one Slave Gateway in the IOLAN, so all Modbus serial Slaves must be configured uniquely for that one Slave Gateway; all serial Modbus Slaves must have unique UIDs, even if they reside on different serial ports, because they all must be configured to communicate through the one Slave Gateway.



To configure the Modbus Gateway on serial port 1, do the following:

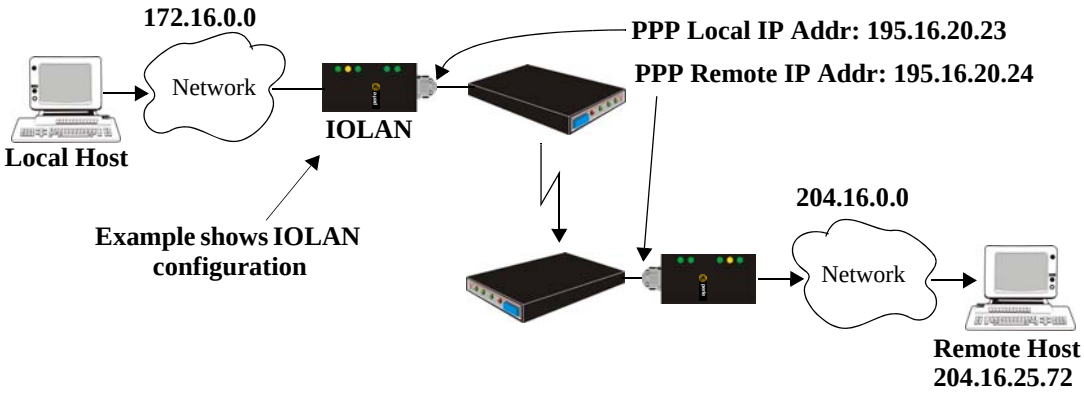
1. Select the **Modbus Gateway** profile for serial port 1.
2. On the **General** tab, enable the **Modbus Slave** parameter.
3. Still on the **General** tab, specify the **UID Range** as **6-8** as shown below:



4. Click the **Advanced Slave Settings** button to verify that the default settings are acceptable.

Configuring PPP Dial On Demand

The IOLAN can be configured to access remote networks via modems connected to the serial interface of the IOLAN. By configuring the IOLAN for the **Remote Access (PPP)** profile, data that is destined for the remote network will initiate a modem connection to the remote network to route the data to its appropriate destination.

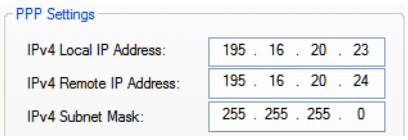


If you want to configure a serial port to use PPP dial on demand, do the following:

1. Create an entry for the modem and its initialization string (**Serial**, **Advanced**, **Modems** tab).
2. Set the serial port to **Remote Access (PPP)**.
3. In **Remote Access (PPP)**, select the **Advanced** tab. Enable the **Connect** option and select **Dial Out**. Set the **Modem** parameter to the modem you just added. Enter the **Phone** number that the modem will be calling.
4. Still on the **Advanced** tab, set the **Idle Timeout** parameter to a value that is *not* zero (setting this value to zero creates a permanent connection).
5. On the **General** tab, enter one of the following:
   - A **Local** and/or **Remote IPv4 Address**
   - A **Local** and/or **Remote IPv6 Interface Identifier**

   Note that this IP address or interface identifier should be on its own unique network; that is, not part of the local or remote networks.

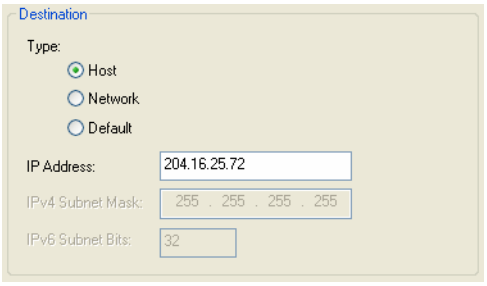
   In this example, the local network has an IPv4 address of 172.16.0.0/16 and the remote network has an IPv4 address of 204.16.0.0/16, so we arbitrarily assigned the PPP **IPv4 Local IP Address** as **`195.16.20.23`** and the PPP **IPv4 Remote IP Address** as **`195.16.20.24`**.



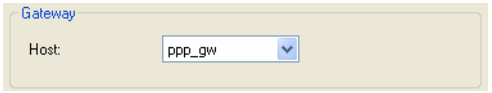
6. Next you need to create a gateway and destination route entry. Select **Network**, **Advanced**, and the **Route List** tab.

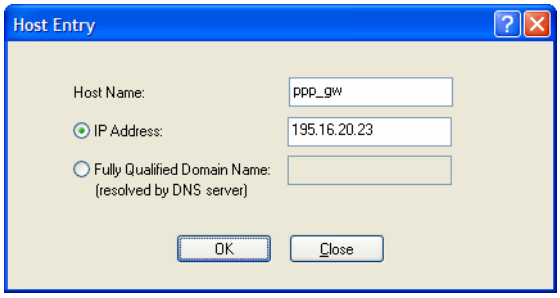
   For the destination, if you want the connection to be able to reach any host in the remote network, set the **Type** to **Network** and specify the network IP address and subnet/prefix bits; if you want the connection to go directly to a specific remote host, set the **Type** to **Host** and specify the host's IP address.

   We want a specific host to the be destination, so we configured the **Type** as **Host**:



   We also need to create a **Gateway** entry using the same PPP IPv4 local IP address. Any traffic that goes through the gateway will automatically cause PPP to dial out:





Setting Up Printers

The IOLAN can communicate with printers on its serial ports using LPD and RCP protocols, as well as print handling software using TCP/IP.

Remote Printing Using LPD

When setting up a serial line that access a printer using LPD, do the following:

1. Set the serial port to **Printer** and configure the **Speed**, **Flow Control**, **Stop Bits**, **Parity**, and **Bits** parameters so that they match the printer's port settings.
2. Save your settings and restart the serial port.
3. Verify that LPD has been configured on the network host. To configure LPD on the network host, you need to know the name or IP address of the IOLAN and the print queue, either **`raw_p<`***`port_number`***`>`** for a raw data connection or **`ascii_p<`***`portnumber`***`>`** for an ASCII character connection. You can optionally append **`_d`** or **`_f`** to the queue name to add a **`<control d>`** or **`<form feed>`** to the end of the print job.

Remote Printing Using RCP

When setting up a serial port that accesses a printer using RCP, do the following:

1. Set the serial port to **Printer** and configure the **Speed**, **Flow Control**, **Stop Bits**, **Parity**, and **Bits** parameters so that they match the printer's port settings.
2. Save your settings and restart the serial port.
3. To execute a print job, use the following syntax:

   `rcp <filename> <ip_address> <IOLAN_Name>:p<#>`

   where **<#>** is the IOLAN serial port number (10000 + serial port number).

Remote Printing Using Host-Based Print Handling Software

Printers connected to the IOLAN can be accessed by TCP/IP hosts using print handling software.

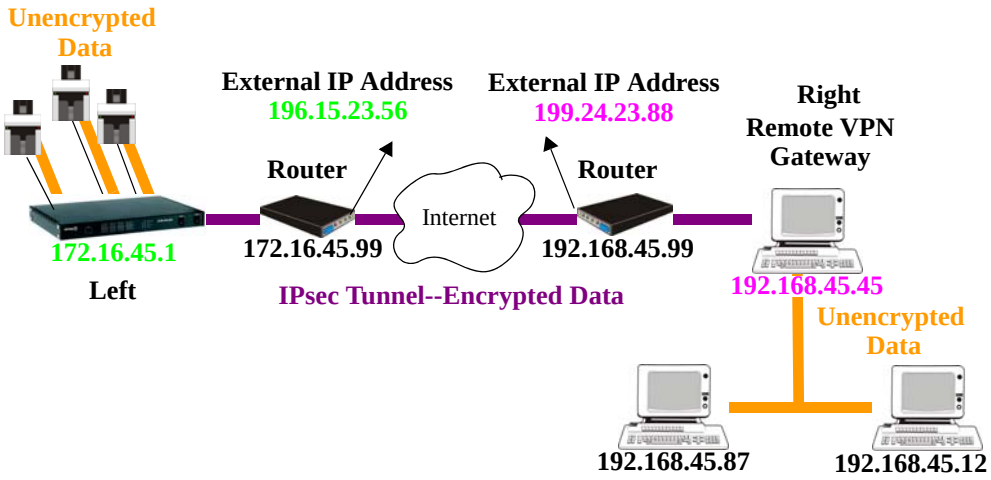
1. Set the serial port to **TCP Sockets**. Enable the **Listen for connection option**. On the **Hardware** tab, configure the **Speed**, **Flow Control**, **Stop Bits**, **Parity**, and **Bits** parameters so that they match the printer's port settings.
2. Save your settings and restart the serial port.
3. The print handling software needs to know the **Name** of the IOLAN and the **TCP Port** number assigned to the printer serial port.

Configuring a Virtual Private Network

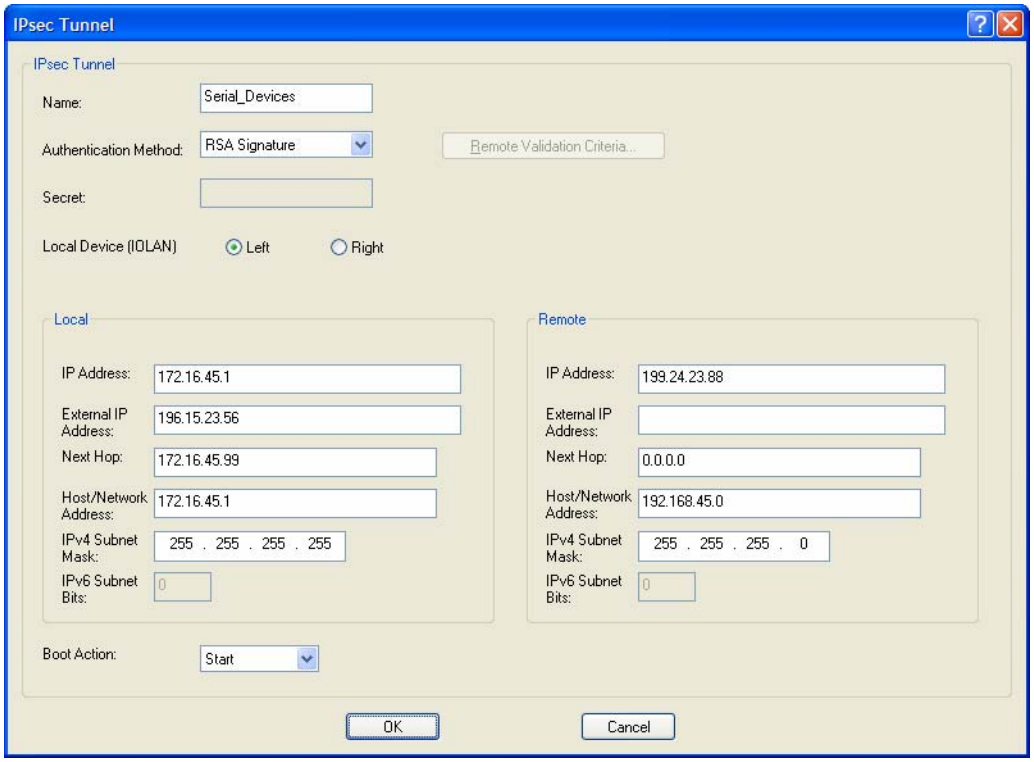
You can configure the IOLAN to act as a Virtual Private Network (VPN) gateway using the IPsec protocol. Any of the following scenarios can be configured using one IOLAN and a host/server running IPsec software or two IOLANs, each acting as the VPN gateway. All the examples have **NAT Traversal (NAT_T)** enabled, since both VPN gateways are running through routers.

IOLAN-to-Host/Network

The following example shows how to configure an IPsec tunnel between serial devices connected to the IOLAN and a host/network. **NAT Traversal (NAT_T)** is enabled in this example (on both sides) because the VPN tunnel is going private network to public network to private network. This example uses an RSA signature for the authentication method, so the steps required to configure the authentication are in this example.



1. Configure the IPsec tunnel in the IOLAN:



2. Use a utility (for example, Openswan's newhostkey/showhostkey utilities) to generate the RSA signature public key. Copy the public key portion to a file using the following format:

   <description>=<keydata>

   or just

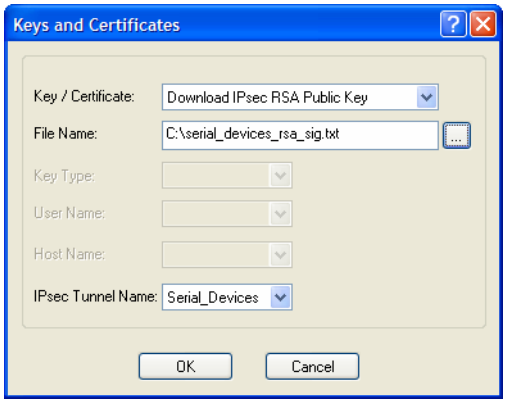
   <keydata>

   For example:

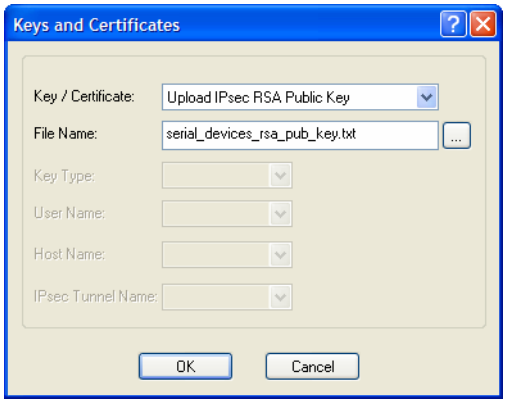
   ```
   # RSA 1024 bits   scs48_vpn   Tue Jan  3 15:29:33 2006
   leftrsasigkey=0sAQOEmzSTdNv1ZUJW9UmPtUY84gM5AGEAOq9gUwFqnOUsESfnuXlxPe+Mc+uf
   XYvg1vxYZ0XhdIh1FwFeeIQLyRvD447mjriMFjJfheMUtHqOZhvWSE18ZfGEXNOo7yagZqLzjxu9
   XJIA2SAGV+/LL3epPqW2fV5ORxVrf7uWn7I5FQ==
   ```

   Note that the pound sign (#) indicates a comment line and all characters in that line are ignored. The key value itself should not have an carriage returns.

3. In the DeviceManager, select **Tools**, **Advanced**, **Keys and Certificates**. In the WebManager, select **Tools**, **Administration**, **Keys/Certificates**. Download the RSA signature file to the DeviceManager, specifying the IPsec tunnel it's for:



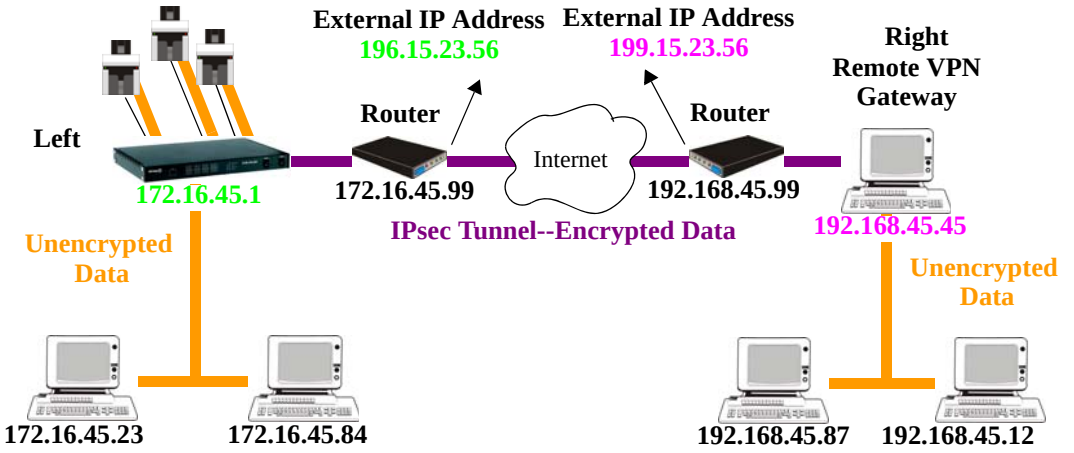
4. In the same **Keys and Certificates** window, upload the IOLAN's RSA signature public key:



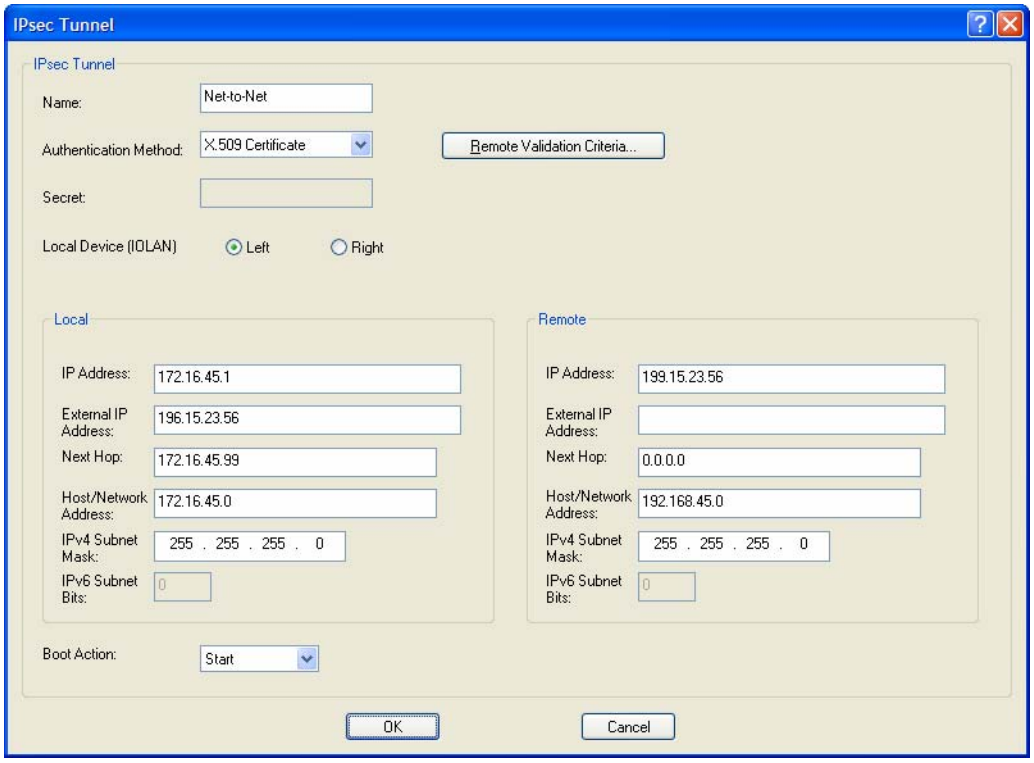
   Install the IOLAN's public key in the remote VPN gateway for the Serial_Devices IPsec tunnel.

Network-to-Network

The following examples shows how to configure a network-to-network IPsec tunnel. This example uses the X.509 Certificate authentication method, so it includes the configuration requirements for the X.509 certificate. **NAT Traversal (NAT_T)** is enabled in this example (on both sides) because the VPN tunnel is going private network to public network to private network. Notice also that the serial devices connected to the IOLAN can be accessed by the VPN tunnel, since they are included in the network configuration as part of the **172.16.45.0** subnetwork.



1. Configure the IPsec tunnel in the IOLAN:

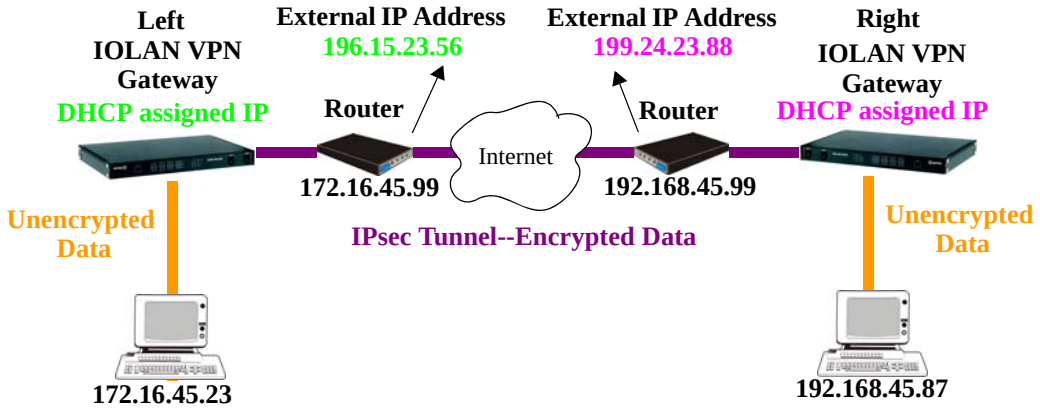


2. Click the **Remote Validation Criteria** button and enable and populate the fields that are required for the remote X.509 certificate validation. If you just want to validate the X.509 certificate signer, you do not need to enable any of the remote validation criteria fields.

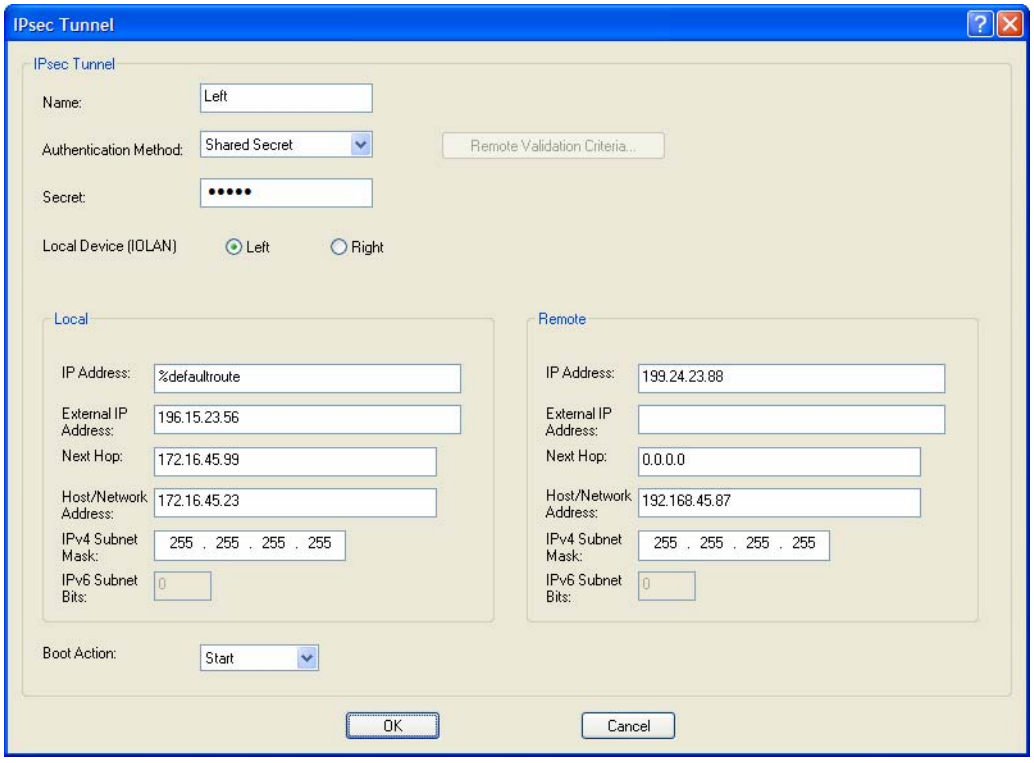
3. If the signer of the remote X.509 certificate has not already been included in the CA list file that has already been downloaded to the IOLAN, you need to add (append) the signer of the X.509 certificate to the CA list file and then download the file to the IOLAN by selecting **Tools**, **Advanced**, **Keys and Certificates**. In the **Keys and Certificates** window, select **Download SSL/TLS CA** and the file name and click **OK**. Note that this file must be a concatenation of all certificate signers required for any SSL/TLS, LDAP, SSH, and/or IPsec connections.

Host-to-Host

The following example shows how to configure two IOLANs to work as VPN gateways for a host-to-host IPsec tunnel. **NAT Traversal (NAT_T)** is enabled in this example (on both sides) because the VPN tunnel is going private network to public network to private network. In this example, both of the IOLAN VPN gateways have a DHCP assigned IP address.

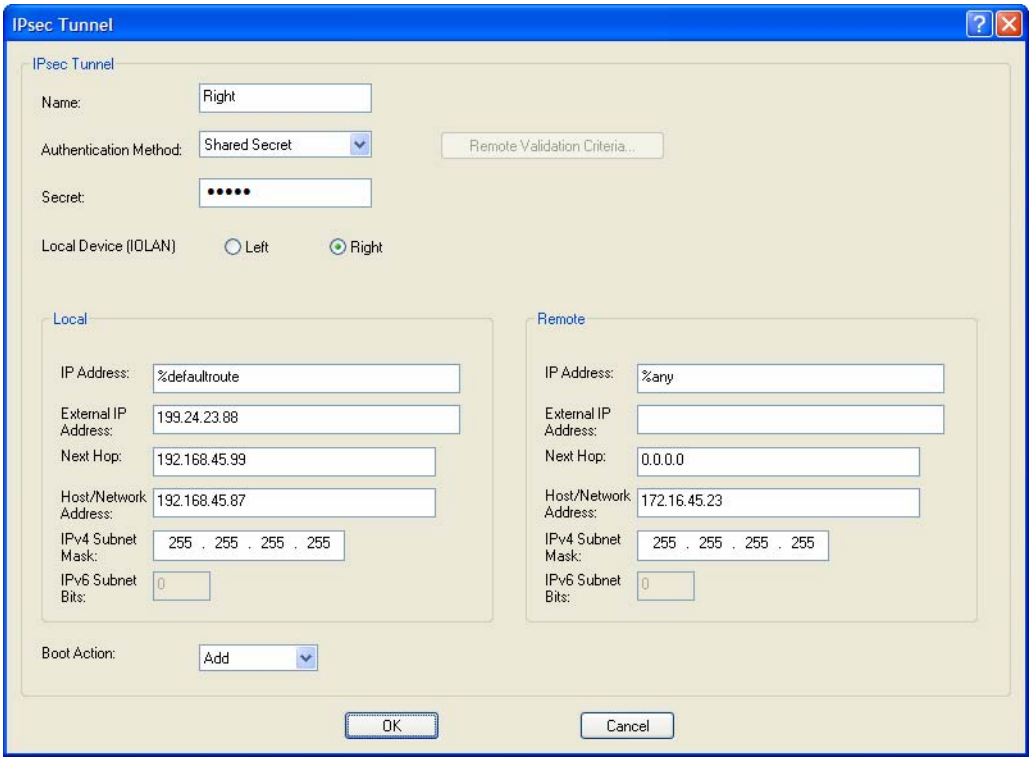


The following window configures the Left IOLAN VPN Gateway:



`%defaultroute` is entered for the **Local IP Address** because the IP address is DHCP assigned and is therefore subject to change.

The following window configures the Right IOLAN VPN Gateway:



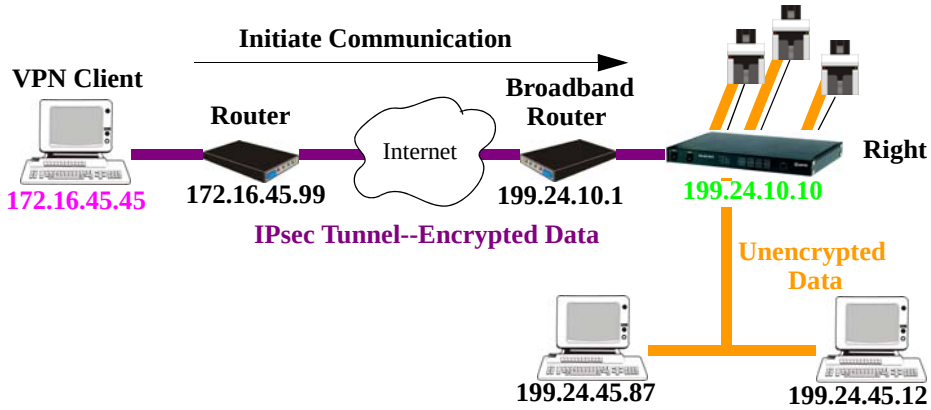
`%defaultroute` is entered for the **Local IP Address** because the IP address is DHCP assigned and is therefore subject to change.

%any is entered for the **Remote IP Address** to indicate that it will accept a VPN connection from any host/network; this is necessary because the Left IOLAN VPN gateway is DHCP assigned and cannot be known.

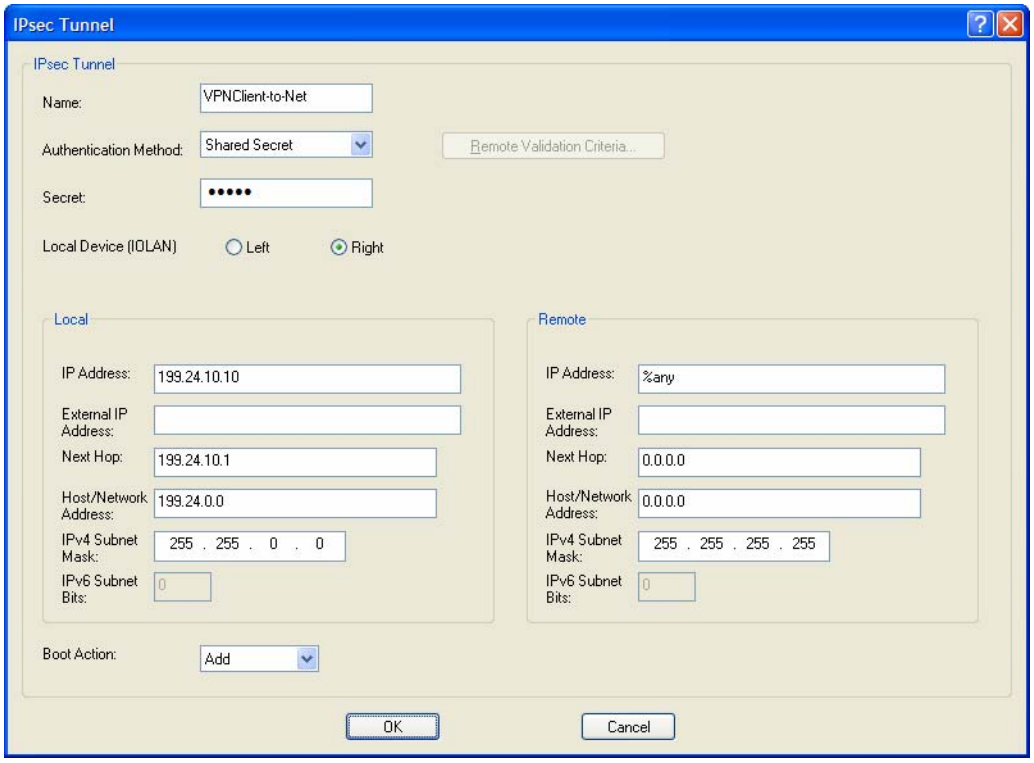
Also note that **Boot Action** on the Left IOLAN VPN gateway is set to **Start**, meaning that it will try to initiate the VPN connection, while the **Boot Action** on the Right IOLAN VPN gateway is set to **Add**, which will listen for a VPN connection request.

VPN Client-to-Network

The following example shows how to configure a VPN client-to-network IPsec tunnel. In this example, the IOLAN will accept VPN connections from multiple VPN clients on private networks that want to access the public **199.24.0.0** subnetwork through the VPN gateway. **NAT Traversal (NAT_T)** is disabled in this example (on both sides) because the VPN tunnel is going private network to public network.



Configure the IPsec tunnel in the IOLAN:



The **Remote IP Address** field is **%any** to allow any VPN client to communicate in the IPsec tunnel that can validate the **Secret**. Also, the **Remote Host/Network** field is configured for **0.0.0.0** to allow any remote peer private IP address (RFC 1918—10.0.0.0/8, 172.16.0.0./12, 192.168.0.0/16) access to the IPsec tunnel. Lastly, the **Boot Action** is set to **Add** to listen for an IPsec tunnel connection.

RADIUS and TACACS+

Introduction

This chapter describes the parameters that can be passed to the IOLAN when a user logs into the IOLAN (serial port set to profile **Terminal**) from external authentication RADIUS and TACACS+ servers.

RADIUS

Although RADIUS can be used strictly for external authentication, it can also be used to configure line and user parameters. Therefore, when a user is being authenticated using RADIUS, it is possible that the user's configuration is a compilation of the parameters passed back from RADIUS, the IOLAN parameters if the user has also been set up as a local user in the IOLAN, and the Default User's parameters for any parameters that have not been set by either RADIUS or the user's local configuration.

Supported RADIUS Parameters

This section describes the attributes which will be accepted by the IOLAN from a RADIUS server in response to an authentication request.

Type	Name	Description
1	User-Name	The name of the user to be authenticated.
2	User-Password	The password of the user to be authenticated.

Type	Name	Description
6	Service-Type	Indicates the service to use to connect the user to the IOLAN. A value of 6 indicates administrative access to the IOLAN. Supported values are: ● 1—Login ● 3—Callback-Login Equivalent to the IOLAN **User Service** set by Type 15, Login-Service. ● 2—Framed ● 4—Callback-Framed Equivalent to the IOLAN **User Service** set by Type 7, Framed-Protocol. ● 7—NAS prompt ● 9—Callback NAS-prompt Equivalent to IOLAN **User Service DSLogin**. ● 6—Administrative User ● 11—Callback Administrative User Equivalent to IOLAN **User Service DSLogin** and the User gets Admin privileges.
7	Framed-Protocol	The link layer protocol to be used by this user. Determines the User Service when Service-Type is set to Framed or Callback-Framed. Supported values are: ● 1—PPP ● 2—SLIP
8	Framed-IP-Address	The IP Address to be assigned to this user for PPP or SLIP.
9	Framed-IP-Netmask	The subnet to be assigned to this user for PPP or SLIP.
12	Framed-MTU	Attribute indicates the Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) to be configured for the user, when it is not negotiated by some other means such as PPP.
13	Framed-Compression	Indicates a compression protocol to be used for the PPP or SLIP link. Supported value is: ● 1—Van Jacobson TCP/IP compression.
14	Login-Host	Indicates the host with which the user can connect to when the Service-Type is set to **1** (Login) or **3** (Callback-Login).
15	Login-Service	Indicates the IOLAN **User Service** to use to connect the user a host. Supported values are: ● 0—Telnet ● 1—Rlogin ● 2—TCP Clear ● 5—SSH ● 6—SSL Raw

Type	Name	Description
16	Login-TCP-Port	Indicates the TCP port with which the user is to be connected when the Service-Type is set to **1** (Login) or **3** (Callback-Login).
19	Callback-Number	Specifies the callback phone number. This is the same implementation as **20** (Callback-ID), but takes precedence if **20** is set.
20	Callback-ID	Specifies the callback phone number. This is the same implementation as **19** (Callback-Number), but **19** takes precedence if both are set.
26	Vendor-Specific	Perle's defined attributes for line access rights and user level. See ***Perle RADIUS Dictionary Example*** on page 320 for an example of this file. Line Access Rights for port ***n*** (where ***n*** is the line number): Name: Perle-Line-Access-Port-***n*** Type: 100 + ***n*** Data Type: Integer Value: Disabled (0), ReadWrite(1), ReadInput(2), ReadInputWrite (3), ReadOutput (4), ReadOutputWrite (5), ReadOutputInput (6), ReadOutputInputWrite (7) Name: Perle-User-Level Type: 100 Data Type: Integer Value: Admin(1), Normal(2), Restricted(3), Menu(4)
27	Session-Timeout	Maximum number of seconds the user will be allowed to stay logged on.
28	Idle-Timeout	Use this timer to close a connection because of inactivity. When the Idle-Timeout expires, the IOLAN will end the connection. The maximum value is 4294967 seconds (about 49 days). A value of 0 (zero) means the Idle-Timeout will not expire, so the connection is permanently open.
96	Framed-Interface-Id	The remote IPv6 interface identifier for the remote end of the PPP link.

Accounting Message

This section describes the attributes which will be included by the IOLAN when sending an accounting message to the RADIUS server.

Type	Name	Description
1	User-Name	The name of the user to be authenticated.
4	NAS-IP-Address	IP Address of IOLAN LAN interface.
5	NAS	Port Line number of IOLAN.
6	Service-Type	Indicates the service to use to connect the user to the IOLAN. A value of 6 indicates administrative access to the IOLAN. Supported values are: • 1—Login • 3—Callback-Login Equivalent to the IOLAN **User Service** set by Type 15, Login-Service. • 2—Framed • 4—Callback-Framed Equivalent to the IOLAN **User Service** set by Type 7, Framed-Protocol. • 7—NAS prompt • 9—Callback NAS-prompt Equivalent to IOLAN **User Service DSPrompt**. • 6—Administrative User • 11—Callback Administrative User Equivalent to IOLAN **User Service DSPrompt** and the User gets Admin privileges.
40	Acct-Status-Type	Indicates if this is the beginning or end of a session. Supported values are: 1 = Start 2 =Stop.
42	Acct-Input-Octets	Number of bytes which were received from the user during this session.
43	Acct-Output-Octets	Number of bytes where were transmitted to the user during this session.
44	Acct-Session-ID	A string which identifies the session. The same string must be used in the start and stop messages.
45	Acct-Authentic	Indicates how the user was authenticated. Supported values are: 1 = Local 2 = RADIUS.
46	Acct-Session-Time	Number of seconds for which the user has been connected to a specific session.
47	Acct-Input-Packets	Number of packets which were received from the user during this session.
48	Acct-Output-Packets	Number of packets which were transmitted to the user during this session.
49	Acct-Terminate-Cause	Indicates how the session was terminated: Supported values include: 1 = User Request 2= Lost Carrier 3=Lost Service 4= Idle Timeout 5= Session Timeout 14 = Port Suspended 16 = Callback.

Mapped RADIUS Parameters to IOLAN Parameters

When authentication is being done by RADIUS, there are several **Serial Port** and **User** parameters that can be set by the RADIUS server. Any parameters sent by that RADIUS server that are not supported by the IOLAN are discarded. Below is a list of the RADIUS parameters and their IOLAN parameters:

RADIUS Parameter	IOLAN Parameter
User-Service	This has no IOLAN field, although it needs to be set to **`Framed-User`** in the RADIUS server.
Framed-Protocol	Set to SLIP or PPP service.
Framed-Address	Remote IP Address field under either SLIP or PPP. *Caution:* the exception to the above rule is a **`Framed-Address`** value of 255.255.255.254. When this value is specified in the RADIUS file, the unit will use the Remote IP address configured for a PPP line in the IOLAN.
Framed-Netmask	**IPv4 Subnet Mask** field under either **SLIP** or **PPP**.
Framed-Compression	**VJ Compression** field under either **SLIP** or **PPP**.
Framed-MTU	**MTU** field under **SLIP**. **MRU** field under **PPP**.
Idle-Timeout	**Idle Timeout** under the serial port **Advanced** settings.
Login-Service	Corresponds to one of the following **User Service** parameters: **Telnet**, **Rlogin**, **TCP Clear**, **SSH**, or **SSL Raw**.
Session-Timeout	**Session Timeout** under the serial port **Advanced** settings.
Callback-Number	Combination of the **Enable Callback** and **Phone Numbe**r fields under **User**, **Advanced** settings.
Callback-ID	Combination of the **Enable Callback** and **Phone Numbe**r fields under **User**, **Advanced** settings.

Perle RADIUS Dictionary Example

The IOLAN has defined Vendor Specific RADIUS attributes in order for the RADIUS server to be configured to support the IOLAN features of Line Access Rights and User Level. These attributes have been defined in ***Supported RADIUS Parameters*** on page 315 to allow the RADIUS server to be configured for RADIUS users to have this level of configuration.

See below for an example of the Perle defined attributes for the RADIUS server for a 4-port IOLAN (although the dictionary can contain 48 ports, even if they are not all defined):

```
# Perle dictionary.
#
#       Perle Systems Ltd.
#       http://www.perle.com/
#
#       Enable by putting the line "$INCLUDE dictionary.perle" into
#       the main dictionary file.
#
# Version:  1.20  30-Nov-2005  Add new line access right values for ports
#                              up to 49.
# Version:  1.10  11-Nov-2003  Add new line access right values
# Version:  1.00  17-Jul-2003  original release for vendor specific field
#                                 support
#

VENDOR  Perle       1966

#   Perle Extensions

ATTRIBUTE   Perle-User-Level            100 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-1    101 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-2    102 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-3    103 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-4    104 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-5    105 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-6    106 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-7    107 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-8    108 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-9    109 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-10   110 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-11   111 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-12   112 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-13   113 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-14   114 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-15   115 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-16   116 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-17   117 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-18   118 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-19   119 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-20   120 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-21   121 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-22   122 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-23   123 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-24   124 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-25   125 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-26   126 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-27   127 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-28   128 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-29   129 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-30   130 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-31   131 integer Perle
```

```
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-32   132 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-33   133 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-34   134 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-35   135 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-36   136 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-37   137 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-38   138 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-39   139 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-40   140 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-41   141 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-42   142 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-43   143 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-44   144 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-45   145 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-46   146 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-47   147 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-48   148 integer Perle
ATTRIBUTE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-49   149 integer Perle

#   Perle User Level Values

VALUE   Perle-User-Level    Admin           1
VALUE   Perle-User-Level    Normal          2
VALUE   Perle-User-Level    Restricted      3
VALUE   Perle-User-Level    Menu            4

#   Perle Line Access Right Values

VALUE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-1    Disabled                0
VALUE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-1    Read-Write              1
VALUE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-1    Read-Input              2
VALUE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-1    Read-Input-Write        3
VALUE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-1    Read-Output             4
VALUE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-1    Read-Output-Write       5
VALUE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-1    Read-Output-Input       6
VALUE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-1    Read-Output-Input-Write 7

VALUE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-2    Disabled                0
VALUE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-2    Read-Write              1
VALUE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-2    Read-Input              2
VALUE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-2    Read-Input-Write        3
VALUE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-2    Read-Output             4
VALUE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-2    Read-Output-Write       5
VALUE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-2    Read-Output-Input       6
VALUE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-2    Read-Output-Input-Write 7

VALUE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-3    Disabled                0
VALUE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-3    Read-Write              1
VALUE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-3    Read-Input              2
VALUE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-3    Read-Input-Write        3
VALUE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-3    Read-Output             4
VALUE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-3    Read-Output-Write       5
VALUE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-3    Read-Output-Input       6
VALUE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-3    Read-Output-Input-Write 7

VALUE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-4    Disabled                0
VALUE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-4    Read-Write              1
VALUE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-4    Read-Input              2
VALUE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-4    Read-Input-Write        3
```

```
VALUE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-4    Read-Output             4
VALUE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-4    Read-Output-Write       5
VALUE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-4    Read-Output-Input       6
VALUE   Perle-Line-Access-Port-4    Read-Output-Input-Write 7

...
```

TACACS+

Although TACACS+ can be used strictly for external authentication, it can also be used to configure Serial Port and User parameters. Therefore, when a user is being authenticated using TACACS+, it is possible that the user's configuration is a compilation of the parameters passed back from the TACACS+ authentication server, the User's IOLAN parameters if the user has also been set up as a local user in the IOLAN, and the Default User's parameters for any parameters that have not been set by either TACACS+ or the User's local configuration.

User and Serial Port parameters can be passed to the IOLAN after authentication for users accessing the IOLAN from the serial side and users accessing the IOLAN from the Ethernet side connections.

Accessing the IOLAN Through a Serial Port Users

This section describes the attributes which will be accepted by the IOLAN from a TACACS+ server in response to an authentication request for Direct Users.

Name	Value(s)	Description
priv-lvl	12-15 (Admin) 8-11 (Normal) 4-7 (Restricted) 0-3 (Menu)	The IOLAN privilege level.
Perle_User_Service	0 (Telnet) 1 (Rlogin) 2 (TCP_Clear) 3 (SLIP) 4 (PPP) 5 (SSH) 6 (SSL_Raw)	Corresponds to the User Service setting in the IOLAN. If no value is specified, DSPrompt is the default User Service.

service = telnet
{
addr =
port =
}
	
	IPv4 or IPv6 address
	TCP port number
	
		Settings when Perle_User_Service is set to 0.

service = rlogin
{
addr =
}
	
	IPv4 or IPv6 address
	
		Settings when Perle_User_Service is set to 1.

service = tcp_clear
{
addr =
port =
}
	
	IPv4 or IPv6 address
	TCP port number
	
		Settings when Perle_User_Service is set to 2.

Name	Value(s)	Description
service = slip		Settings when Perle_User_Service is set to 3.
{		
routing =	true (Send and Listen) false (None)	
addr =	IPv4 or IPv6 address	
}		
service = ppp		Settings when Perle_User_Service is set to 4.
{		
routing =	true (Send and Listen) false (None)	
addr =	IPv4 or IPv6 address	
port =	TCP port number	
ppp-vj-slot-compression	true or false	
callback-dialstring	phone number, no punctuation	
}		
service = ssh		Settings when Perle_User_Service is set to 5.
{		
addr =	IPv4 or IPv6 address	
port =	TCP port number	
}		
service = ssl_raw		Settings when Perle_User_Service is set to 6.
{		
addr =	IPv4 or IPv6 address	
port =	TCP port number	
}		

Accessing the IOLAN Through a Serial Port User Example Settings

The following example shows the parameters that can be set for users who are accessing the IOLAN from the serial side. These settings should be included in the TACACS+ user configuration file.

```
Service = EXEC
{
priv-lvl = x            // x = 12-15 (Admin)
                        // x = 8-11  (Normal)
                        // x = 4-7   (Restricted)
                        // x = 0-3   (Menu)

timeout=x                       // x = session timeout in seconds

idletime=x                      // x = Idle timeout in seconds

Perle_User_Service = x          // x = 0 Telnet
                                // x = 1 Rlogin
                                // x = 2 TCP_Clear
                                // x = 3 SLIP
                                // x = 4 PPP
                                // x = 5 SSH
                                // x = 6 SSL_RAW
                                // If not specified, command prompt
}

// Depending on what Perle_User_Service is set to

service = telnet
{
addr = x.x.x.x       // ipv4 or ipv6 addr
port = x             // tcp_port #
}

service = rlogin
{
addr = x.x.x.x        // ipv4 or ipv6 addr
}

service = tcp_clear
{
addr = x.x.x.x       // ipv4 or ipv6 addr
port = x             // tcp_port #
}


service = slip
{
routing=x         // x = true (Send and Listen)
                  // x = false (None)
addr = x.x.x.x    // ipv4 addr
}
```

```
service = ppp
{
routing=x         // x = true (Send and Listen)
                  // x = false (None)
addr = x.x.x.x    // ipv4 or ipv6 addr
ppp-vj-slot-compression = x // x =true or false
callback-dialstring = x // x=number to callback on
}

service = ssh
{
addr = x.x.x.x   // ipv4 or ipv6 addr
port = x             // tcp_port #
}

service = ssl_raw
{
addr = x.x.x.x   // ipv4 or ipv6 addr
port = x             // tcp_port #
}
```

Accessing the IOLAN from the Network Users

This section describes the attributes which will be accepted by the IOLAN from a TACACS+ server in response to an authentication request for Reverse Users. The TACACS+ **`service`** needs to be set to **`EXEC`**/**`raccess`** or just **`raccess`** on the well known port .

Name	Value(s)	Description
priv-lvl	12-15 (Admin) 8-11 (Normal) 4-7 (Restricted) 0-3 (Menu)	The IOLAN privilege level.
Perle_Line_Access_#	# = port number 0 (Disabled) 1 (ReadWrite) 2 (ReadInput) 3 (ReadInputWrite) 4 (ReadOuptut) 5 (ReadOutputWrite) 6 (ReadOutputInput) 7 (ReadOuputWrite)	For the specified line, provides the User's Line Access rights.
timeout	0-4294967	Session timeout in seconds.
idletime	0-4294967	Idle timeout in seconds

Accessing the IOLAN from the Network User Example Settings

The following example shows the parameters that can be set for users who are accessing the IOLAN from the Ethernet side. These settings should be included in the TACACS+ user configuration file.

```
service = raccess
{
priv-lvl = x            // x = 12-15 (Admin)
                        // x = 8-11 (Normal)
                        // x = 4-7 (Restricted)
                        // x = 0-3 (Menu)

Perle_Line_Access_i=x   // i = port number
                        // x = 0 (Diasabled)
                        // x = 1 (ReadWrite)
                        // x = 2 (ReadInput)
                        // x = 3 (ReadInputWrite)
                        // x = 4 (ReadOuptut)
                        // x = 5 (ReadOutputWrite)
                        // x = 6 (ReadOutputInput)
                        // x = 7 (ReadOuputWrite)
timeout=x               // x = session timeout in seconds

idletime=x              // x = Idle timeout in seconds
}
```

B SSL/TLS Ciphers

Introduction

This appendix contains a table that shows valid SSL/TLS cipher combinations.

Valid SSL/TLS Ciphers

This chart displays all of the valid SSL/TLS combinations.

Full Name	SSL Ver.	Key-Exchange	Authentication	Encryption	Key-Size	HMAC
ADH-AES256-SHA	SSLv3	Kx=DH	Au=None	Enc=AES	256	Mac=SHA1
DHE-RSA-AES256-SHA	SSLv3	Kx=DH	Au=RSA	Enc=AES	256	Mac=SHA1
DHE-DSS-AES256-SHA	SSLv3	Kx=DH	Au=DSS	Enc=AES	256	Mac=SHA1
AES256-SHA	SSLv3	Kx=RSA	Au=RSA	Enc=AES	256	Mac=SHA1
EDH-RSA-DES-CBC3-SHA	SSLv3	Kx=DH	Au=RSA	Enc=3DES	168	Mac=SHA1
EDH-DSS-DES-CBC3-SHA	SSLv3	Kx=DH	Au=DSS	Enc=3DES	168	Mac=SHA1
DES-CBC3-SHA	SSLv3	Kx=RSA	Au=RSA	Enc=3DES	168	Mac=SHA1
DES-CBC3-MD5	SSLv2	Kx=RSA	Au=RSA	Enc=3DES	168	Mac=MD5
ADH-AES128-SHA	SSLv3	Kx=DH	Au=None	Enc=AES	128	Mac=SHA1
DHE-RSA-AES128-SHA	SSLv3	Kx=DH	Au=RSA	Enc=AES	128	Mac=SHA1
DHE-DSS-AES128-SHA	SSLv3	Kx=DH	Au=DSS	Enc=AES	128	Mac=SHA1
AES128-SHA	SSLv3	Kx=RSA	Au=RSA	Enc=AES	128	Mac=SHA1
RC2-CBC-MD5	SSLv2	Kx=RSA	Au=RSA	Enc=RC2	128	Mac=MD5
DHE-DSS-RC4-SHA	SSLv3	Kx=DH	Au=DSS	Enc=RC4	128	Mac=SHA1
RC4-SHA	SSLv3	Kx=RSA	Au=RSA	Enc=RC4	128	Mac=SHA1
RC4-MD5	SSLv3	Kx=RSA	Au=RSA	Enc=RC4	128	Mac=MD5
RC4-MD5	SSLv2	Kx=RSA	Au=RSA	Enc=RC4	128	Mac=MD5
RC4-64-MD5	SSLv2	Kx=RSA	Au=RSA	Enc=RC4	64	Mac=MD5
EDH-RSA-DES-CBC-SHA	SSLv3	Kx=DH	Au=RSA	Enc=DES	56	Mac=SHA1
EDH-DSS-DES-CBC-SHA	SSLv3	Kx=DH	Au=DSS	Enc=DES	56	Mac=SHA1
DES-CBC-SHA	SSLv3	Kx=RSA	Au=RSA	Enc=DES	56	Mac=SHA1

Full Name	SSL Ver.	Key-Exchange	Authentication	Encryption	Key-Size	HMAC
DES-CBC-MD5	SSLv2	Kx=RSA	Au=RSA	Enc=DES	56	Mac=MD5
EXP-EDH-RSA-DES-CBC-SHA	SSLv3	Kx=DH(512)	Au=RSA	Enc=DES	40	Mac=SHA1
EXP-EDH-DSS-DES-CBC-SHA	SSLv3	Kx=DH(512)	Au=DSS	Enc=DES	40	Mac=SHA1
EXP-DES-CBC-SHA	SSLv3	Kx=RSA(512)	Au=RSA	Enc=DES	40	Mac=SHA1
EXP-RC2-CBC-MD5	SSLv3	Kx=RSA(512)	Au=RSA	Enc=RC2	40	Mac=MD5
ADH-DES-CBC3-SHA	SSLv3	Kx=DH	Au=None	Enc=3DES	168	Mac=SHA1
ADH-DES-CBC-SHA	SSLv3	Kx=DH	Au=None	Enc=DES	56	Mac=SHA1
EXP-ADH-DES-CBC-SHA	SSLv3	Kx=DH(512)	Au=None	Enc=DES	40	Mac=SHA1
ADH-RC4-MD5	SSLv3	Kx=DH	Au=None	Enc=RC4	128	Mac=MD5
EXP-ADH-RC4-MD5	SSLv3	Kx=DH(512)	Au=None	Enc=RC4	40	Mac=MD5
EXP-RC2-CBC-MD5	SSLv2	Kx=RSA(512)	Au=RSA	Enc=RC2	40	Mac=MD5
EXP-RC4-MD5	SSLv3	Kx=RSA(512)	Au=RSA	Enc=RC4	40	Mac=MD5
EXP-RC4-MD5	SSLv2	Kx=RSA(512)	Au=RSA	Enc=RC4	40	Mac=MD5

Virtual Modem AT Commands

Virtual Modem Initialization Commands

Note: Virtual Modem initialization commands are only supported on IOLAN firmware and configurators version 3.2 or higher.

You can initialize the modem connection using any of the following commands:

Command	Description	Options
ATQn	Quite mode. Determines if result codes will be sent to the connected terminal. Basic results codes are OK, CONNECT, RING, NO CARRIER, and ERROR. Setting quite mode also suppresses the "RING" message for incoming calls.	n=0, no result codes will be sent. n=1, result codes will be sent. (default)
ATVn	Verbose mode. Determines if result codes are displayed as text or numeric values.	n=0, display as numeric values. n=1, display as text. (default)
ATEn	Echo mode. Determines whether characters sent from the serial device will be echoed back by the IOLAN when VModem is in "command" mode.	n=0, disable echo. n=1, enable echo. (default)
+++ATH	Hang up. This command instructs the IOLAN to terminate the current session and go into "command" mode.	
ATA	Answer call. Instructs the VModem to accept connection requests. VModem will give the terminal up to 3 minutes to answer the call. If the ATA is not received within 3 minutes, all pending sync messages will be discarded.	
ATI0	Return the modem manufacturer name.	
ATI3	Return the modem model name.	
ATS0	Sets the value of the S0 register. The S0 register controls the "auto answer" behavior. In "manual" mode, the IOLAN will not accept incoming sessions until an ATA is issued by the serial device. In "auto answer" mode, the IOLAN will automatically accept an incoming connection request.	Register=0, sets "manual answer" mode Register=1-255, "auto answer" mode (default)

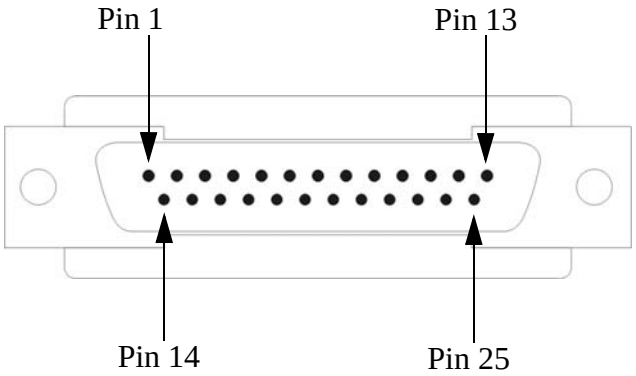
Command	Description	Options
AT&Z1	Set command allows the user to store an IP address and port number or phone number to use when making a connection. The user will issue an ATDS1 to cause the IOLAN to initiate the connection.	
AT&Sn	Sets the behavior of IOLAN's DTR signal. (DSR from a DCE perspective)	n=0, DTR signal always high. (default) n=2, DTR signal acts as DCD. n=3, DTR signal acts as RI.
AT&Rn	Sets the behavior of IOLAN's RTS signal. (CTS from a DCE perspective) If line is configured for hardware flow control, the RTS is used for this purpose and the setting of this command is ignored.	n=0, RTS always high. (default). n=3, RTS signal acts as DCD. n=4, RTS signal acts as RI.
AT&Cn	Sets the behaviour of the DCD signal.	n=0, DCD always on. n=1, DCD follows state of connection (off when no connection, on when TCP connection exists). (default)
AT&F	Sets the modes back to the factory defaults. This is a hard-coded default configuration which does not look at any user configuration.	
ATS2	Sets the value of the S2 register. The S2 register controls which character is used to enter "command" mode. (this is the potential replacement for the +++ (default) in front of the ATH command). This register will hold the hex value of the "escape" character. Any value > 27 will disable the ability to escape into "command" mode.	
ATS12	Sets the value of the S12 register. The S12 register controls the minimum length of idle time which must elapse between the receipt of the escape character and the A (first character of the ATH sequence). Units are 1/50th of a second. The default is 50 = 1 second.	
ATO	(ATD with no phone number) Establishes a connection using the IP and port specified in the telephone number field.	
ATDS1	Establishes a connection using the IP and port (or phone number) specified in the **Phone Number** field (stored by the AT&Z1 command).	

D Pinouts and Cabling Diagrams

Serial Pinouts

DB25 Male

This section defines the pinouts for the DB25 male connection used on the 1-port IOLAN. The power out pin, Pin 9, is available in the SDS model only.



The following table provides pinout information:

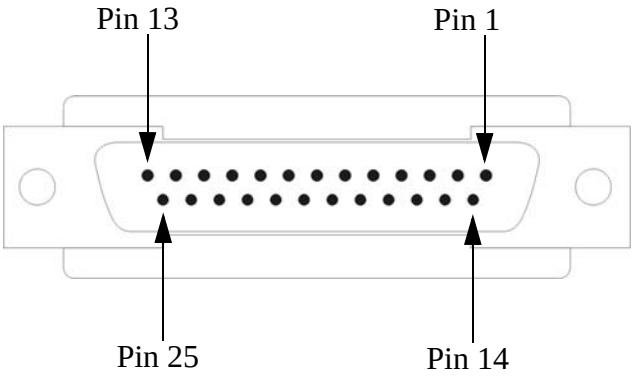
Pinout	EIA-232	EIA-422	EIA-485 Full Duplex	EIA-485 Half Duplex
1	Shield	Shield	Shield	Shield
2 (out)	TxD			
3 (in)	RxD			
4 (out)	RTS			
5 (in)	CTS			
6 (in)	DSR			
7	GND	GND	GND	GND
8 (in)	DCD			
9	Power out	Power out	Power out	Power out
12	Power in	Power in	Power in	Power in
13		CTS-		
14		TxD+	TxD+	DATA+
15		TxD-	TxD-	DATA-

Pinout	EIA-232	EIA-422	EIA-485 Full Duplex	EIA-485 Half Duplex
18		RTS+		
19		RTS-		
20 (out)	DTR			
21		RxD+	RxD+	
22		RxD-	RxD-	
25		CTS+		

The power in pin, pin 12, can be 9-30V DC.

DB25 Female

This section defines the pinouts for the DB25 female connection used on the 1-port IOLAN. The power out pin, Pin 9, is available in the SDS model only.



The following table provides pinout information:

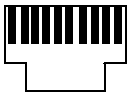
Pinout	EIA-232	EIA-422	EIA-485 Full Duplex	EIA-485 Half Duplex
1	Shield	Shield	Shield	Shield
2 (in)	RxD			
3 (out)	TxD			
4 (in)	CTS			
5 (out)	RTS			
6 (out)	DTR			
7	GND	GND	GND	GND
8 (in)	DCD			
9	Power out	Power out	Power out	Power out
12	Power in	Power in	Power in	Power in
13		RTS-		
14		RxD+	RxD+	

Pinout	EIA-232	EIA-422	EIA-485 Full Duplex	EIA-485 Half Duplex
15		RxD-	RxD-	
18		CTS+		
19		CTS-		
20 (in)	DSR			
21		TxD+	TxD+	DATA+
22		TxD-	TxD-	DATA-
25		RTS+		

The power in pin, pin 12, can be 9-30V DC.

RJ45

This section defines the pinouts for the RJ45 connection (see ***RJ45 SCS48C/SCS32C/SCS16C/SCS8C*** on page 334 for the SCS48C model). 1-port, 2-port, and 4-port desktop IOLAN models have a 10-pin RJ45 connector and all rack mount IOLAN models have an 8-pin RJ45 connector. These pinouts do not apply to I/O models.

Pin 1  Pin 10

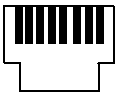
The following table provides pinout information:

Pinout 10-pin	Pinout 8-pin	EIA-232	EIA-422	EIA-485 Full Duplex	EIA-485 Half Duplex
1		Power In	Power In	Power In	Power In
2 (in)	1	DCD			
3 (out)	2	RTS	TxD+	TxD+	DATA+
4 (in)	3	DSR			
5 (out)	4	TxD	TxD-	TxD-	DATA-
6 (in)	5	RxD	RxD+	RxD+	
7	6	GND	GND	GND	GND
8 (in)	7	CTS	RxD-	RxD-	
9 (out)	8	DTR			
10		Power out	Power out	Power out	Power out

The power in pin, Pin 1, can be 9-30V DC. The 2-port IOLAN has power in on Port 2 only. The 4-port IOLAN has power in on Port 4 only.

RJ45 SCS48C/SCS32C/SCS16C/SCS8C

This section defines the pinouts for the RJ45 connection for the SCS48C/SCS32C/SCS16C/SCS8C models only. The Admin port and the serial ports have different pinouts as shown in the table.

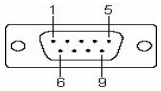
Pin 1  Pin 8

The following table provides pinout information:

Pinout 8-pin	EIA-232 Admin Port	EIA-232 Serial Ports
1	DCD (in)	RTS (out)
2	RTS (out)	DTR (out)
3	DSR (in)	TxD (out)
4	TxD (out)	GND
5	RxD (in)	GND
6	GND	RxD (in)
7	CTS (in)	DSR (in)
8	DTR (out)	CTS (in)

DB9 Male (Serial Only)

This section defines the pinouts for the DB9 male connection used on the 1-port IOLAN that is serial only (not I/O).

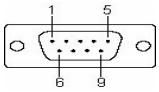


The following table provides pinout information:

Pinout 9-pin	EIA-232	EIA-422/485 Full Duplex	EIA-485 Half Duplex
1 (in)	DCD		
2 (in)	RxD	RxD+	
3 (out)	TxD	TxD+	TxD+/RxD+
4 (out)	DTR		
5	GND	GND	GND
6 (in)	DSR	RxD-	
7	RTS		
8 (in)	CTS		
9		TxD-	TxD-/RxD-

DB9 Male I/O

This section defines the pinouts for the DB9 male connection used on the 1-port IOLAN I/O models.

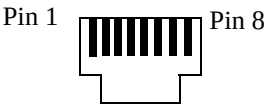


The following table provides pinout information:

Pinout 9-pin	EIA-232	EIA-422/485 Full Duplex	EIA-485 Half Duplex
1(in)	DCD		
2 (in)	RxD	RxD+	
3 (out)	TxD	TxD-	TxD-/RxD-
4 (out)	DTR		
5	GND	GND	GND
6 (in)	DSR	RxD-	
7	RTS	TxD+	TxD+/RxD+
8 (in)	CTS		
9			

Power Over Ethernet Pinouts

This section defines the pinouts for the RJ45 Ethernet connection used on the IOLAN SDS P or IOLAN SCS P models.



The following table provides pinout information:

Pinout	Standard	802.3AF Unit-4 Wire	802.3AF Unit-8 Wire
1	Tx+	Tx+/+Voltage	Tx+
2	Tx-	Tx-/+Voltage	Tx-
3	Rx+	Rx+/-Voltage	Rx+
4	N/C		+Voltage
5	N/C		+Voltage
6	Rx-	Rx-/-Voltage	Rx-
7	N/C		-Voltage
8	N/C		-Voltage

EIA-232 Cabling Diagrams

This section shows how to create EIA-232 cables that are compatible with the Device Server.

Terminal DB25 Connector

The following diagrams show how the null modem cable should be configured when connecting to a terminal DB25.

DB25 Male

IOLAN DS1 DB25 (DTE)		Terminal DB25 (DTE)
2 (TxD)	——	3 (RxD)
3 (RxD)	——	2 (TxD)
4 (RTS)	——	5 (CTS)
5 (CTS)	——	4 (RTS)
6 (DSR)	——	20 (DTR)
7 (GND)	——	7 (GND)
20 (DTR)	——	6 (DSR)

DB25 Female

IOLAN DS1 DB25 (DCE)		Terminal DB25 (DTE)
3 (TxD)	——	3 (RxD)
2 (RxD)	——	2 (TxD)
5 (RTS)	——	5 (CTS)
4 (CTS)	——	4 (RTS)
20 (DSR)	——	20 (DTR)
7 (GND)	——	7 (GND)
6 (DTR)	——	6 (DSR)

RJ45

This cabling table does not apply to the SCS48C model.

IOLAN RJ45				Terminal DB25 (DTE)
10-pin		**8-pin**		
4	(DSR)	3	——	20 (DTR)
3	(RTS)	2	——	5 (CTS)
5	(TxD)	4	——	3 (RxD)
6	(RxD)	5	——	2 (TxD)
7	(GND)	6	——	7 (GND)
8	(CTS)	7	——	4 (RTS)
9	(DTR)	8	——	6 (DSR)

DB9 Male

IOLAN DS1 DB9 Male		Terminal DB25 (DTE)
3 (TxD)	——	3 (RxD)
2 (RxD)	——	2 (TxD)
7 (RTS)	——	5 (CTS)
8 (CTS)	——	4 (RTS)
6 (DSR)	——	20 (DTR)
5 (GND)	——	7 (GND)
4 (DTR)	——	6 (DSR)

Modem DB25 Connector

The following diagrams show how a standard straight through cable should be configured when connecting to a DB25 modem.

DB25 Male

IOLAN DS1 DB25 (DTE)		Modem DB25 (DCE)
2 (TxD)	———	2 (RxD)
3 (RxD)	———	3 (TxD)
4 (RTS)	———	4 (CTS)
5 (CTS)	———	5 (RTS)
6 (DSR)	———	6 (DSR)
7 (GND)	———	7 (GND)
8 (DCD)	———	8 (DCD)
20 (DTR)	———	20 (DTR)

RJ45

IOLAN RJ45				Modem DB25 (DCE)
10-pin		8-pin		
2	(DCD)	1	———	8 (DCD)
3	(RTS)	2	———	4 (CTS)
4	(DSR)	3	———	6 (DSR)
5	(TxD)	4	———	2 (RxD)
6	(RxD)	5	———	3 (TxD)
7	(GND)	6	———	7 (GND)
8	(CTS)	7	———	5 (RTS)
9	(DTR)	8	———	20 (DTR)

DB9 Male

IOLAN DS1 DB9 Male		Modem DB25 (DCE)
1 (DCD)	——	8 (DCD)
2 (RxD)	——	3 (TxD)
3 (TxD)	——	2 (RxD)
4 (DTR)	——	20 (DTR)
5 (GND)	——	7 (GND)
6 (DSR)	——	6 (DSR)
7 (RTS)	——	4 (CTS)
8 (CTS)	——	5 (RTS)

Setting Jumpers

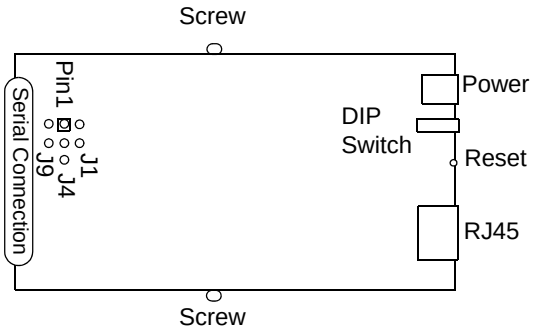
Introduction

The IOLAN contains jumpers that you might need to set before you configure it and put it into production. You can set the power out pin, pin 9, to a fixed 5V DC output or to the external adapter output; this can range from 9-30V DC (if an external adapter is shipped with the IOLAN, it has a 12V DC output); maximum output power is 1 (one) watt per a serial port. By default, the power out pin is set to no power. You can set the IOLAN line termination to **`on`** or **`off`** (this is **`off`** by default) if you are using EIA-422/485 (not applicable for I/O models).

1-Port IOLAN DB25 Male/Female

To change the settings, do the following:

1. Unplug the IOLAN from the electrical outlet and disconnect everything from the box.
2. Open the case by unscrewing the two side screws, one on each side, and lifting off the top of the case. You should see the following:

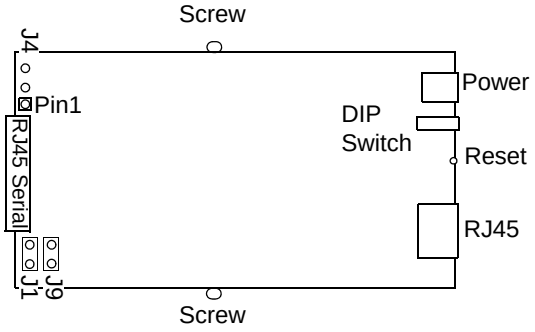


3. To change the power pin out, locate J4. For the fixed 5V DC output, jumper pins 1 and 2. For the output to equal the external adapter input, jumper pins 2 and 3.
4. To turn line termination **on**, locate and jumper both J1 and J9.
5. Close the IOLAN case by replacing the case lid and the two screws. You can now power it on with the new settings.

1-Port IOLAN RJ45

To change the settings, do the following:

1. Unplug the IOLAN from the electrical outlet and disconnect everything from the box.
2. Open the case by unscrewing the two side screws, one on each side, and lifting off the top of the case. You should see the following:

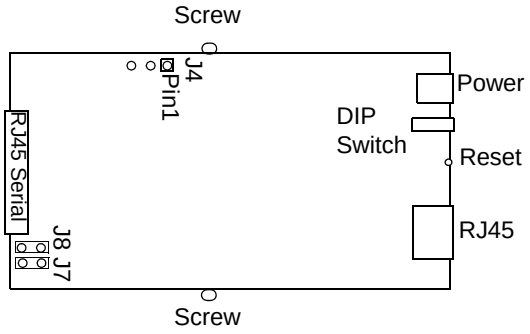


3. To change the power pin out, locate J4. For the fixed 5V DC output, jumper pins 1 and 2. For the output to equal the external adapter input, jumper pins 2 and 3.
4. To turn line termination **on**, locate and jumper both J1 and J9.
5. Close the IOLAN case by replacing the case lid and the two screws. You can now power it on with the new settings.

1-Port IOLAN RJ45 P (Power Over Ethernet)

To change the settings, do the following:

1. Unplug the IOLAN from the electrical outlet and disconnect everything from the box.
2. Open the case by unscrewing the two side screws, one on each side, and lifting off the top of the case. You should see the following:

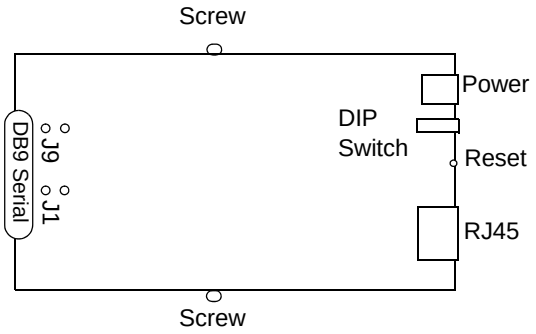


3. To change the power pin out, locate J4. For the fixed 5V DC output, jumper pins 1 and 2. For the output to equal the external adapter input, jumper pins 2 and 3.
4. To turn line termination **on**, locate and jumper both J7 and J8.
5. Close the IOLAN case by replacing the case lid and the two screws. You can now power it on with the new settings.

1-Port IOLAN DB9

To change the settings, do the following:

1. Unplug the IOLAN from the electrical outlet and disconnect everything from the box.
2. Open the case by unscrewing the two side screws, one on each side, and lifting off the top of the case. You should see the following:

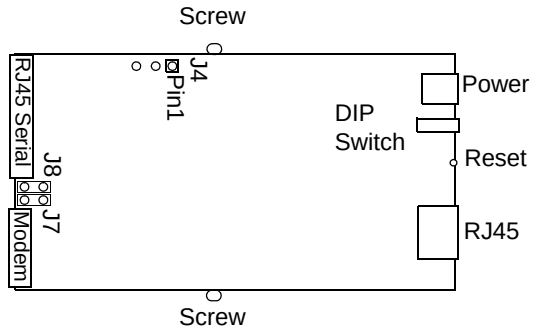


3. To turn line termination **on**, locate and jumper both J1 and J9.
4. Close the IOLAN case by replacing the case lid and the two screws. You can now power it on with the new settings.

2-Port IOLAN SDS1M (Modem)

To change the settings, do the following:

1. Unplug the IOLAN from the electrical outlet and disconnect everything from the box.
2. Open the case by unscrewing the two side screws, one on each side, and lifting off the top of the case. You should see the following:

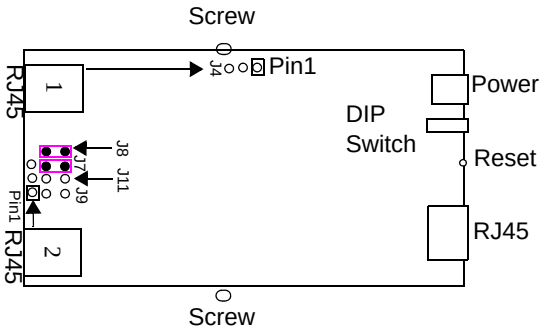


3. To change the power pin out, locate J4. For the fixed 5V DC output, jumper pins 1 and 2. For the output to equal the external adapter input, jumper pins 2 and 3.
4. To turn line termination **on**, locate and jumper both J7 and J8.
5. Close the IOLAN case by replacing the case lid and the two screws. You can now power it on with the new settings.

2-Port IOLAN

To change the settings, do the following:

1. Unplug the IOLAN from the electrical outlet and disconnect everything from the box.
2. Open the case by unscrewing the two side screws, one on each side, and lifting off the top of the case. You should see the following:

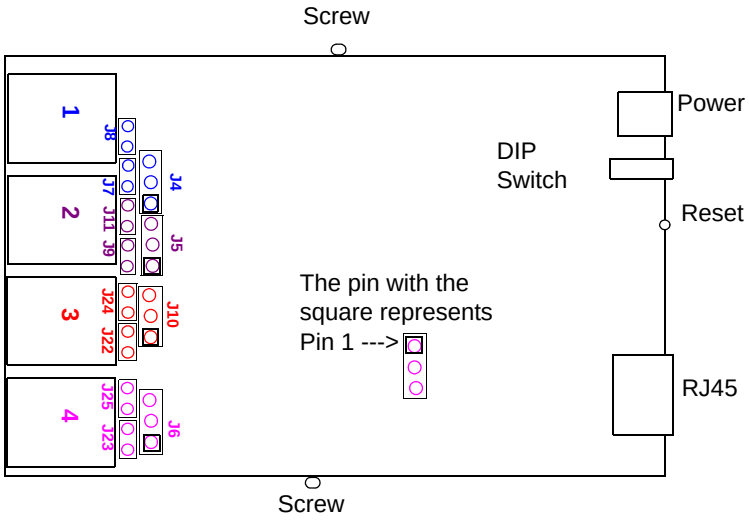


3. To change the power pin out, locate the set of three pins associated with the line you want to set (Line 1 is J4; Line 2 is the set the three pins just to the left of port 2). For the fixed 5V DC output, jumper pins 1 and 2. For the output to equal the external adapter input, jumper pins 2 and 3.
4. To turn line termination **on** for Line 1, locate and jumper both J7 and J8 (as shown in the diagram). To turn line termination **on** for Line 2, locate and jumper both J11 and J9.
5. Close the IOLAN case by replacing the case lid and the two screws. You can now power it on with the new settings.

4-Port Desktop IOLAN

To change the settings, do the following:

1. Unplug the IOLAN from the electrical outlet and disconnect everything from the box.
2. Open the case by unscrewing the two side screws, one on each side, and lifting off the top of the case. You should see the following:



3. The following table describes how to jumper the pins for line termination, fixed 5V output, and for output equal to the external adapter input:

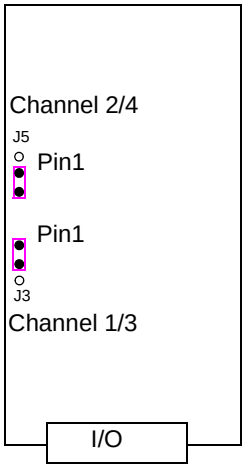
Port/Line #	Line Termination	5V Output	Input Volt Output
1	Jumper J7 and J8	J4, jumper pins 1 & 2	J4, jumper pins 2 & 3
2	Jumper J9 and J11	J5, jumper pins 1 & 2	J5, jumper pins 2 & 3
3	Jumper J22 and J24	J10, jumper pins 1 & 2	J10, jumper pins 2 & 3
4	Jumper J23 and J25	J6, jumper pins 1 & 2	J6, jumper pins 2 & 3

4. Close the IOLAN case by replacing the case lid and the two screws. You can now power it on with the new settings.

Digital I/O Module

IOLANs that have Digital I/O have an input/output jumper that must be set for each channel and must match the software configuration for each channel. Depending on the model, the placement of the digital I/O board can change, so the diagram below shows how to set jumper for any digital board.To change the settings, do the following:

1. Detach the IOLAN from the electrical power source and disconnect everything from the box.
2. Open the case by unscrewing the five side screws, two on each side plus the grounding screw, and lifting off the top of the case. You should see the following configuration for the digital I/O board:



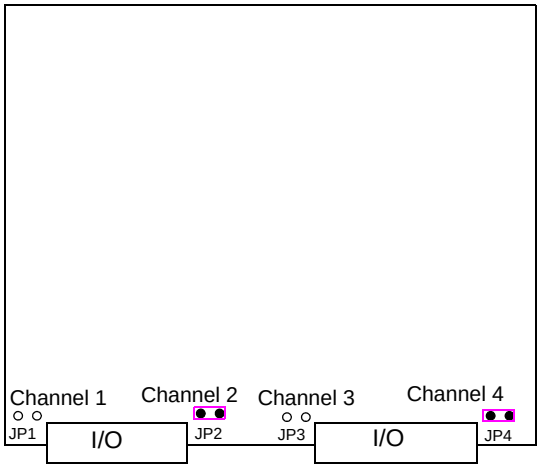
Note: Jumper pins 1 and 2 for Input. Jumper pins 2 and 3 for Output.

3. To configure either Channel 1 or Channel 3 (depending on how many Digital channels your I/O supports and following the mylar channel definitions) for Input, jumper J3 pin 1 and 2 (as shown); this is the default setting. To configure either Channel 2 or Channel 4 (depending on how many Digital channels your I/O supports and following the mylar channel definitions) for Output, jumper J5 pin 2 and 3 (as shown).
4. Close the IOLAN case by replacing the case lid and the five screws. You can now power it on with the new settings.

Analog Input Module

IOLANs that have Analog Input have a voltage/current jumper that must be set for each channel and must match the software configuration for each channel. To change the settings, do the following:

1. Detach the IOLAN from the electrical power source and disconnect everything from the box.
2. Open the case by unscrewing the five side screws, two on each side plus the grounding screw, and lifting off the top of the case. You should see the following configuration for the analog input board:



3. To configure Channel 1 for Voltage, no jumper should be set (as shown); this is the default setting. To configure Channel 2 for Current, jumper both J2 pins (as shown).
4. Close the IOLAN case by replacing the case lid and the five screws. You can now power it on with the new settings.

I/O Wiring Diagrams

Wiring I/O Diagrams

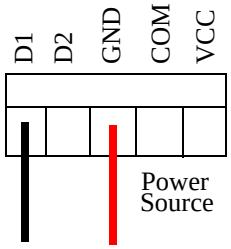
This section describes how to wire the various IOLAN I/O models.

Digital I/O

Make sure the Digital I/O jumpers support the software setting; see ***Digital I/O Module*** on page 346 for jumper settings.

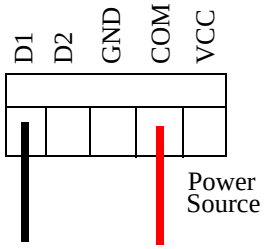
Digital Input Wet Contact

If you are using a wet contact for your Digital input, for channel D1 connect one wire to D1 and the other wire to GND. The power source is supplied by the GND (ground) connector.



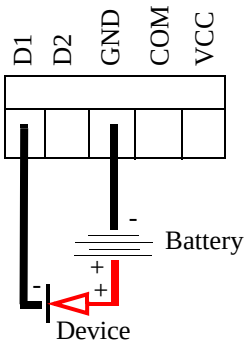
Digital Input Dry Contact

If you are using a dry contact for your Digital input, for channel D1 connect one wire to D1 and the other wire to COM. The power source is supplied by the COM (common) connector.



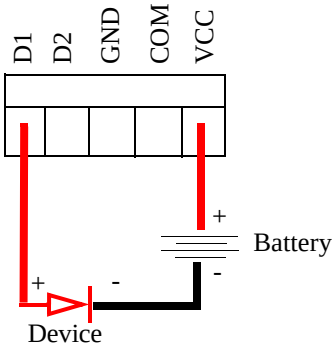
Digital Output Sink

For a Digital output sink (ground) configuration for channel D1, follow the diagram below.



Digital Output Source

For a Digital output source (voltage) configuration for channel D1, follow the diagram below.

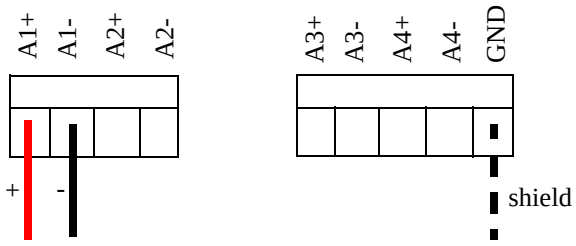


Analog Input

Make sure the Analog jumpers support the software setting; see ***Analog Input Module*** on page 347 for jumper settings.

Current

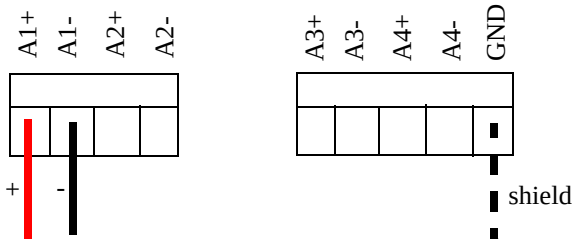
To connect channel A1 with a 2-wire shielded cable, connect the positive wire to A1+, the negative wire to A1-, and optionally the shield to GND.



If you have the positive/negative wires reversed, the output will always read 0 (zero).

Voltage

To connect to Channel A1 with a 2-wire shielded cable, connect the positive wire to A1+, the negative wire to A1-, and optionally the shield to GND.



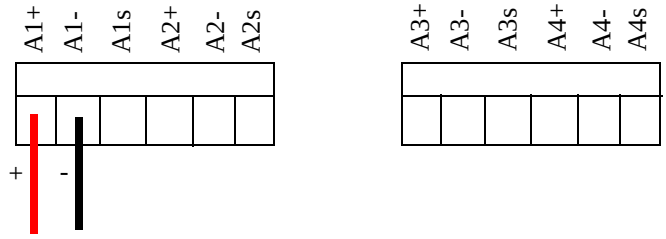
If you have the positive/negative wires reversed, the polarity of the voltage will be reversed.

Temperature Input

If you are using RTD sensors, a short detected status will be displayed if the wires are connected improperly. RTD or thermocouple sensors will display an open detection status when the circuit is broken.

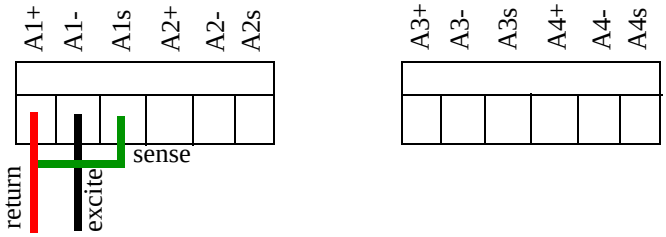
Thermocouple

To connect to Channel A1 with a 2-wire cable, connect the positive wire to A1+ and the negative wire to A1-; you will not be using the A1s connection.



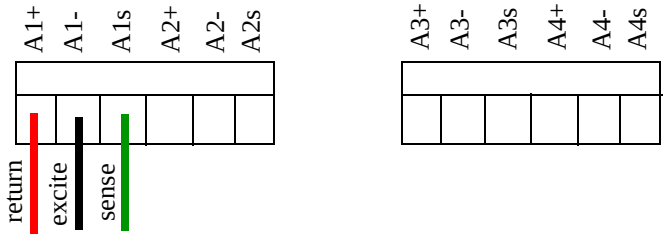
RTD 2-Wire

In a 2-wire RTD configuration, connect the excite wire to A1-, the return wire to A1+, and jumper the sense wire from A1s with a insulated wire going to A1+.



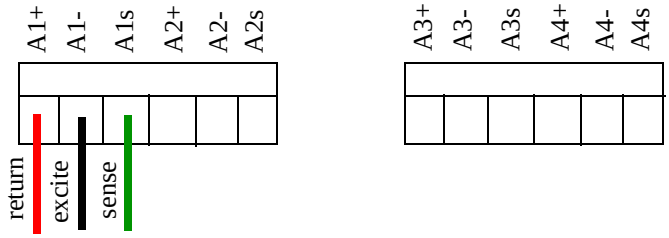
RTD 3-Wire

In a 3-wire RTD configuration, connect the return wire to A1+, the excite wire to A1-, and the sense wire to A1s.



RTD 4-Wire

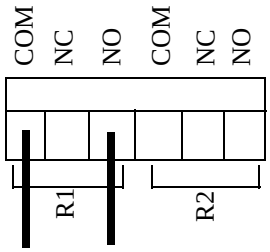
In a 4-wire RTD configuration, connect the return wire to A1+, the excite wire to A1-, the sense wire to A1s, and leave the fourth wire disconnected.



Relay Output

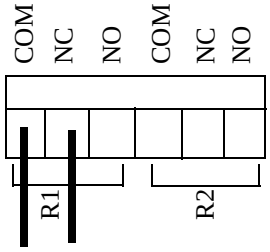
Normally Open Contact

To connect Relay channel R1 for a circuit that is normally inactive, connect one wire to the COM (common) connector and one wire to the NO (normally open) connector.



Normally Closed Contact

To connect relay channel R1 for a circuit that is normally active, connect one wire to the COM (common) connector and one wire to the NC (normally closed) connector.



G Utilities

Introduction

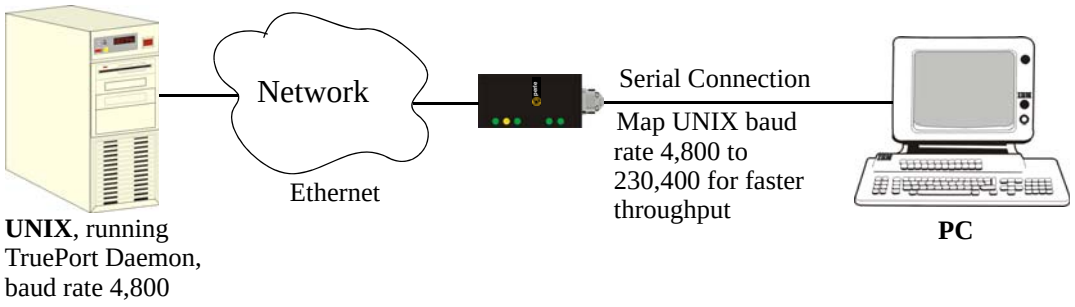
This chapter provides information on the TruePort and Decoder utilities.

TruePort

TruePort is a com port redirector utility for the IOLAN. It can be run in two modes:

- **TruePort Full mode**—This mode allows complete device control and operates exactly like a directly connected serial port. It provides a complete COM port interface between the attached serial device and the network.
- **TruePort Lite mode**—This mode provides a simple raw data interface between the device and the network. Although the port will still operate as a COM port, control signals are ignored. In this mode, the serial communications parameters must be configured on the IOLAN.

You use TruePort when you want to connect extra terminals to a server using the IOLAN rather than a multi-port serial card. TruePort is especially useful when you want to improve data security, as you can enable an SSL/TLS connection between the TruePort host port and the IOLAN. When run on UNIX, TruePort allows you to print directly from a terminal to an attached printer (transparent printing). You can also remap the slow baud rate of your UNIX server to a faster baud rate, as shown below.



Currently, TruePort is supported on Linux, Windows, SCO, Solaris, and others. For a complete list of of supported operating systems, see the Perle website.

For more information, see the *TruePort User Guide* or the *TruePort Installation and Configuration Guide for Windows NT* on the CD-ROM.

API I/O Access Over TruePort

You can access IOLAN I/O data through TruePort using the Perle API. The API uses the command/response format. See the **`ioapiotp.c`** sample program, found on the product CD-ROM, for an example implementation.

API Request Format

All data in the Request must be sent as a single write to the COM port. The API command takes the following format:

Number of Bytes	Value
1	Function Code (in hex): • 01—Get read/write boolean register • 03—Get read/write register • 04—Get read only register • 15—Set read/write boolean register (0x0F) • 16—Set read/write register (0x10)
2	Starting register number (see ***A4/T4 Registers*** on page 251, ***A4D2/A4R2 Registers*** on page 252, or ***D4/D2R2 Registers*** on page 253 for this value).
2	Number of registers to act on starting from the register defined in byte 2 above.
n	Data for write. Some values must be read/written as a unit consisting of 2 consecutive registers. If the request is to write, the data to write follows the number of registers. If accessing registers consisting of 2 bytes or 4 bytes, the data is in big endian (network order) format.

API Response Format

The API command takes the following response format:

Number of Bytes	Value
1	Function code of request if no error. Most significant bit will be set if an error occurred.
1	Length of data in response if no error occurred. If an error occurred, the byte will contain the error code (see the ***Error Codes*** table below).
n	Data response for request (the number of bytes is dependent on the number and type of registers requested). If the request returns 2 or 4 byte values, it will be in big endian (network order) format. If the request returns boolean values, the least significant bit (bit 0) represents the first value requested and bits 1 to 7 represents subsequent boolean values. If more than 8 boolean registers are requested, they are returned in successive bytes.

Error Codes

Code	Name	Description
01	Illegal Function	The function code received in the query is not an allowable action for the server (or slave).
02	Illegal Data Address	The data address received in the query is not an allowable address for the server (or slave).
03	Illegal Data Value	A value contained in the query data field is not an allowable value for server (or slave).
04	Slave Device Failure	An unrecoverable error occurred while the server (or slave) was attempting to perform the requested action.

Decoder

If you are using **Port Buffering NFS Encryption**, you need to run the Decoder utility to view the port buffering logs. See the Readme file to install the Decoder utility on any of the following operating systems:

- Windows 98/NT/ME/2000/Server 2003/XP

  Note: The Windows/DOS platform restricts the converted readable file to an 8.3 filename limitation.

- DOS
- Solaris x86
- Solaris Sparc 32-bit/64-bit

Linux x86 v2.4.x

Accessories

Introduction

This chapter provides information about peripheral IOLAN options that can be ordered separately from the product. Contact your sales representative to find out how to order the products listed in this appendix.

Installing a Perle PCI Card

This sections describes how to install the Perle IOLAN modem card and the Perle PCI adapter card, used with a wireless WAN card, in your SCS rack mount model.

IOLAN Modem Card

PCI Adapter Card

The location and brackets are slightly different for the 32-port and 48-port SCS rack mount models, but the basic installation concept is the same. The PCI adapter card bracket is found on the serial side of the 8-port/16-port/32-port models and the LED side of the 48-port model.

Note: Do not touch any of the components within the SCS IOLAN while performing the PCI adapter card installation.

1. Unscrew the six screws on the top of the SCS IOLAN.

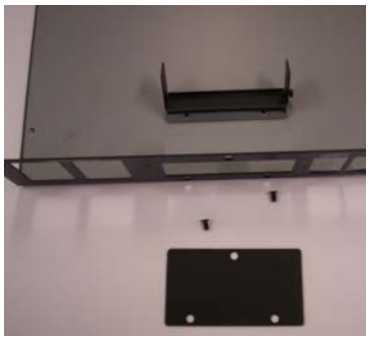
2. Unscrew the four screws along the bottom of the serial side of the SCS IOLAN. On the SCS 8-port/16-port/32-port models, this includes the screw that is at the bottom of the PCI face plate.

3. Slide the top of the IOLAN off of the chassis.
4. Carefully holding the bracket just behind the face plate, unscrew the two screws at the top of the 8-port/16-port/32-port removable face plate or the two side screws of the 48-port removable face plate of the piece you just took off.

32-port model

48-port model

The 8-port/16-port/32-port models are displayed below with the face plate and bracket taken apart.



5. Unscrew the screw in the bracket. The 8-port/16-port/32-port bracket is shown below.

6. Slide the PCI adapter card into the bracket.

32-port model

48-port model

7. The black bracket should then fit on the inside of the PCI adapter card bracket. Align the adapter card bracket and then insert the screw and tighten it to keep it firmly in place.

32-port model

48-port model

Note: You must attach the bracket to the PCI adapter card before you slide it into the PCI slot.

8. If you are installing the PCI Adapter card, slide the wireless WAN card into the adapter card.

9. Slide the PCI adapter card into the PCI slot.

10. You can now replace the top of the IOLAN chassis by aligning it and sliding it into the base. You can throw away the face plate, as you will not be needing it.

32-port model

48-port model

11. Replace all the screws on the top and the serial side of the IOLAN. If you installed a wireless WAN card, you can now attach the external antennae to the card.

Starter Kit (Adapters/Cable)

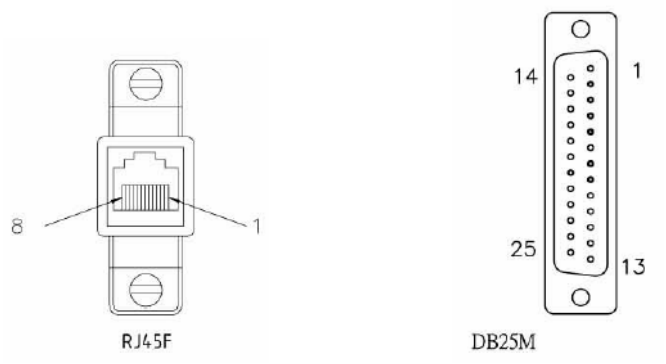
The IOLAN Starter Kit includes the following:

- ***RJ45F to DB25M DTE Crossover Adapter***
- ***RJ45F to DB25M DCE Modem Adapter***
- ***RJ45F to DB25F DTE Crossover Adapter***
- ***RJ45F to DB9M DTE Crossover Adapter***
- ***RJ45F to DB9F DTE Crossover Adapter***
- ***Sun/Cisco RJ45M Connector Cable for Rack Mount Models***

The adapters/cable can be purchased as a kit or individually.

RJ45F to DB25M DTE Crossover Adapter

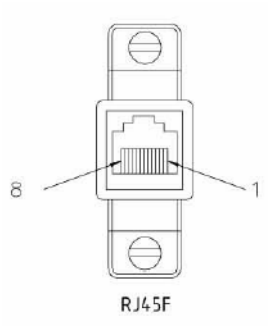
The following diagram shows the IOLAN RJ45F-->DB25M DTE crossover adapter pinouts. This is model number DBA0011.

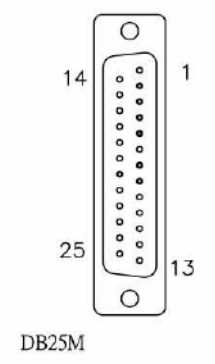


RJ45F		DB25M DTE
(TxD) 4	———	3 (RxD)
(RxD) 5	———	2 (TxD)
(GND) 6	———	7 (GND)
(DTR) 8	———	6 (DSR) 8 (DCD)
(DSR) 3	———	20 (DTR)
(RTS) 2	———	5 (CTS)
(CTS) 7	———	4 (RTS)

RJ45F to DB25M DCE Modem Adapter

The following diagram shows the IOLAN RJ45F→DB25M DCE modem adapter pinouts. This is model number DBA0013.

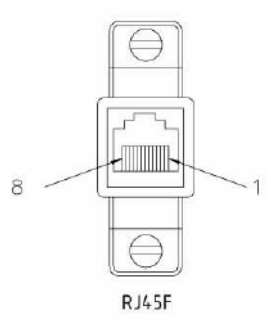


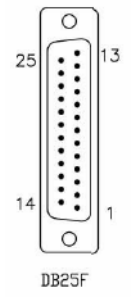


RJ45F		DB25M
(TxD) 4	———	3 (RxD)
(RxD) 5	———	2 (TxD)
(GND) 6	———	7 (GND)
(DTR) 8	———	20 (DTR)
(DSR) 3	———	6 (DSR)
(DCD) 1	———	8 (DCD)
(RTS) 2	———	4 (RTS)
(CTS) 7	———	5 (CTS)

RJ45F to DB25F DTE Crossover Adapter

The following diagram shows the IOLAN RJ45→DB25F DTE crossover adapter pinouts. This is model number DBA0010.

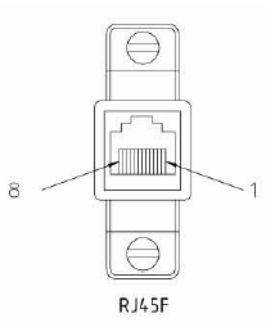


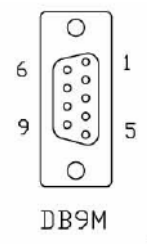


RJ45F		DB25F
(TxD) 4	———	3 (RxD)
(RxD) 5	———	2 (TxD)
(GND) 6	———	7 (GND)
(DTR) 8	———	6 (DSR) 8 (DCD)
(DSR) 3	———	20 (DTR)
(RTS) 2	———	5 (CTS)
(CTS) 7	———	4 (RTS)

RJ45F to DB9M DTE Crossover Adapter

The following diagram shows the IOLAN RJ45→DB9M crossover adapter pinouts. This is model number DBA0021.

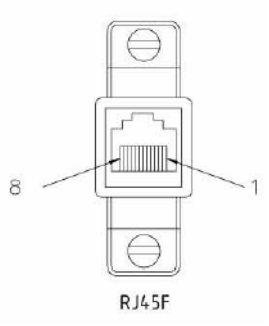


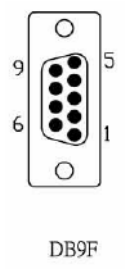


RJ45F		DB9M
(TxD) 4	———	2 (RxD)
(RxD) 5	———	3 (TxD)
(GND) 6	———	5 (GND)
(DTR) 8	———	1 (DCD) 6 (DSR)
(DSR) 3	———	4 (DTR)
(RTS) 2	———	8 (CTS)
(CTS) 7	———	7 (RTS)

RJ45F to DB9F DTE Crossover Adapter

The following diagram shows the IOLAN RJ45F→DB9F crossover adapter pinouts. This is model number DBA0020.





RJ45F		DB9F
(TxD) 4	———	2 (RxD)
(RxD) 5	———	3 (TxD)
(GND) 6	———	5 (GND)
(DTR) 8	———	1 (DCD) 6 (DSR)
(DSR) 3	———	4 (DTR)
(RTS) 2	———	8 (CTS)
(CTS) 7	———	7 (RTS)

Sun/Cisco RJ45M Connector Cable for Rack Mount Models

This is a 3 meter RJ45M→RJ45M 8-wire Sun/Cisco modular cable. The following diagram shows how the IOLAN RJ45M cable is configured when connecting to the supplied Sun/Cisco RJ45 cable. This model number is CAB0030.

IOLAN RJ45M		Sun/Cisco RJ45M
(RTS) 2	———	8 (CTS)
(DSR) 3	———	2 (DTR)
(TxD) 4	———	6 (RxD)
(RxD) 5	———	3 (TxD)
(GND) 6	———	4 (GND)
(CTS) 7	———	1 (RTS)
(DTR) 8	———	7 (DSR)

SCS48C/SCS32C/SCS16C/SCS8C Starter Kit (Adapters/Cable)

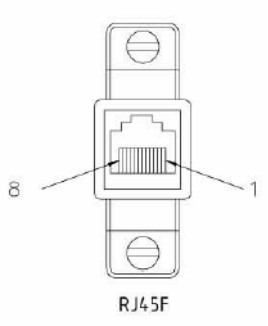
The IOLAN Starter Kit includes the following for the SCS48C/SCS32C/SCS16C/SCS8C (Cisco) models:

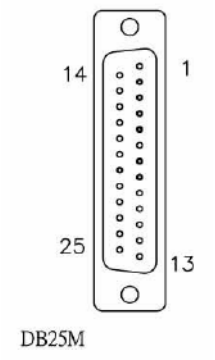
- ***RJ45F to DB25M DTE Crossover Adapter***
- ***RJ45F to DB25M DCE Modem Adapter***
- ***RJ45F to DB25F DTE Crossover Adapter***
- ***RJ45F to DB9M DTE Crossover Adapter***
- ***RJ45F to DB9F DTE Crossover Adapter***
- ***Sun/Cisco Roll-Over Adapter for Rack Mount Models***

The adapters/cable can be purchased as a kit or individually.

RJ45F to DB25M DTE Crossover Adapter

The following diagram shows the IOLAN RJ45F→DB25M DTE crossover adapter pinouts. This is model number DBA0011C.

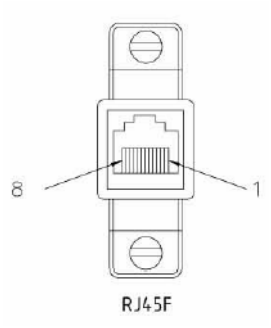


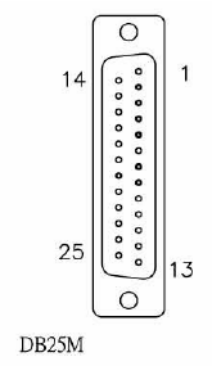


RJ45F		DB25M DTE
(TxD) 3	———	3 (RxD)
(RxD) 6	———	2 (TxD)
(GND) 4 (GND) 5	———	7 (GND)
(DTR) 2	———	6 (DSR) 8 (DCD)
(DSR) 7	———	20 (DTR)
(RTS) 1	———	5 (CTS)
(CTS) 8	———	4 (RTS)

RJ45F to DB25M DCE Modem Adapter

The following diagram shows the IOLAN RJ45F→DB25M DCE modem adapter pinouts. This is model number DBA0013C.

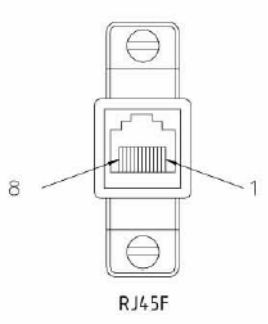


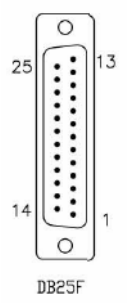


RJ45F		DB25M
(TxD) 3	———	2 (TxD)
(RxD) 6	———	3 (RxD)
(GND) 4	———	7 (GND)
(GND) 5		
(DTR) 2	———	20 (DTR)
(DSR) 7	———	8 (DCD)
(RTS) 1	———	4 (RTS)
(CTS) 8	———	5 (CTS)

RJ45F to DB25F DTE Crossover Adapter

The following diagram shows the IOLAN RJ45→DB25F DTE crossover adapter pinouts. This is model number DBA0010C.

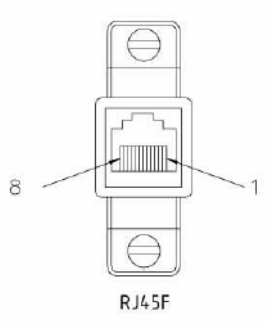


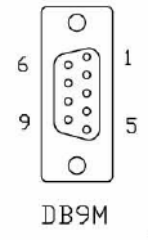


RJ45F		DB25F
(TxD) 3	———	3 (RxD)
(RxD) 6	———	2 (TxD)
(GND) 4 (GND) 5	———	7 (GND)
(DTR) 2	———	6 (DSR) 8 (DCD)
(DSR) 7	———	20 (DTR)
(RTS) 1	———	5 (CTS)
(CTS) 8	———	4 (RTS)

RJ45F to DB9M DTE Crossover Adapter

The following diagram shows the IOLAN RJ45→DB9M crossover adapter pinouts. This is model number DBA0021C.

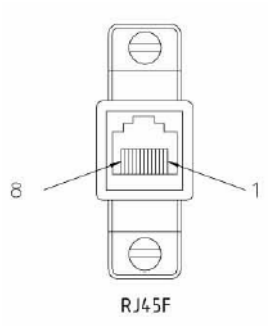


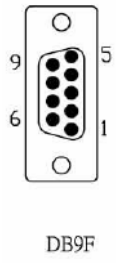


RJ45F		DB9M
(TxD) 3	———	2 (RxD)
(RxD) 6	———	3 (TxD)
(GND) 4 (GND) 5	———	5 (GND)
(DTR) 2	———	1 (DCD) 6 (DSR)
(DSR) 7	———	4 (DTR)
(RTS) 1	———	8 (CTS)
(CTS) 8	———	7 (RTS)

RJ45F to DB9F DTE Crossover Adapter

The following diagram shows the IOLAN RJ45F→DB9F crossover adapter pinouts. This is model number DBA0020C.





RJ45F		DB9F
(TxD) 3	———	2 (RxD)
(RxD) 6	———	3 (TxD)
(GND) 4 (GND) 5	———	5 (GND)
(DTR) 2	———	1 (DCD) 6 (DSR)
(DSR) 7	———	4 (DTR)
(RTS) 1	———	8 (CTS)
(CTS) 8	———	7 (RTS)

Sun/Cisco Roll-Over Adapter for Rack Mount Models

This is a RJ45M→RJ45F Sun/Cisco adapter. This model number is DBA0031C.

IOLAN RJ45F		Sun/Cisco RJ45M*
1	———	8
2	———	7
3	———	6
4	———	5
5	———	4
6	———	3
7	———	2
8	———	1

*The Sun/Cisco RJ45M connector attaches to the Sun/Cisco Console port.

Troubleshooting

Introduction

This chapter provides information that can help resolve problems with the IOLAN.

Hardware Troubleshooting

The Power/Ready LED stays red after a boot.

If the IOLAN Power/Ready LED is red and stays red for over 10 seconds, you have a hardware problem that might to require factory service. First, try the following:

- In Console mode for desktop models or viewing the Console port in rack mount models, see if you need to reload the firmware, which can be found either on the CD-ROM that came with the IOLAN or on the Perle website, `www.perle.com/downloads/serial.shtml`.
- If the bootloader option does not appear when you reboot the IOLAN (to load new firmware), you need to make arrangements to return the IOLAN.

If you purchased the IOLAN less than 30 days before this problem appears, contact your distributor; otherwise, see the Perle web site (`www.Perle.com`) for factory service information. Note: no factory service can be performed on IOLANs that have not been registered.

The Power/Ready LED on a rack mount model flashes red:

- **Good Boot:** When the IOLAN cycles through a good boot, the Power/Ready LED cycles for several seconds and then stays a solid green.
- **Noncritical Error Boot:** When the IOLAN cycles through a boot and a noncritical error occurs, such as a bad port, the Power/Ready LED will flash red briefly before displaying a solid green. You should reboot the IOLAN while monitoring the Console port to view the error information.
- **Critical Error Boot:** When the IOLAN cycles through a boot and a critical error occurs, such as corrupted firmware, the Power/Ready LED continues to flash red. View the IOLAN reboot through the Console port for information on how to correct the problem.
- **Fatal Error Boot:** When the IOLAN cycles through a boot and a fatal error occurs, the Power/Ready LED stays a solid red).

Communication Issues

General communication checks and practices are as follows:

- Are your cables connected and correctly configured? If you are using EIA-232, see ***EIA-232 Cabling Diagrams*** on page 336 to verify that your cables are correctly configured.
- Ping your host? If you can ping but packet loss is reported, ping another host/device on the same network. This will tell you whether the problem is specific to the host/device or general to the network.
- After entering or changing IP information for your IOLAN, *reboot* the IOLAN (does not apply when using BOOTP or DHCP). Once the IOLAN has rebooted, other network devices should be able to communicate with it (ping, telnet, etc.). Also, protocols such as ARP and proxy-ARP will work properly.
- Use the **`show routes`** command (command line only) or view the **Routes** statistics. Is there a route to the host?
- If the WebManager or DeviceManager cannot communicate with the IOLAN, verify that the **Server Services HTTP** and/or **HTTPS** are enabled for WebManager and **DeviceManagerD** is enabled for DeviceManager. If you are using only HTTPS, the connection URL must start with **`https://`**.

DeviceManager Problems

Error Message: **16 bit Windows Subsystem - C:\WINDOWS\SYSTEM32\AUTOEXEC.NT. The system file is not suitable for running MS-DOS and Microsoft Windows applications. Choose 'Close' to terminate the application.**

The error message can be misleading, because it is displayed even if the **`AUTOEXEC.NT`** file is actually missing.

To verify whether you have the file, type **`%windir%/system32/`** in the address bar of an Explorer window. If there is no **`AUTOEXEC.NT`** file proceed as follows:

1. Browse to **`%windir%/repair/`** (usually **`C:\WINDOWS\repair`**).
2. Right-click and Copy the **`AUTOEXEC.NT`** file.
3. Browse to **`%windir%/system32/`** (usually **`C:\WINDOWS\System32`**).
4. Right-click inside the window and Paste the file.

The error condition described here may also be the result of corruption of the **`AUTOEXEC.NT`** file, in which case the above procedure may be helpful to restore a valid file.

If the above procedure does not fix the DeviceManager installation problem, see http://support.microsoft.com/?kbid=324767 for the official Microsoft explanation.

Host Problems

Cannot access a host by name:

- If using DNS or if DNS is required, ensure a nameserver is configured on your IOLAN and is accessible (ping it).
- If not using DNS, verify that the host is configured in the **Host Table**. Check access to the host by pinging it using the host's IP address.

Cannot access a host on a local network, verify:

- The network address is correct.
- The subnet mask is set correctly and reflects the network configuration.
- The broadcast address is set correctly and reflects the network configuration.

Cannot access a host on a remote network:

- Use the **`show route`** command to verify that there is a route to the remote host. If no gateway is specified, verify that a default gateway is specified. Ping the default gateway to check if it is working.
- Consider the situation beyond the gateway; for example, are intermediate gateways and the remote host available? Also, check the messages returned by the **`ping`** command; for example, that a particular host or gateway is unreachable.

Gateways added into the gateway table are ignored by the IOLAN:

- Have you used BOOTP and entered a single static gateway in the bootptab file entry? If yes, the other gateways will be ignored.

Access to host lost after a few minutes.

- If the route to this host goes through routers, make sure those routers are all sending RIP packets across the networks.

RADIUS Authentication Problems

User is waiting up to 60 seconds before login is accepted or denied and Authentication is set to RADIUS. User has entered User Name and Password, and has pressed Enter.

- Check RADIUS configuration of primary and secondary authentication/accounting hosts specified, if you have retry and timeout values greater than the default, the IOLAN will be spending time trying each of these hosts and keeping the user waiting.
- Adjust RADIUS configuration: specify just one host, reduce **Timeout** and **Retry** values to the default or less than default.

You cannot progress beyond the login and password prompts when authentication is set to RADIUS:

- On the RADIUS host, check the secret (password), you should see it displayed in clear text in the RADIUS clients file. If you are unsure whether it is the same secret which you entered in the IOLAN, go to the IOLAN and re-enter a new secret.
- On the RADIUS host, verify that there is only one entry for a particular user; do not have multiple entries of the same user name (even if the passwords are different).

Login Problems

You cannot obtain a login on *any* of the serial ports

- Connect via the Admin port and check the settings of the front-mounted ports; they have probably been set to ‘direct’ or ‘silent’ telnet/rlogin.

You have lost or don't know your password (as Admin user).

- You must reset the IOLAN to its factory default settings using the **Reset** switch on the rear panel. There is no procedure to access the IOLAN without a password.

Problems with Terminals

The following section concerns problems with the appearance of data on your terminal screen.

The IOLAN logs me out after a few minutes:

- Check the **Idle Timer** value set for the user. The default setting for the **Idle Timer** for all users is 0 seconds (does not timeout).

Corrupt data.

- Check your line settings (baud rate, stop bits, etc.)

Missing data.

- Verify that the same type of flow control is set in both your terminal and on the IOLAN’s port.

Error message `not permitted on a dumb terminal` after typing the CLI command `screen`.

- Set your **Line** to **`Termtype`** VT100, ANSI or WYSE60 (or other form of terminal emulation, if you have downloaded one). The default line type in the IOLAN is **Dumb**, which does not support the graphics characters necessary to view the text-based menus.

Screen corruption when using the text-based menu system.

- Verify that the terminal setup in the IOLAN matches your terminal.
- Verify that entries in the term file match your terminal setup.
- If using a PC/computer, verify that the type of terminal emulation selected in your application matches those supported by the IOLAN.

When using the function keys on your keyboard, nothing happens or your sessions keep swapping.

- Change your **Hotkey Prefix** character. The function keys on the keyboards of some terminals (like WYSE60) send character sequences which begin with **^a**; unfortunately, **^a** is also the default **Hotkey Prefix**, which you use to switch between sessions. A valid alternative would be **^b** (hex=02). If you are the system administrator, you can change any user’s **Hotkey Prefix** character.

When using a downloaded terminal definition, you are having problems using arrow keys.

- Use Ctrl-K, Ctrl-J, Ctrl-H and Ctrl-L for up, down, left and right respectively.

When switching from a session back to the text menus, both screen images are superimposed.

- Press **^r** to redraw the screen.

`INIT: Error in terminal file <`*`filename`*`>`

- This error indicates that you have exceeded the 80 character limit for one or more of the terminal capabilities defined in the reported file.

`INIT: Error on line `*`n`*` in terminal file <`*`filename`*`>`

- You have omitted the **=** sign from the reported line.

Unknown IP Address

You have already configured the IOLAN and you do know your password, and have lost, misconfigured, or don't know the IP address of the IOLAN, so you cannot obtain a successful login.

- If the IOLAN resides within the local network segment, you can use DeviceManager to find the IOLAN.
- You can connect directly to the serial port of the IOLAN, as explained in ***Using a Direct Serial Connection to Specify an IP Address*** on page 67.

DHCP/BOOTP Problems

Messages: `host name too long` or `filename too long.`

- The IOLAN can only accept host names of 14 characters or file names of 64 characters, so verify that you are not attempting to pass a string that is longer than those maximums.

DHCP or BOOTP have been set up to configure my IOLAN, but does not seem to have done anything.

- Check that the server DHCP/BOOTP service is set to on, if not set it to on and reboot.
- Check that your BOOTP server is configured for your IOLAN or that your DHCP server has an active lease pool (scope) with at least 1 free IP address.

You observe TFTP errors when the IOLAN boots, for example:

```
TFTP: File not found : filename
TFTP: Timed out
```

This has a number of causes, including:

- The file names you specified to DHCP/BOOTP do not exist or are in the wrong place.
- The server for any of the downloadable files in your bootfile has no TFTP server running.
- Verify that lease data in your DHCP server manager is correct.
- Reset or restart the DHCP server.

Callback Problems

User Callback is On, and a number is configured for the line, but the IOLAN is not calling the user back:

- Verify that the phone number is entered under the user (not the line).
- Verify that the callback **Phone Number** is valid.
- Verify that the modem at the user's end is set to 'auto-answer'.

Language Problems

In a customised language, the text strings appear in the wrong place in the Menu, CLI, or WebManager.

- Check the original ASCII text file you used to translate to your customised language. The sequence of the line much match exactly (be aware that comments don't affect line sequence, but can affect the actual line that the strings appear on). So, if you strip out all comments, if the original file says line 1000 should be string **none**, then line 1000 (stripped of comments) should be the translated version of **none**.

Modem problems

The IOLAN is not initializing the modem.

- Check your **Line Service** is set to **SLIP** or **PPP**. If your line service is set to any other type, the IOLAN will not initialize a modem. You will need to configure the modem manually.

PPP problems

The link fails on start-up when there are remote IP addresses set for both a user (Framed IP value) and a line (Remote IP address).

- Check the IP address set for the user; this is used in preference to the IP address set for a line. If there is a problem with the user's IP address, negotiation will fail; the IOLAN will *not* use the line's IP address as an alternative.

The link fails on start-up and security (either PAP or CHAP) is enabled on the line.

- Check the remote client/device has the same setting; that is, PAP if the IOLAN is using PAP. The IOLAN does not perform negotiation with the remote end over PAP or CHAP.

At the remote end, the client software locks up when security (CHAP) is enabled on the line.

- Disable CHAP re-challenge parameter (challenge_interval) in the IOLAN. Some PPP client software does not work when receiving CHAP re-challenges.

PPP is not running successfully over your 485 half-duplex environment.

- PPP is incompatible with half-duplex; it must be run over a full-duplex environment.

Printing Problems

The print job fails to print on the device attached to the serial port.

- On the line where the printer is attached, set **Line Service** to **Printer**. Print jobs will not print when the line service is set incorrectly.

When using RCP, the network host receives a rejection message from the IOLAN. The result is that the print job does not take place.

- Print using LPD

  or

- Modify the printer interface scripts on the network host to overcome this weakness of RCP. The modification will force the network host to continue trying to send the print job when the IOLAN's printer port is busy.

Long Reboot Cycle

Rebooting the IOLAN takes a long time.

If you are not using DHCP/BOOTP, disable this within the Server Services; otherwise, the IOLAN waits to timeout for a request to DHCP/BOOTP.

SSL/TLS

If you are experiencing problems obtaining a successful SSL/TLS connection, you can set your **Syslog Level** to **Notice** and view the syslog for the following messages:

Line not SSL enabled. Abort connection when a user who is configured for **Service SSL_RAW** tries to login on the serial port.

The user has been configured for an **SSL_RAW** connection, but the line has not been configured to enable SSL. To resolve this, either enable the line for SSL or change the user's **Service** to **TCP_CLEAR** if SSL is not wanted.

Could not obtain peer's certificate.

- User has selected a cipher key exchange of ADH (anonymous Diffie-Hellman) and enabled Peer verification. ADH does not use certificates so they will not be sent in an SSL/TLS handshake. Disable Peer Verification or change to a cipher suite that uses certificates.
- User has selected Peer Verification on the configured SSL/TLS server and has not configured a certificate for the client. Either disable peer verification on the SSL/TLS server or configure a certificate for the SSL/TLS client.

SSL_accept failed on the SSL/TLS server device.

- The device has failed to accept an SSL/TLS connection on top of a TCP connection that has just been established. This could indicate that the peer from which TruePort is trying to accept a connection from is not configured for SSL/TLS. Verify that the peer has been configured for an SSL/TLS client connection.

Certificate did not match configuration

- The message is displayed when **Validate Peer Certificate** has been enabled, but the configured **Validation Criteria** does not match the corresponding data in the certificate received from the peer. The data configured must match exactly to the data in the certificate. The data is also case sensitive.

unknown protocol message when trying to make an SSL/TLS connection

- This will be displayed when both sides of the TCP connection are configured as SSL/TLS clients. Change one of the end points to act as an SSL/TLS server.
- One of the endpoints is not configured for SSL/TLS. Make sure both endpoints are configured for SSL/TLS, verify that one is a client and the other is a server.

tlsv1 alert handshake failure or **sslv3 alert handshake failure**

- The remote site has an SSL/TLS error and is sending this message with an alert message. Look at the error messages on the remote end and fix the problem indicated.

I/O Models

An I/O Digital or Relay controlled motor is starting/stopping

- Digital and Relay channels have automatically resetting fuses, meaning that if the circuit gets overloaded and the fuse blows, it will automatically reset when the circuit cools down.

An A4R2 model is starting/stopping

- The A4R2 model can run at 55 degrees Celsius ambient temperature when the input voltage is 22VDC or below. If the input voltage exceeds 22VDC, the maximum ambient temperature will drop into the range of 45-50 degrees Celsius to run successfully.

Contacting Technical Support

Making a Technical Support Query

Who To Contact

Note: Perle offers free technical support to Perle Authorised Distributors and Registered Perle Resellers.

If you bought your product from a registered Perle supplier, you must contact their Technical Support department; they are qualified to deal with your problem.

Have Your Product Information Ready

When you make a technical support enquiry please have the following information ready:

Item	Write Details Here
Product Name	
Problem Description	
Your Name	
Company Name and Address	
Country	
Phone Number	
Fax Number	
Email Address	

Making a support query via the Perle web page

If you have an internet connection, please send details of your problem to Technical Support using the email links provided on the Perle web site in the **Support/Services** area.

Click here to access our website at the following URL:

http://www.perle.com

Repair Procedure

Before sending the IOLAN for repair, you must contact your Perle supplier. If, however, you bought your product directly from Perle you can contact directly.

Customers who are in Europe, Africa or Middle East can submit repair details via a website form. This form is on the Perle website, **www.perle.com**, in the **Support/Services** area.

Click here to access our web site at the following URL:

http://www.perle.com/support_services/rma_form.asp

Feedback on this Manual

If you have any comments or suggestions for improving this manual please email Perle using the following address:

Email: ptac@perle.com

Please include the **title**, **part number** and **date** of the manual (you can find these on the title page at the front of this manual).

Glossary

This chapter provides definitions for Device Server terms.

BOOTP (BOOTstrap Protocol) An Internet protocol that enables a diskless workstation to discover its own IP address, the IP address of a BOOTP server on the network, and a file to be loaded into memory to boot the machine. This enables the workstation to boot without requiring a hard or floppy disk drive.

Callback A security feature where the Device Server calls back the User at a predetermined number defined in the User's account.

CHAP (Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol) Standard authentication protocol for PPP connections. It provides a higher level of security than PAP and should be used whenever possible. *see PAP*

Community (SNMP) An SNMP community is the group that devices and management stations running SNMP belong to. It helps define where information is sent.

DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) A TCP/IP protocol that provides static and dynamic address allocation and management.

Direct Connection Connections that bypass the Device Server enabling the user to log straight into a specific host. A direct connection is recommended where a user logging in to the Device Server is not required.

Ethernet A high-speed (10Mbps,100Mbps) cable technology that connects devices to a LAN, using one or more sets of communication protocols.

Fixed Callback A method where there is a specific number defined to callback a user.

Local Authentication Uses the user ID and password stored within the Device Server User database.

LPD Line Printer Daemon. A printer protocol that uses TCP/IP to establish connections between printers and workstations on a network. The technology was developed originally for BSD UNIX and has since become the de facto cross-platform printing protocol.

Modem Initialization String A series of commands sent to the modem by a communications program at start up. These commands tell a modem how to set itself up in order to communicate easily with another modem.

MOTD Message of the day. This is defined by a file whose contents display when users log into the Device Server.

Multicast The broadcasting of messages to a specified group of workstations on a LAN, WAN, or internet.

NAK (Negative Acknowledgment) A communication control character sent by the receiving destination indicating that the last message was not received correctly.

PAP (Password Authentication Protocol)	Standard authentication protocol for PPP connections. *see CHAP*
RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial In Users Services)	An open standard network security server that communicates with the PAP protocol.
Reverse Connection	Connections that originate from a host that go directly to a serial device through the Device Server.
RIP (Routing Information Protocol)	A protocol that allows gateways and hosts to exchange information about various routes to different networks.
Roaming Callback	A method where the client supplies the number for callback when they dial in.
RPC	Remote Procedure Call. A type of protocol that allows a program on one computer to execute a program on a server computer.
Silent Connection	Silent connections are the same as direct connections except that they are permanently established. The host login prompt is displayed on the screen. Logging out redisplays this prompt. Silent connections, unlike direct connections, however, make permanent use of pseudo tty resources and therefore consume host resources even when not in use.
SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol)	A protocol for managing network devices.
Subnet/Prefix Bits	Identifies the device’s IP address, which portion constitutes the network address and which portion constitutes the host address.

Index

A

admin
- default password 66
- lost password 299

analog
- calibrating 292

API
- I/O commands 256, 356
- TruePort 255

ARP-Ping, setting an IP address 69
authentication, general 197

B

binary configuration file 80
BOOTP
- parameters 56
- setting an IP address 68

C

cabling, EIA-232 336
calibrating
- analog 292
- temperature 292

certificates
- LDAP CA list 221
- SSH, OpenSSH 221
- SSL 221

CLI
- IOLAN+ interface 52

configuration files
- formats 80

connecting to the Device Server
- console mode 38
- serial mode 38
- setting IP address 44

console mode 38

D

DB25
- pinouts
  - female 332
  - male 331
- power in pin
  - female 333
  - male 332

DB9 male pinouts 334, 335
DC power requirements 33
Decoder utility 357
default admin password 66
definitions 383
Device Server models 27
DeviceManager
- overview 46
- setting an IP address 66

DHCP
- parameters 56
- setting an IP address 68

direct connect
- setting an IP address 67

E

EasyPort Web 75
email notification events 105, 269

F

factory defaults, resetting to 298

H

host-based printing 307

I

installing
IOLAN modem card 359
rack mount 39
interface, IOLAN+ 59
I/O
Modbus 249
UDP 246
I/O SNMP traps 260
IOLAN+ interface 59
CLI 52
Menu 53
IOLAN+, supported models 59
IPv6, setting an IP address 69

J

jumpers
line termination 341
power out 341
setting 341

K

keys
HTTPS 221
SSH 221

L

language
translating 296
upgrading firmware 296
LDAP
parameters 201
line termination, setting jumper 341
LPD printing 306

M

Menu
conventions 54
IOLAN+ 59
Menu IOLAN+ interface 53
MIB 57
Modbus
configuration overview 301
gateway settings 302
I/O access 249
line settings 303
TruePort 254
mode
console 38
serial 38
models, Device Server 27
modem card 359
modem parameters 182

N

NFS
Decoder utility 357
port buffering 177
NIS parameters 204

O

online help, using 26
OpenSSH 221

P

parameters
BOOTP/DHCP 56
LDAP 201
modems 182
NIS 204
port buffering 178
RADIUS 199
SecurID 203
SSH server 205
TACACS+ 202
password
admin default 66
IOLAN+ admin 59
lost 299
PCI slot 359
pin, power in
DB25 female 333
DB25 male 332
serial RJ45 333
pinouts
DB25 female 332
DB25 male 331
DB9 male 334, 335
RJ45 ethernet 335
RJ45 SCS48C serial 334
RJ45 serial 333
port buffering 177
Decoder utility
Decoder utility 178
local 177
parameters 178
remote 178
power in pin
DB25 female 333
DB25 male 332
serial RJ45 333
power out, setting jumper 341
printers 306
printing
host-based 307
LPD 306
RCP 307
product repair 381

R

rack mount
description 37
installing 39
RADIUS
parameters 199
supported RADIUS parameters 319
RCP printing 307
resetting to factory defaults 298
RIP
overview 91
RJ45
ethernet pinouts 335
SCS48C serial pinouts 334
serial pinouts 333
RJ45 serial power in pin 333

S

SecurID parameters 203
serial mode 38
services
line
printer 306
signal I/O 153
UDP 127
vmodem 149
sessions 193
setting an IP address
ARP-Ping 69
BOOTP/DHCP 68
DeviceManager 66
direct connect 67
IPv6 69
signal I/O
general 153
SNMP
I/O traps 260
support MIBs 57
using 57
SSH server parameters 205
SSL certificate 221
supported models
IOLAN+ 59

T

TACACS+ parameters 202
technical support
contacting 380
online 380
product information 380
product repair 381
via the internet 380
temperature
calibrating 292
terminal definitions
creating 297
downloading 297
text configuration file 80
TruePort
API 255
Modbus 254
TruePort utility 117, 355

U

UDP
configuring 127
UDP, I/O 246
user sessions 193
utility
Decoder 357
TruePort 117, 355

V

virtual modem 149
vmodem
overview 149

W

WebManager
overview 49